

# C 疯狂英语

## CRAZY ENGLISH

国内的学生、老师以及家长都对英美国家的课本充满了好奇，希望能了解这些材料，借助它们来学好英语。本书就为你揭开国外课本的神秘面纱，让你足不出户就能与国外学生的学习保持同步。

### 取材地道

精选美国小学课本，囊括语言、社会科学、自然科学等各个科目，让你全面掌握国外的教材，学到地道的英语。

### 内容丰富

每篇文章后面都附有“‘美’事一桩”——相关的社会、文化知识，能开阔你的眼界，让你在紧张的学习之余放松心情，而且对于英语的学习也大有裨益。“休闲时刻”更能让你开怀一笑，领略英语的幽默和魅力。

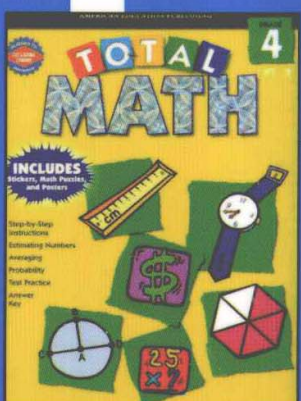
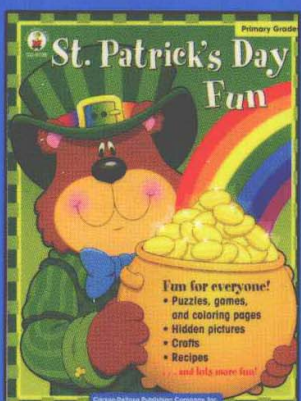
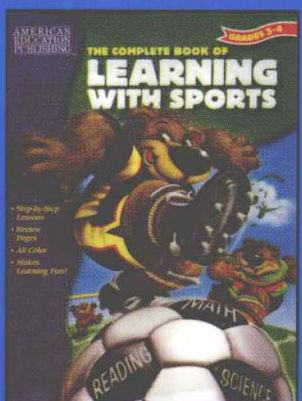
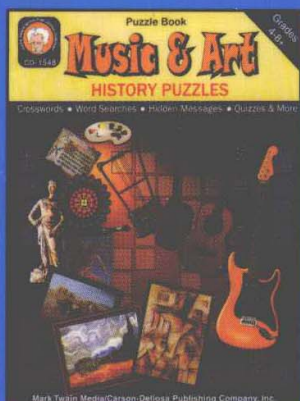
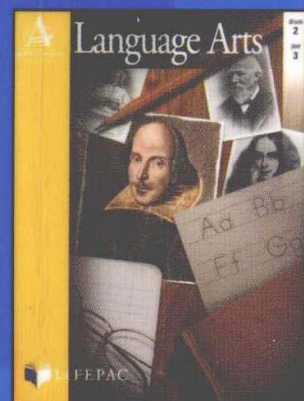
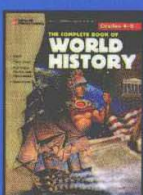
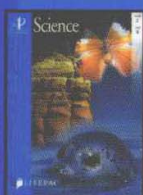
### 活学活用

难易适中的练习，让你不仅仅停留在了解的层面上，更能将其内化为自己的东西。

MP3

本书配套MP3光盘容量  
=5盘60分钟磁带/CD

黄玉虹 主编



跟美国学生一起学英语

初级版

美国各科课本



中山大学出版社

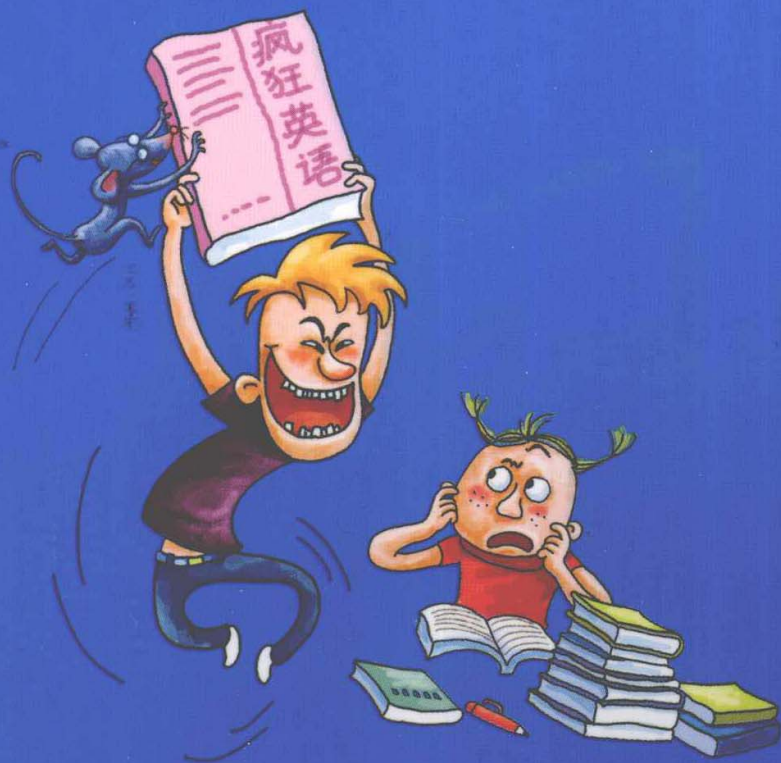




# 疯狂英语 CRAZY ENGLISH



精选的教材、详细的注解、巧妙的练习、精确的译文、丰富的文化，让你在了解国外课本的同时还能加深对国外文化的了解，同时提升你的英语水平。你还在等什么呢？现在就随我们一起开启不出国门的“留学之旅”吧！



上架建议：英语/学习

ISBN 978-7-306-03750-3



9 787306 037503 >

定价：32.80元（含MP3光盘）  
本书配套MP3光盘容量=5盘60分钟磁带/CD



# 跟美国学生一起学英语

**初级版**

主 编 黄玉虹

编委会成员

朱红梅	刘 晶	徐 娟	朱丽君	郝 静
孙 辉	姜雪丽	吴 芬	伍 辉	杨 肇
丁 汀	范洪静	张 娜	郝 铉	谈晓库
姚 昆	蒋 丽	李 莉	吴桂梅	李 扬

中山大学出版社

• 广州 •



版权所有 翻印必究

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

疯狂英语:跟美国学生一起学英语·初级版/黄玉虹主编. —广州:中山大学出版社, 2011. 1

ISBN 978-7-306-03750-3

I. 疯… II. 黄… III. 英语—美国—自学参考资料 IV H310.1

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2010)第179666号

---

出版人: 祁军

责任编辑: 钟婕

封面设计: 淡晓库

版式设计: 孙辉

责任校对: 刘学谦

责任技编: 何雅涛

出版发行: 中山大学出版社

电话: 编辑部 020 - 84111997, 84113349

发行部 020 - 84111998, 84111981, 84111160

地址: 广州市新港西路 135 号

邮编: 510275 传真: 020 - 84036565

网址: <http://www.zsup.com.cn> E-mail: [zdcbs@mail.sysu.edu.cn](mailto:zdcbs@mail.sysu.edu.cn)

印刷者: 北京彩眸彩色印刷有限公司

规格: 787mm×1092mm 1/16 21.25 印张 456 千字

版次印次: 2011 年 1 月第 1 版 2011 年 1 月第 1 次印刷

印数: 1 ~ 10000 册 定价: 32.80 元

---

本书如有印装质量问题影响阅读, 请与出版社发行部联系调换



# PREFACE 前言

英语学习一直以来在中国始终热度不减。然而,读者们可以选择的英语学习读物大多拘泥于英语语言本身,往往忽略语言背后所蕴含的文化元素。与此同时,大多数英语读物都趋于选择经典的文学作品,而忽略了其他文体中语言的特色。《疯狂英语:跟美国学生一起学英语·初级版》这本书正致力于填补这几方面的空白。

本书涉及内容广泛,所有材料均选自美国现行小学课本,包括语言、社会科学、自然科学和数学等多学科领域。就阅读材料本身而言,文学类文章的选择比较偏重于语言本身。在阅读中,读者可以尽情地领略和体味英语语言的魅力。自然科学和数学类文章都非常具有专业性,不仅为读者提供了大量的相关知识,而且涵盖了大量的专业阅读词汇。社会科学类文章除了作为阅读材料呈现之外,主要侧重于对美国社会一些基本常识的介绍。

本书每篇文章后都附有阅读所需的词汇和短语。值得一提的是,在“语句荟萃”部分,所有短语的例句都经过精挑细选。通过学习,读者可以熟练地掌握相关短语的用法。此外,每篇文章后附带的练习也帮助读者进一步巩固文章中的词汇和短语,同时还考查了读者对文章的理解程度。“参考译文”更是为读者全面了解文章内容提供了方便,同时,有兴趣翻译的读者也可以将“参考译文”作为检验自己翻译质量的范本。

本书的另一亮点就是与每篇文章内容相关的扩展板块,包括“美”事一桩、“美”文背景、名人链接和科学生活等。这一板块致力于扩充读者对相关话题的了解,尤其侧重于与现实生活的联系,期望读者在阅读之后能够更深刻地体会西方社会的历史背景和人文文化,同时更为深刻地理解前面所阅读的文章。

由于本书学科跨度很大,因此适合兴趣广泛的英语学习者选读,这也打破了普通英语读物多限于文科材料的束缚。学科的侧重点和阅读难度不同,对读者来说感受也各异。因此,本书适合的读者群广泛,业余或专业学生两相宜。

祝大家阅读快乐!

编者



# CONTENTS 目录

## Part 1 Language Arts 语言

1. Adverbs 副词 .....	2
2. Development of the English Language 英语的发展 .....	7
3. Subject-verb Agreement 主谓一致 .....	16
4. Greedy, Selfish, and Honor Go Out to Dinner 贪婪、自私和荣誉一起出去吃饭 .....	21
5. Verbs—Past, Present, and Future Tense 动词的过去时、现在时及将来时 .....	27
6. Joey and the Sad Tree 乔伊和悲伤的树 .....	31
7. Paragraph Writing 段落写作 .....	41
8. Christmas Customs 圣诞风俗 .....	50
9. A Letter of Invitation 邀请信 .....	58
10. Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会 .....	65
11. Figurative Language 比喻 .....	74
12. Lost 迷失 .....	79

## Part 2 Social Studies 社会科学

1. Continents 大陆 .....	91
2. The United States (Part One) 美国地理概况(上) .....	97
3. The United States (Part Two) 美国地理概况(下) .....	109
4. Enemies of the Forest 森林的敌人 .....	118
5. The First Humans 最早的人类 .....	122
6. Pyramids and Gods 金字塔和神灵 .....	128
7. Eastern Religions 东方的宗教 .....	134
8. A Tulip Festival 郁金香节 .....	139



9. An Inventor—Henry Ford 一个创造者——亨利·福特 .....	143
10. Methods of Coal Mining 煤炭开采方式 .....	148
11. Hong Kong, Marketplace of Asia (Part One) 香港——亚洲的市场(上) .....	155
12. Hong Kong, Marketplace of Asia (Part Two) 香港——亚洲的市场(下) .....	164

## Part 3 Science 自然科学

1. Four Seasons 四季 .....	172
2. Leaves 叶子 .....	176
3. Rocks 岩石 .....	182
4. Shape of the Earth 地球的形状 .....	187
5. Gravity 万有引力 .....	191
6. Fresh Water 淡水 .....	196
7. Instinct of Animals 动物的本能 .....	201
8. From Electrons to Electric Current 从电子到电流 .....	209
9. Forces of Weather 破坏性天气 .....	215

## Part 4 Math 数学

1. 4-Digit Numbers 四位数 .....	224
2. Probabilities 概率 .....	228
3. Fractions 分数 .....	233
4. Decimals 小数 .....	238
5. Equation 方程式 .....	246
6. Measurement 几何图形测量 .....	251
7. Lines and Line Segments, Rays and Angles 直线与线段, 射线与角 .....	257
8. Plain Shapes and Solid Shapes 平面图形与立体图形 .....	262

# CONTENTS 目录

## Part 5 Others 其他

1. Building Materials for Strong Bones 强健的骨骼需要什么 .....	271
2. Protect Your Teeth 保护牙齿 .....	276
3. Dressing for Good Health 健康着装 .....	284
4. Michael Jordan, A Team Player 迈克尔·乔丹, 以团队为重 .....	290
5. Rock-and-Roll Music and Musicians 摇滚乐及其音乐人 .....	294
6. St. Patrick's Day Desserts 圣·帕特里克节甜点 .....	302
7. Easter Activities 复活节活动 .....	306
8. Clay Creations 泥塑制作 .....	310
9. Paper Plate Parade 纸盘子手工制作 .....	317

## 附录

附录一、美国教育制度概况 .....	324
附录二、关于美国的课程设置 .....	328



# Part 1

## Language Arts

### 语言

# 1

# Adverbs

## 副词



汉语和英语都有副词，英语中的副词是比较难以掌握的词类，它一般用来修饰动词和形容词，也可以用来修饰部分副词。副词和形容词用法的区分也是困扰大家的一大难题。你想彻底弄清楚副词吗？那就跟随我们一起来全面解读副词吧！

Adverbs<sup>1</sup> modify<sup>2</sup> or describe<sup>3</sup> the meaning of verbs<sup>4</sup>, adjectives<sup>5</sup>, or other adverbs. They are words that tell *how*, *when*, or *where something*. Many, but not all, adverbs end in<sub>1</sub> *-ly*.

### Complete these activities.

1. Write the adverb from each sentence that tells how something is done.
  - a. The pupils write well. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. The snow melts rapidly. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Write the adverb from each sentence that tells when something is done.
  - a. We must leave now. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. He will come soon. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Write the adverb from each sentence that tells where something is done.
  - a. That boy lives here. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. I left my coat there. \_\_\_\_\_

Adverbs modify the meaning of verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs; adjectives modify the meaning of nouns. The two are often used *incorrectly*<sup>6</sup>. Be certain to<sub>2</sub> use the adverb when you should. The words *well* and *good* are often *confused*<sup>7</sup>. Remember that *well* is the adverb and should be used with verbs, but *good* is an adjective and is used with nouns. Words ending in *-ly* are usually the adverb form<sup>8</sup>.



### Complete this activity.

4. Choose the adverb to complete each sentence. Underline the word you choose.

- a. He plays ball \_\_\_\_\_. (good    well )
- b. She does all her work \_\_\_\_\_. (carefully    careful )
- c. Be sure to talk \_\_\_\_\_. (quiet    quietly)
- d. He handled<sup>9</sup> the puppies \_\_\_\_\_. (tender<sup>10</sup>    tenderly)
- e. Susan swims \_\_\_\_\_. (good    well)



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **adverb** ['ædvɜ:b] *n.* 副词
2. **modify** ['mɒdɪfaɪ] *vt.* 变更; 修改; 修饰
3. **describe** [dɪs'kraɪb] *vt.* 描写, 叙述, 形容
4. **verb** [vɜ:b] *n.* 动词
5. **adjective** ['ædʒɪktɪv] *n.* 形容词
6. **incorrectly** [ɪnkə'rektli] *adv.* 不正确地; 错误地
7. **confuse** [kən'fju:z] *vt.* 使混乱, 混淆; 弄错
8. **form** [fɔ:m] *n.* 形态, 外形    *v.* 形成
9. **handle** ['hændl] *n.* 柄, 把手    *v.* 触摸; 搬动; 处理; 操作
10. **tender** ['tendə] *adj.* 柔软的, 温柔的

注: 本章课文均选自美国四年级课本 *Language Arts*(语言), 这一学科与我国的语文类似, 课本中不仅包含供学生阅读的文章, 还兼顾介绍语法知识、拼写规范以及各种阅读写作技能。本书所选多数文章的阅读难度相当于国内高中英语学科对学生要求的水平。因此, 在本章其余课文中, 若非个别情况, 不再提及难度水平。





## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. end in

1) to have sth as an ending 以……结尾; 末端是……

eg. I'm not sure whether the word ends in "-tion" or not.

我不确定这个词是否以-tion结尾。

2) to have sth as a result 以……为结果; 以……告终

eg. Their long struggle ended in failure.

他们的长期斗争以失败告终。

### 2. be certain to do sth: be sure to do sth 必然, 一定

eg. We are certain to be victorious.

我们一定会胜利。

They are certain to come./It's certain that they will come.

他们一定会来。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Answer the questions according to the text.

1. What do adverbs tell?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Adverbs modify the meaning of some words. What kind of words?

\_\_\_\_\_

### II. Choose the word which best completes each sentence.

1. She does everything \_\_\_\_\_. (good well)

2. Handle the jar \_\_\_\_\_. (carefully careful)

3. He runs \_\_\_\_\_. (rapid rapidly)

4. We will go with you \_\_\_\_\_. (gladly glad)

5. He studied the problem \_\_\_\_\_. (thoughtful thoughtfully)



6. The car was built \_\_\_\_\_. (good well)
7. Did you put the cat down \_\_\_\_\_? (gentle gently)
8. We crossed the street \_\_\_\_\_. (slowly slow)
9. Be certain to ask \_\_\_\_\_. (nice nicely)
10. The children talked \_\_\_\_\_. (noisy noisily)

## 参考译文

副词是修饰或描述动词、形容词以及其他副词的词，说明方式、时间、地点等概念。很多（但并非全部）副词都以-ly结尾。

完成以下练习：

1. 写出以下句子中说明动作方式的副词。
  - a. 学生们写字写得很好。
  - b. 雪融化得很快。
2. 写出以下句子中说明动作发生时间的副词。
  - a. 我们现在必须走了。
  - b. 他很快就会来。
3. 写出以下句子中说明动作发生地点的副词。
  - a. 那个男孩住在这里。
  - b. 我把我的外套落在那里了。

副词修饰动词、形容词以及其他副词；形容词修饰名词。这两者经常被误用。该使用副词时一定要用副词。“well（很好地）”和“good（好的）”常常被混淆起来。要记住“well”是副词，应该与动词连用；而“good”是形容词，应该与名词连用。以-ly结尾的词通常都是副词。

完成以下练习：

4. 选择副词填空。在你选择的副词下面划线。
  - a. 他球打得很好。
  - b. 她所有的工作都做得很小心。
  - c. 务必小声说话。
  - d. 他轻轻地抚摸那些小狗。
  - e. 苏珊游泳游得很好。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国小学的课程设置

美国各州学制不同，但小学多为五年制，六岁入学。低年级学生大多不用背书包上学，因为学习

的内容和方式跟幼儿园阶段差不多。通常是由各州制定教育目标和内容纲要，地方教委和各学校再根据具体情况决定教学的具体内容。具体的学习课程通常由各校的校长、教师、课程指导员、辅导员、学生家长和相关人员组成的课程委员会研究决定。他们在制定课程时，一方面要考虑儿童的智力发展，另一方面还得注意增强他们的心理健康、发展他们的人格。因此，美国小学并不特别重视书本理论知识，但实验、操作和活动机会较多，力图为学生展示一个现实的世界，帮助他们理解生活着的这个社会，培养他们对个人和社会的责任心，塑造他们的民主社会价值观。具体来讲，美国的小学课程一般有语言艺术（包括拼写、阅读和写作等）、数学、自然科学、社会科、艺术、健康和体育等。有的学校还开设家政课。课程采用综合课的形式进行，语言课包含阅读、写作和文学等知识；科学课则将物理、化学、生物等融为一体，也包括一定的语言词汇方面的训练。艺术课、健康课也具有同样的特点。当然，他们使用的教材是与这种教学模式相匹配的。比如，科学课本的每章课文之前也会列出生词表，课后还会有针对课文内容设计的写作练习，等等。综合课的教学模式能使学生更好地把各科知识统一起来，比较符合小学生的思维发展。

下面是一份美国新泽西州克尔尼镇林肯学校三年级的课程表：

9:00 Reading	1:00 English
9:45 Specials (Mon: Music;	1:45 Science
Tue: Sports; Wed: Art; Thu: Sports;	2:30 Homework
Fri: Computer)	3:00 Go back home
10:30 Spelling	
11:15 Social studies	
12:00 Lunchtime	

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

A child is better unborn than untaught.

养不教，父之过。

All rivers run into the sea.

殊途同归。

All time is no time when it's past.

机不可失，时不再来。

A short cut is often a wrong cut.

欲速则不达。

### Answer

#### 课内练习

1. a. well b. rapidly
2. a. now b. soon
3. a. here b. there
4. a. well b. carefully c. quietly d. tenderly e. well

#### 课后练习

1. They tell how, when, or where something.
  2. They are verbs, adjectives or other adverbs.
1. well 2. carefully 3. rapidly 4. gladly 5. thoughtfully
  6. well 7. gently 8. slowly 9. nicely 10. noisily



# Development of the English Language

## 英语的发展

2



现在，全球兴起英语热。但是，对于英语的起源和发展又有多少人了解呢？本章将以单词为例，为你梳理英语发展的脉络，让你对英语发展的历史有一个清楚的认识。

You learn new words every day. When you hear a new word, do you ever think about the English language? How did the language get so many words? How did our language get so many different spellings? How did the English language get so many different sounds for the same spelling endings, such as *food*, *good*, and *blood*?

How can a language with an *alphabet*<sup>1</sup> of 26 letters have more than one million words? If you're *wondering*<sup>2</sup> about the answers to these questions, think about this fact. The 26 letters of our alphabet have 44 sounds, but those 44 sounds have 256 different spelling combinations!

Thousands of words in English are formed from old Greek and Latin *roots*<sup>3</sup>. The Greek root *graph*, meaning *writing* or *drawing*, has hundreds of English words *stemming*<sup>4</sup> from

it. The Latin root, *audio*, meaning to *hear*, also has hundreds of English words stemming from it.

Greek and Latin do not *account for* all of the different words and spellings. The English language has “borrowed” words from many other languages. English “borrowed” such words as chocolate and banana from the Spanish; *moccasin*<sup>5</sup> from the American Indian; chop suey from the Chinese word, *tzop-suey*; *confetti*<sup>6</sup> from the Italian; and *chauffeur*<sup>7</sup> from the French. These examples are only a very few of the “borrowed” words in the English language.

An *unabridged*<sup>8</sup> dictionary is helpful for finding the source of words. The source will help you to understand why a sound may be spelled one way in one word and another way in a different word. As an example, the

*sh* sound has fourteen different spellings. Two words with the *sh* sound are ship and sugar. The *sh* sound in sugar is spelled without the *h*. The *sh* sound in ship has the *h*.

The word *ship* came to the English originally from the German. They called it *schiff*. The Danish added the word to their language and pronounced<sup>9</sup> it *skib*. The Icelandic language spelled it *skip*. The Dutch added the word to their language and spelled it *schip*. The word then came into the Anglo-Saxon language and was spelled first as *scyp* and later as *scip*. Modern English seems to have combined<sup>10</sup> several of the spellings and pronunciations of other languages to arrive at the present word, *ship*.

The word *sugar* traveled halfway across the globe before it came to England. Sugar originally<sup>11</sup> was called *carkara* in India. The word moved west to Asia Minor and became *sakkar* in Arabia. *Sakkar* moved to southern Europe, to Spain, and became *azucar*. Moving north to France, the word became *sucre*. In Middle English the word became *sugre*.

Sugar, in modern English, seems to have combined the beginning letters of Middle English and French with the ending letters of Spanish, Arabic, and Indian.

You have been reading about language and the alphabet. *Alphabet* comes from the Greek words *alpha* and *beta*, the names of the first two letters in the Greek alphabet.

*Language* comes from the Latin word, *lingua*, which means tongue.

One reason why the English language has so many words is the frequent<sup>12</sup> use of compound<sup>13</sup> words. Some compound words are combinations of words from two different languages. Today, many people use a computer or typewriter to print messages. The word *typewriter* is an example of a compound word. *Type* is originally from Greek and Latin words that came into the English language. *Writer* is from an old Anglo-Saxon word. Two words from different backgrounds have formed a compound modern English word, *typewriter*.

Many of the words used in church have come from different languages. The word *church* comes from an old Greek word that originally meant *belonging to the Lord* and later came to mean *house of the Lord*.

*Cross* came to the English language from the Latin word, *crux*.

Other words with Latin beginnings are *pray*, *pastor*<sup>14</sup>, *religion*, and *sacred*<sup>15</sup>. In the Latin forms, *pray* meant *to beg*, *pastor* meant *the one who took care of a flock*<sup>16</sup> of sheep or *shepherd*<sup>17</sup>, *religion* meant *something bound*<sup>18</sup> together, and *sacred* meant *set apart*<sup>19</sup>.

Church words from the Greek are *Bible* and *bishop*. *Bible* comes from a Greek word that meant *books*, and *bishop* comes from a Greek word that meant *one who oversees*<sup>20</sup>.

The word *worship* came from Anglo-



Saxon and means *to honor*.

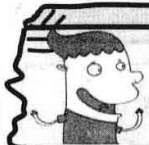
Do you think you would like to learn some of the history of the words? We have a word for this study. It comes from an old Greek word that means the love of learning.

The English word is philology and it means the study of words. You will see this word again in the next section of this LIFEPAAC.



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **alphabet** ['ælfəbet] *n.* 字母表
2. **wonder** ['wʌndə] *v.* 怀疑, 想知道
3. **root** [ru:t] *n.* 根; 词根
4. **stem** [stem] *v.* 以……为词干
5. **moccasin** ['mɒkəsɪn] *n.* 鹿皮鞋, 硬底软(拖)鞋
6. **confetti** [kən'feti] *n.* (在婚礼或其他活动中抛撒的) 五彩纸屑
7. **chauffeur** ['ʃəʊfə] *n.* (雇佣的) 汽车司机
8. **unabridged** ['ʌnə'brɪdʒd] *adj.* 未删节的, 未省略的, 完全的
9. **pronounce** [prə'naʊns] *vt.* 发出……的音; 注……的音
10. **combine** [kəm'baɪn] *vt.* 使……联合; 融合
11. **originally** [ə'ɪdʒənəli] *adv.* 本来, 原来; 最初
12. **frequent** ['fri:kwənt] *adj.* 时常发生的, 频繁的, 常见的
13. **compound** ['kɒmpaʊnd] *n.* 复合词
14. **pastor** ['pa:stə] *n.* 牧师
15. **sacred** ['seɪkrɪd] *adj.* 神圣的, 上帝的, 宗教的
16. **flock** [flɒk] *n.* 兽群; 鸟群
17. **shepherd** ['ʃepəd] *n.* 牧羊人
18. **bind** [baɪnd] *vt.* 绑; 约束 (过去式、过去分词均为 bound)
19. **oversee** ['əʊvə'si:] *vt.* 俯瞰; 监督, 监视



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. **account** ([ə'kaʊnt]) **for sth** 是……的说明 (或原因); 解释, 说明  
eg. The poor weather may have accounted for the small crowd.  
天气不好可能是人来得少的原因。

How do you account for the movie's success?

你认为这部电影为何成功?

**2. add...to** 增加, 添加

eg. A new wing was added to the building.

这栋大楼新添了一座配楼。

I have nothing to add to my earlier statement.

我对我早前说的话没什么补充的。

**3. arrive at sth** 得出, 达成, 作出

eg. to arrive at an agreement/a decision/ a conclusion

达成协议/作出决定/得出结论

**4. combine... with** (使) 结合, 组合; 联合; 混合

eg. Hydrogen combines with oxygen to form water.

氢与氧化合成水。

Combine the eggs with a little flour and heat the mixture gently.

把鸡蛋和少量面粉混合, 用文火加热。

**5. set sth apart** 使……与众不同; 留出, 拨出(专用)

eg. Her clear and elegant writing sets her apart from other journalists.

她的文章清丽典雅, 比其他记者高出一筹。

The room was set apart for use as a library.

这个房间专门留出来作为图书馆。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**I. Fill in the blanks with words from the list. Each sentence below has a word missing. If you are in doubt about the meaning of any word, look the word up in a dictionary.**

**banana chop suey moccasin chauffeur confetti sugar**

1. The French word \_\_\_\_\_ means a hired driver of an automobile.
2. The Italian word \_\_\_\_\_ means tiny pieces of paper.



3. The Indian word \_\_\_\_\_ is a kind of footwear.
4. The word \_\_\_\_\_ originally came from India.
5. The Spanish word \_\_\_\_\_ is a fruit.
6. We get the word \_\_\_\_\_ from the Chinese.

## II. Match the word with its language.

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. _____ schiff  | a. Danish      |
| 2. _____ skib    | b. French      |
| 3. _____ skip    | c. German      |
| 4. _____ schip   | d. Dutch       |
| 5. _____ scip    | e. Anglo-Saxon |
| 6. _____ carkara | f. Arabian     |
| 7. _____ sakkar  | g. Icelandic   |
| 8. _____ azucar  | h. East Indian |
| 9. _____ sucre   | i. Spanish     |

## III. Write compound words and their meanings in the blanks. Add a word from the second column to a word in the first column. The words formed are compound words.

- |          |        |          |
|----------|--------|----------|
| 1. _____ | milk   | ground   |
| 2. _____ | cup    | less     |
| 3. _____ | drug   | shake    |
| 4. _____ | earth  | quarters |
| 5. _____ | head   | store    |
| 6. _____ | speech | board    |
| 7. _____ | under  | quake    |

IV. The words in the puzzle below are church words. Use the WORD BOX to find the right words. First, write the word that belongs on each line. Then, put the word you wrote on the line by the same number in the puzzle. The first one has been done for you.

### WORD BOX

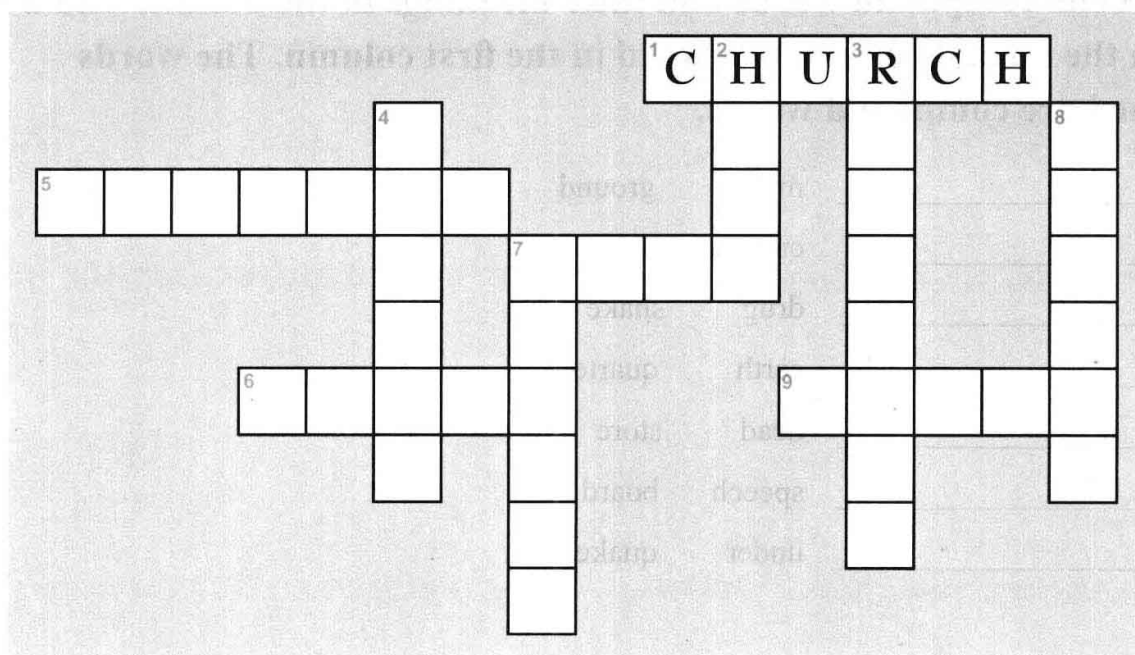
past or Religion church bishop pray  
Bible Holy worship Cross Sacred

#### ACROSS

1. The word church means belonging to the Lord.
6. To honor is to \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The Latin word for \_\_\_\_\_ meant to beg.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ came from the Latin word crux.
9. The Greek word for \_\_\_\_\_ meant books.

#### DOWN

2. The \_\_\_\_\_ Spirit.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ means bound together.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ is an overseer.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ means set apart.
7. A \_\_\_\_\_ feeds his flock.





## 参考译文

你每天都学习新的单词。当你听到一个新的单词时，有没有想过与英语这门语言相关的事情？英语中这么多单词是怎么来的？为什么会有这么多不同的拼写方式？为什么很多词结尾的拼写相同，比如food, good和blood，它们的读音却不一样？

为什么一门只有26个字母的语言能有100多万个单词？如果你在思考这些问题，请注意这一点：字母表中的26个字母可以构成44个音，而这44个音有256种不同的拼写组合方式！

英语中有成千上万个单词是以古希腊语和古拉丁语为词根的。比如希腊语词根graph，意为“写”或“画”，就派生了几百个英语单词。拉丁语词根audio，意为“听”，也有几百个英语派生词。

希腊语和拉丁语的影响并不是英语词汇量大、拼写多样的全部原因。英语还从其他许多语言“借”词。例如，chocolate（巧克力）和banana（香蕉）借自西班牙语，moccasin（鹿皮鞋）来自美洲印第安语，chop suey（炒杂碎）来自汉语，confetti（五彩纸屑）来自意大利语，chauffer（私人汽车司机）来自法语。这些仅仅是英语众多外来词中的一小部分。

一本完整的大词典能帮助我们找到词的来源，而这能使我们了解同一个音为什么在不同的单词中有不同的拼写方式。例如，sh这个音有14种拼法。ship和sugar都带有这个音，但在sugar当中拼成s，在ship当中则拼成sh。

英语中的ship最初起源于德国，德国人将其读作schiff。schiff被引入多国语言，进入丹麦之后读音变为skib，冰岛和荷兰则分别拼成skip和schip。之后该词进入盎格鲁-撒克逊语，起初拼成scyp，后来改为scip。现代英语似乎融合吸收了其他几种语言的拼法和读音而最后形成了现在的这个词，ship。

而sugar在到达英国之前已经在地球上走了半圈。sugar起源于印度语的carkara，该词向西传到小亚细亚，在阿拉伯变成sakkar。sakkar又传到欧洲南部，进入西班牙变成azucar；向北传到法国则成为sucre。到了中古英语，这个词写为sugre。

现代英语的sugar像是把中古英语sugre以及法语sucre的开头字母和西班牙语azucar、阿拉伯语sakkar以及印度语carkara的结尾部分结合起来而得到的。

你们已经读过跟语言(language)和字母表(alphabet)相关的内容了。alphabet由希腊语字母表的头两个字母alpha和beta构成。language则来自拉丁语单词lingua，意为“舌头”。

频繁使用合成词是英语拥有大量词汇的原因之一。部分合成词由来自两个不同语言的单词构成。今天，很多人使用计算机(computer)或者打字机(typewriter)来打印信息。typewriter就是一个合成词。type是从希腊语和拉丁语传入英语的，而writer则是个古老的盎格鲁-撒克逊语单词。两个来自不同背景的单词合并在一起构成了一个

现代英语的合成词typewriter。

很多跟宗教有关的词汇都来自不同的语言。church（教堂）来自古希腊语，最初意为“属于上帝”，后来又表示“上帝的房子”。

cross（十字架）是由拉丁语crux转变而来。

其他来自拉丁语的词还有pray（祈祷），pastor（牧师），religion（宗教）和sacred（神圣的）。在拉丁语中，pray意为“乞求、乞讨”，pastor指“牧羊人”，religion指“绑在一起”，sacred意为“使突出”。

源自希腊语的宗教词汇有 bible（圣经）和 bishop（主教）。bible来自一个意为“书籍”的希腊单词，bishop的原词则指“监督者”。

worship（崇拜，礼拜）来自盎格鲁-撒克逊语，意为“尊敬”。

你了解一下单词的有关历史吗？对于这项研究我们有话可说。它来源于一个古老的希腊单词，意思是“爱学习”，英语单词是“philology”，意思是“词汇学习”。你将在这本书的下一章再次看到这个词。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国小学（五年制）各年级教学目标

一年级：能够从1数到100，知道奇数和偶数，会简单的加减法；学会观察，对不同的事物和物品分门别类；能例证生命的演变过程，了解自然界动植物之间互相依存的关系；学习使用图片和照片来表达文字以外的意思；懂得衣、食、住之于一个家庭的必要性；明白家庭成员之间、邻里之间的关系。

二年级：会读、写三位数的数位，从随意抽取的五个数中，能够从小数到大或从大数到小；熟练运用两位数的加减法，会用英寸或厘米等度量单位测量长度，看懂钟表上的时间；学会用图片和资料来表达、理解不同职业的谋生方式；坚持写读书笔记或日记，学会写总结，懂得区别诗、散文、小说、传记等不同的文学形式，了解虚构作品与非虚构作品之间的区别；开始学习独立研究动物，诸如昆虫生态等问题。

三年级：学会如何把资料做成曲线图；会比较10万以内数字的大小及加法，熟练掌握三位数的加、减、乘、除法；能够从周围的环境就地取材，搜集、组织材料，了解人如何保持健康，明白青蛙、蝴蝶、小鸡、小白鼠等小动物的生命演变过程；懂得如何使用字典；能够明白自己所喜爱的作家、书画家透过作品所表达的思想，能阅读和稍理解不同文化背景的文学作品。

四年级：用电脑运算很大的数位，比较100万以内的数字大小，学习小数和分数，画图表；能通过地图、照片、图表来解释世界上各地区气候的不同；通过阅读，进一步了解不同的文学形式，比如科幻作品、传记等。

五年级：会列、读各种表格，熟练分数的加、减、乘、除运算；能够利用图书馆的系统和资料进行研究；通过做笔记对各种资讯进行比较和综合；开始撰写非虚拟的报告和五段体的短文；学会写正式、非正式以及朋友间的书信；懂得对不同类型的书籍进行分门别类，能掌握一本书的主要内容，并针对其构思、背景、人物塑造、表达方式、语言艺术等进行评论。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



炮兵指挥官：自由开炮！

新兵：威尔在哪儿？

注释：“at will”意为“自由地，随心所欲地”，新兵却把“Fire at will”理解成向一个名叫“Will”的人开炮。

### Answer

I. 1. chauffeur 2. confetti 3. moccasin 4. sugar

5. banana 6. chop suey

II. 1. c 2. a 3. g 4. d 5. e 6. h 7. f 8. i 9. b

III. 1. milkshake (奶昔) 2. cupboard (碗柜)

3. drugstore (药房) 4. earthquake (地震)

5. headquarters (总部)

6. speechless (说不出话的)

7. underground (地下的；地铁)

IV. ACROSS 6. worship 7. pray 8. cross 9. bible

DOWN 2. holy 3. religion 4. bishop 5. sacred

7. pastor



# 3

# Subject-verb Agreement

## 主谓一致



主谓一致是英语与汉语的重大区别之一，因此也是中国学生最容易忽视的地方，如果掌握不好，很容易出洋相。为了说出一口流利、地道的口语，我们必须对这个问题引起足够的重视。

A sentence, in order to be complete, must have a **subject**<sup>1</sup> and a verb. For a sentence to be written correctly, the subject and the verb must agree. For example, verbs which end in *-s* or *-es* are used in sentences about one person, place, or thing. (One **exception**<sup>2</sup> to this usage is when the subject is *I* or *you*. When the subject is *I* or *you*, do not add *-s* or *-es* to the verb). When the subject is more than one person, place, or thing, do not add *-s* or *-es* to the verb. Compare the subjects and verbs in these sentences.

### 1. Joseph and Mary go.

Paul goes.

### 2. I read books.

They read books.

He reads books.

### 3. Robins<sup>3</sup> sing.

The robin sings.

### 4. She does all her work.

They do all their work.

### 5. I try hard.

People try hard.

She tries hard.

This lesson is just one small part of subject-verb agreement rules, but it is very important that these easier rules be learned before going on to the more difficult ones.

## Complete these activities.

Choose the correct verb to complete each sentence. Underline the word you choose.

- a. Bob often \_\_\_\_\_ at our house. (stay stays)
- b. I would like to \_\_\_\_\_ with you. (come comes)
- c. Mary and Sue \_\_\_\_\_ very well. (swim swims)
- d. Bill always \_\_\_\_\_ the groceries<sup>d</sup> for me. (carry carries)
- e. The truck \_\_\_\_\_ at all crossings. (stop stops)



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **subject** ['sʌbdʒɪkt] *n.* 主语

2. **exception** [ɪk'sepʃən] *n.* 例外, 除外

3. **robin** ['rɒbɪn] *n.* 知更鸟

4. **grocery** ['grəʊsəri] *n.* 食品, 杂货



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. exception (to) 例外

eg. Most of the buildings in the town are modern, but the church is an exception.

城里大多是现代建筑, 但那座教堂是个例外。

There are always a lot of exceptions to grammar rules.

语法规则总是有很多例外。

### 2. ...it is very important that these easier rules be learned...

这是一个 “It is + 形容词或过去分词 + that 主语从句” 句型。当句中的形容词或过去分词为 important, essential, necessary, vital, strange, demanded, required, ordered 等词时, 所引导的主语从句的谓语动词必须使用 should 型虚拟, 即 “should + 动词原形” 或省略 should 直接用动词原形。

eg. It's important that the hotel receptionist make sure that the guests are registered correctly.

旅馆的前台接待员一定要确保旅客都正确地办理入住手续, 这一点很重要。

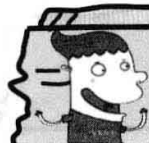
It's essential that these application forms be sent back as early as possible.

这些申请表应该尽早寄回，这非常关键。

**3. go on to sth** 进而转入另外一件事；接着开始另一个项目

eg. Let's go on to the next item on the agenda.

咱们接着进行下一项议程吧。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**I. Correct these statements. Write the correct verb on the line to the right of each sentence.**

- a. I goes to the store for my mother. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. The children plays ball. \_\_\_\_\_
- c. The horse trot slowly. \_\_\_\_\_
- d. He do a good job. \_\_\_\_\_
- e. They tries hard. \_\_\_\_\_

**II. Change these statements and questions so that they speak of more than one. Use your best handwriting.**

- a. The child goes to school. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. Does the eagle fly? \_\_\_\_\_
- c. The pup plays. \_\_\_\_\_
- d. Does the girl study? \_\_\_\_\_
- e. He tries to do well. \_\_\_\_\_



## 参考译文

一个完整的句子必须有一个主语和一个谓语动词。而且，句子要正确的话，主语和谓语必须一致。例如，以-s 或-es结尾的动词用在主语是单个人、地点或者事物的句子当中（除非主语是I和you，此时动词不加-s或-es）。当主语是多个人、地点或者事物时，动词不加-s或-es。

比较下列句子中的主语和谓语。（注：由于汉语中没有与英语相对应的动词单复数变化，故以下例句不译出。请读者认真阅读原句比较其差异。这些例句谓语动词的变化皆由主语的单复数变化引起。）

这一课所讲内容只是主谓一致众多规则中的一小部分。但在学习更难的内容之前我们一定要先把简单的学好，这点非常重要。

完成以下练习。

选择正确的动词形式填空。在所选单词下面划线。

- a. 鲍勃经常待在我们的屋子里。
- b. 我想和你一起来。
- c. 玛丽和苏游泳都游得很好。
- d. 比尔总是帮我提我买的菜。
- e. 那辆卡车在每个路口都停。

参考答案

课内练习

- a. stays b. come c. swim d. carries e. stops

课后练习

- I. a. go b. play c. trots d. does e. try

- II. a. The children go to school.

b. Do the eagles fly?

c. The pups play.

d. Do the girls study?

e. They try to do well.

## “美”事一桩

# 美国教师的聘任

美国学校对所聘请教师的学历和素质都有很高的要求。现在，许多州都已经明文规定，新的小学教师必须拥有硕士以上学位并取得教师资格。除了学历，教师还应具有学识丰富、诚实正直、身体健康等素质才有资格应聘。

美国聘用教师的实际权限属于地方教育董事会。首先，由学区人事关系部主任在报纸和杂志上公开刊登招聘广告。广告必须公开有关空缺职位的详细情况，包括校名、年级、学科、职位的资格要求、工作量、报酬以及申请程序。然后，学区管理者根据申请人的各种书面材料，选择3—5位候选人参加面试。这些书面材料包括：学历证书和教师许可证（复印件）、测验成绩（包括全国或州教师考试成绩单和学区的教师能力测验成绩单）、健康证明、推荐信等。

接下来通过面试全面考察应聘者的性格特征、文化背景、知识水平、各方面能力以及教育观念。负责面试的委员会一般包括：学区有关部门的负责人，聘用教师的学校校长、教导主任、年级组长或学科主任，有时也邀请家长和学生代表。学校根据面试结果和书面材料定出候选人名次。

一般情况下，学区教务长还要对首选至第三候选人进行自由式漫谈，提出录用的最后建议，书面上报学区教育委员会，并对录用过程作出说明。地方教育董事会依法拥有任命权，因此有权否决学区教务长推荐的人选，这时教务长就得重新推荐第二候选人，直至获得地方教育董事会的任命。获得任命的教师需要与地方教育委员会签订聘约，通过契约的形式来规定并保障双方的权利与义务。

在美国，每所学校都有一个由家长、教师、学生代表组成的评价机构，对教师全年的教学情况进行评价，以此决定第二年是否续聘。

美国学校教师的流动性较高，每年都会有一次学校选择老师、老师选择学校的机会。教师工作几年之后，如果需要进行进修深造，就可以脱产学习，费用由政府给予补贴。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### A Riddle

What is black when it is clean and white when it is dirty?

什么东西干净的时候是黑色的，脏了之后反而是白色的？

### Answer

A blackboard.

# Greedy, Selfish, and Honor Go Out to Dinner

## 贪婪、自私和荣誉一起出去吃饭

4



本篇文章通过一篇有趣的故事，为人们定义了贪婪、自私和荣誉，形象生动地为人们展示了什么是贪婪、自私和荣誉。

One day Greedy, Selfish, and Honor went out to dine with their uncle and aunt, Strength and Virtue<sup>1</sup>. Their mother, whose name was Poor, waited alone for her children's return.

Now, Greedy and Selfish enjoyed the great feast<sup>2</sup> that had been prepared for them. They gave no thought of saving any of it to take home to their mother. But Honor did not forget her. Of every fine dish that was brought round, she placed a small part in her napkin<sup>3</sup>. That way, Poor might have a share in the treat<sup>4</sup>.

Poor kept watching for her children all night long. On their return she said, "Well, children, what have you brought home for me?"

Greedy (who was the oldest) said, "I have brought nothing home for you. I went out to enjoy myself with my friends — not to fetch<sup>5</sup> dinner for my mother!"

And Selfish said, "Neither have I brought

anything home for you, Mother. You could hardly expect me to bring a collection of good things for you. I merely<sup>6</sup> went out for my own pleasure."

But Honor said, "Mother, fetch a plate. See what I have brought you." Shaking out her napkin, she showered down such a choice<sup>7</sup> dinner as never was seen before.

Then Poor turned to Greedy and spoke thus<sup>8</sup>, "You went out to amuse<sup>9</sup> yourself with your friends. You feasted and enjoyed yourself, without any thought of your mother at home. So you shall be cursed<sup>10</sup>. From now on, you will never be satisfied<sup>11</sup>. You shall want everything you see. And people shall dislike you, and shall refuse to share with you."

(And that is why Greedy is never satisfied to this day.)

Then she turned to Selfish and said, "You also are one who forgot your mother in the



midst<sup>12</sup> of your selfish pleasures — hear your punishment<sup>13</sup>. You shall always have trouble making friends<sub>6</sub>. And people shall dislike and avoid<sup>14</sup> you from this very time<sub>7</sub>.”

(And that is why Selfish is so disagreeable<sup>15</sup>.)

But to Honor she said, “Daughter, you remembered your mother, and kept for her a share in your own enjoyment. From now on you shall be loved. All parents shall want you for their own child. And people shall always call you ‘blessed<sup>16</sup>’.”

(And that is why Honor is so well-loved and beautiful even to this day.)

## THE END

Each paragraph of the story is written around a main idea. The first paragraph tells about Greedy, Selfish, and Honor going out to dinner. It tells about such details as whom they went with and how their mother waited for their return. However, the main idea is that they went out to dinner.

The second paragraph tells that Greedy and Selfish were different from their sister Honor.



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **virtue** ['vɜ:tju:] *n.* 品德, 美德

2. **feast** [fi:st] *n.* 盛宴, 筵席

3. **napkin** ['næpkɪn] *n.* 餐巾, 小块布或毛巾

4. **treat** [tri:t] *n.* 宴请, 款待 *vt.* 视为, 对待; 论述; 治疗; 款待

5. **fetch** [fetʃ] *v.* 拿; 取

6. **merely** ['miəli] *adv.* 仅仅, 只不过

7. **choice** [tʃɔɪs] *n.* 选择 *adj.* 精选的, 优质的, 上等的

8. **thus** [ðʌs] *adv.* 如此, 像这样; 到如此程度; 因此, 从而, 于是

9. **amuse** [ə'mju:z] *vt.* 给……娱乐(消遣); 使……喜欢(高兴); 逗……乐(笑)

习惯用语

be amused at 以……为乐; 对……觉得有趣[好笑]

be amused by 以……为乐; 对……觉得有趣[好笑]

be amused with 以……为乐; 对……觉得有趣[好笑]

amuse oneself with 以……自娱

10. **curse** [kɜ:s] *n./vt.* 咒骂, 诅咒

11. **satisfy** ['sætɪsfaɪ] *vt.* 使满足; 使满意

12. **midst** ['mɪdst] *n.* 中间

13. **punishment** ['pʌnɪʃmənt] *n.* 惩罚

14. **avoid** [ə'vɔɪd] *vt.* 避免, 回避

15. **disagreeable** [dɪsə'grɪəbl] *adj.* 令人不快的, 厌恶的, 不合意的

16. **blessed** ['blesɪd] *a.* 神圣的, 受祝福的



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. give no thought of 没有考虑，想都没想

e.g. He gave no thought of returning the money he had borrowed from his brother.

他想都没想过要把从哥哥那儿借来的钱还回去。

### 2. (in) that way 用那种办法，那样的话

e.g. Add more milk to make it thinner, the soup is better that way.

再往汤里加点儿牛奶，那样的话汤会更好喝。

It really angers me to hear you talking to her in that way.

听到你用那种方式同她讲话我很气愤。

### 3. all night/day long 整夜/天

e.g. It snowed all day long. 雪下了一整天。

She lay awake all night long. 她整整一夜没合上眼。

### 4. Neither have I brought anything home for you, Mother. 我也没有……

此处neither用作副词，作“也不”解释，放在句首，表示前面否定的内容也适用于另一个人或物，句子须部分倒装。此时也可用nor替换neither使用。

e.g. If you don't support the plan, neither / nor will I.

如果你不支持那项计划，我也不支持。

I hadn't been to Beijing before, and neither had my wife.

我没去过北京，我妻子也没有。

### 5. She showered down such a choice dinner as never was seen before.

此处such as 用作关系代词引导定语从句。such as 可以当做一个整体使用，也可以把such放置在所修饰的名词之前，as 则相当于关系代词。

e.g. We can give you a chance such as nobody else ever has.

我们能给你一个别人从未有过的机会。

Then I left it, feeling such a weight at my heart as could not be lifted away.

然后我离开那里，感到一种无法摆脱的沉重心情。

### 6. have trouble/difficulty (in) doing sth 做某事有麻烦/困难

e.g. He has trouble finishing this project because the foundation was not set up correctly.

要完成这个项目他现在有大问题了，因为那地基打错了。

I have considerable difficulty (in) persuading her to leave.

我费了很大劲想说服她离开。

**7. this very time** 恰好这时，就是这个时候。此处very作为形容词，表示强调。

e.g. That's the very thing I need.

那正是我需要的东西。

Red Army fought a battle on this very spot.

红军就在此地打过一仗。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. Choose the sentence that gives the main idea of the third paragraph.

- A. Honor had food in her napkin.
- B. Poor waited all night for Greedy, Selfish, and Honor.
- C. Honor took food to their mother, but Greedy and Selfish did not.

2. Choose the sentence that best gives the main idea of the paragraph that begins, "Then Poor turned to Greedy and spoke thus..."

- A. Greedy enjoyed the meal.
- B. Greedy did not think of her mother.
- C. Because of her actions, Greedy will never be satisfied.

3. According to the story, why were Greedy and Selfish punished?

---



---

4. What happened to Honor because she was kind to Poor?

---



---

### II. Use the words from the text to complete these sentences.

- 1. The beautiful princess was \_\_\_\_\_ by a bad witch and turned into an old woman.
- 2. We had better \_\_\_\_\_ unnecessary troubles.
- 3. Hard work and plain living are traditional \_\_\_\_\_ of Chinese people.
- 4. Nobody likes him because of his \_\_\_\_\_ disposition.



5. I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ with your explanation.
6. May your lives be \_\_\_\_\_ abundantly.
7. His funny movement \_\_\_\_\_ everyone present.
8. This is \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning. We still have a lot of work to do.

## 参考译文

有一天，贪婪、自私和荣誉出去与她们的舅舅力量、舅妈美德共进晚餐，她们的母亲贫穷在家里等候她们归来。

贪婪和自私尽情地享用为她们准备的丰盛大餐，丝毫没有想过要带一些回去给她们的母亲尝尝。但荣誉没有忘记妈妈，她从端上来的每一道菜中都取出一小份，用餐巾包起来，这样贫穷也能品尝到这些美食了。

贫穷一整个晚上都在等候她的孩子们。她们一到家她就问道：“孩子们，你们都带了些什么回来给我呀？”

老大贪婪答道：“我什么都没有带回来。我出去是为了和我的朋友玩乐，不是要给我的母亲带吃的！”

老二自私接着说道：“妈妈，我也没带。你根本就不用指望我会带一堆好东西回来给你。我出去只是为了我自己享乐。”

但是荣誉说，“妈妈，您拿个盘子来，看看我都给您带了什么。”她抖开餐巾，美味的菜肴

像雨点一样掉落下来，丰盛无比。

这时贫穷转向贪婪，对她说：“你出去和你的朋友吃喝玩乐，根本没有想到你家里的母亲。因此你将受到诅咒。从现在开始，你永远不会满足，不管看到什么你都想要。人们都讨厌你，拒绝与你分享他们拥有的东西。”

（这就是贪婪至今永不满足的原因。）

而后她又转向自私，说：“你也是个只顾自己玩乐、把母亲抛在脑后的人，听听对你的惩罚吧！你将永远交不到朋友。从现在开始，没有人会喜欢你，他们都将躲着你。”

（这就是自私如此令人讨厌的原因。）

但她对荣誉说：“女儿，你记着你的母亲，在自己享用大餐时不忘给她留下一份。从现在开始你将会受到别人的爱戴。所有的父母都希望他们的孩子能有你为伴，人们会一直说你是‘带来好运的人’。”

（这就是至今荣誉如此美丽、如此受人喜爱的原因。）

这个故事的每一个段落都围绕着一个中心思想写成。第一段讲述了贪婪、自私、荣誉三个人出去吃饭。虽然也提到其他一些细节，例如她们要和谁吃饭，她们的母亲如何在家等待她们回去，但段落大意仍是她们出去吃饭。

第二段讲述了贪婪与自私的行为与她们的妹妹荣誉如何的不同。

## “美”事一桩

## 思想道德教育

美国的中小学没有专门的思想品德课,但这并不代表美国学校就不对学生进行思想道德教育。学校通过开设宗教知识课、公民课和社会课来对学生开展思想道德教育。老师会教给孩子们基本的社会知识,如与人分享(sharing)、轮流参与(take turns)、团队合作(team work)等,以及抽烟、毒品、暴力的坏处,等等。他们不支持道德说教的方式,而更多地采用引导和以身作则的教育方法,来达到潜移默化的目的。在美国的中小学,每间教室都会悬挂一面国旗,并有三张地图:世界地图、美国地图和本州地图。每天上课前或课间,全体学生都会站立起来,面对国旗,把手放在胸口,庄严宣誓效忠美国。老师也会随时向孩子们介绍本国和本州的地理情况,让孩子们更好地了解祖国和家乡,培养他们的爱国主义热情。

此外,美国中小学的思想道德教育还通过开展各种校内外活动进行,例如,组织孩子们参加公益活动、社区服务,参观警察局、博物馆,等等。家长在日常生活中也身体力行给孩子们塑造榜样,让孩子们从小就懂得为人处世的一些礼仪和原则。宗教对美国人道德观的形成也有着十分重要的意义。在美国,教堂要比学校多得多,星期天许多家长都会带着孩子到教堂做礼拜。基督教教人要具有同情心、诚实和自尊、积善抑恶,这些对孩子思想道德形成是有益的。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



你竞选过吗?

有啊,昨天早上闹钟没响,我就是跑着去办公室的。

注释:“run for office”是成语,意为“竞选”,听话人只理解了字面意思。

## Answer

- I. 1. B      2. C      3. Because they enjoyed themselves without giving any thought of their mother.  
4. From then on, she is well-loved and beautiful.  
II. 1. cursed 2. avoid 3. virtues 4. disagreeable  
5. satisfied 6. blessed 7. amused 8. merely

# Verbs—Past, Present, and Future Tense

## 动词的过去时、现在时及将来时



英语里的动词有时态的区别，主要分为过去时、现在时和将来时，汉语里面却没有这种区别，因此很多中国学生经常会忽略英语的时态，说出的句子都是一般现在时，这样会贻笑大方的。为了避免这种尴尬，我们现在就来了解一下英语各种时态的区别吧！

Remember that verbs show *action*<sup>1</sup> or a state of being. They show action that happened in the past, that is happening now, or that will happen in the future. This way of showing action, past, present, and future, is called *tense*<sup>2</sup>.

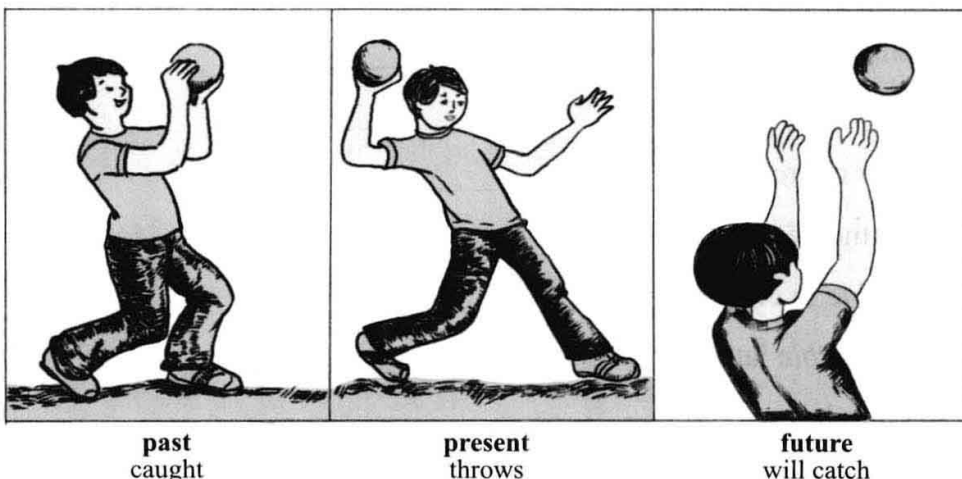
The *present* tense expresses action that is going on now. The *past* tense expresses action that happened in the past. The *future* tense expresses action that will take place in the future. Use the helping verb *will* or *shall*

with the future tense. Use *shall* with the person speaking; use *will* with the person spoken to and with the person spoken about. Other verb tenses can be studied; but, for now, try to *master*<sup>3</sup> these three. Notice the tense in the following sentences.

The girls and boys prayed. (past tense)

The girls and boys pray. (present tense)

The girls and boys will pray. (future tense)



past  
caught

present  
throws

future  
will catch





## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **action** ['ækʃən] *n.* 动作, 行动; 作用
2. **tense** [tens] *n.* 【语】时态, 时 *adj.* 紧张的, 拉紧的
3. **master** ['mɑ:stə] *vt.* 征服; 控制; 精通 *n.* 主人; 硕士



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**take place** *happen* 发生

e.g. Their wedding will take place next month.

他们的婚礼下个月举行。

A bank robbery took place just now.

刚才有人抢了银行。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**I. Tell if the action in each sentence happened in the past, if the action is happening in the present, or if the action will happen in the future. Write past, present, or future on the lines to show your answer.**

1. We went to church yesterday.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Tomorrow we shall go to church.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I am leaving for church.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. He is studying the *Bible*.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. I studied the *Bible* in church.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. I shall study the *Bible* later.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. She sang in church.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. She will sing in church. \_\_\_\_\_

9. She is singing in church. \_\_\_\_\_

## II. Choose the verb which best completes each sentence.

### Underline the verb you choose.

1. We shall \_\_\_\_\_ you tomorrow. (saw see)

2. They \_\_\_\_\_ for school an hour ago. (leave left)

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ you at church Sunday. (saw seen)

4. Bob \_\_\_\_\_ here now. (is was)

5. We shall \_\_\_\_\_ later. (work worked)

## III. 写出以下动词的过去式。

1. catch \_\_\_\_\_ 2. rise \_\_\_\_\_ 3. blow \_\_\_\_\_ 4. bet \_\_\_\_\_

5. eat \_\_\_\_\_ 6. feel \_\_\_\_\_ 7. fly \_\_\_\_\_ 8. keep \_\_\_\_\_

9. learn \_\_\_\_\_ 10. meet \_\_\_\_\_ 11. overcome \_\_\_\_\_

12. ring \_\_\_\_\_ 13. sleep \_\_\_\_\_ 14. wear \_\_\_\_\_ 15. shut \_\_\_\_\_

## 参考译文

动词表示的是动作和状态。它们可以描述过去发生的、现在正在进行的以及未来将要发生的动作。这种用来表示过去、现在及将来的动词形式就叫做时态。

现在时描述现在发生的动作，过去时描述过去发生的动作，将来时描述未来将要发生的动作。将来时要借助助动词will 和shall。shall用于第一人称，will用于第二和第三人称。我们还会

学习其他时态，但目前只须掌握这三个基本时态。请观察下列句子所使用的时态。

这些男孩和女孩祈祷过了。(过去时)

这些男孩和女孩正在祈祷。(现在时)

这些男孩和女孩将要祈祷。(将来时)



## “美”事一桩

## 家庭旧货出售

在美国，一到周末，在市区或者社区附近的公告栏(bulletin)里就会出现许多关于家庭旧货出售的广告，说明甩卖的时间、地点和主要物品。甩卖场所设在庭院的就叫yard sale，设在车库的叫garage sale，两者性质一样，都是甩卖旧物。这可能是因为主人要搬家，有些东西带不走；或者仅仅是因为家里东西太多了，想要清理，或者要添置新的家具、电器、衣服了，或者小孩子长大了玩具用不着了。所有用不到的东西都可以摆出来搞一个yard sale或garage sale，保证会有很多人前来参观选购。这种甩卖活动是美国人周末最爱的活动之一了。除了极个别的城市，这种甩卖都无需事先申请和交税。

甩卖当天，没有此起彼伏的叫卖声，也没有嘈杂的音乐，场面安安静静的，所有东西都收拾得干干净净，分门别类摆放整齐，贴上价格标签，远近的人们循着广告而来，翻看着商品，低声和主人交谈，讨价还价，气氛十分友好。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

## English Proverbs

Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.

情人眼里出西施。

No pain, no gain.

没有付出，没有收获。

Don't put the cart before the horse.

切勿本末倒置。

Two is company, but three is a crowd.

两人成伴，三人不欢。

## Answer

I. 1. past 2. future 3. future 4. present 5. past 6. future 7. past 8. future 9. present

II. 1. see 2. left 3. saw 4. is 5. work

III. 1. caught 2. rose 3. blew 4. bet 5. ate 6. felt 7. flew 8. kept 9. learnt/learned 10. met 11. overcame 12. rang 13. slept 14. wore 15. shut



# Joey and the Sad Tree

6

## 乔伊和悲伤的树



善良的乔伊一家人为了一颗悲伤的树能快乐起来，费尽心思。在乔伊一家人以及一群“特殊”朋友的帮助下，这颗树终于重新焕发了生机，大家都很开心。正如一首歌里唱的那样：只要人人都献出一点爱，世界将变成美好的人间。

Joey Prince was happy because he had many special friends. His special companions<sup>1</sup> were four squirrels, two rabbits, and many colorful birds that visited the bird feeder daily. In the large yard were thirteen trees of various sizes.

At mealtime each day, Joey and his family fed the birds, squirrels, and rabbits. Someone refilled the water container<sup>2</sup> everyday, too. The family gave the squirrels nuts and crackers<sup>3</sup>. Sometimes, as an extra treat, Mrs. Prince spread<sup>4</sup> peanut butter on the crackers. The rabbits were given lettuce<sup>5</sup> and carrot tops, which they loved, and the birds were fed birdseed and bread crumbs<sup>6</sup>.

Joey's special friends thanked Joey and his family in ways that delighted<sup>7</sup> everyone. The rabbits hopped<sup>8</sup> around and ate within arm's reach<sub>2</sub> of family members. Sometimes the squirrels sat on Joey's lap<sup>9</sup> to eat their food. The birds

often rested on his shoulders. Sue, Joey's younger sister, often played in the yard while the rabbits and birds ate nearby. Squirrels took nuts from Sue's hand. These wild animals came near to the people in Joey's family because they trusted them.

One day while playing in the yard, Joey noticed that a tree trunk<sup>10</sup> seemed to have a sad look. He ran into the house to tell his mother that the bark<sup>11</sup> on the tree formed a sad expression<sup>12</sup>.

Mother went into the yard to see for herself.

"Yes, Joey, that tree looks unhappy. We must find the reason why it is sad."

When his older sister, Liz, came home, Joey showed her the sad tree, too. "I'll think about how we can make it happy again," she said.

Joey and his family loved their home and

all the little animals that lived nearby. They were a happy family, who shared their thoughts with each other. If something troubled one of them, the rest knew about it. They sat down together and talked over<sub>3</sub> their problems. They had learned that they could solve<sup>13</sup> most of their problems together.

That night after dinner the family went into the living room to talk about the sad tree. Liz was the first person to enter the conversation.

Father told Joey that the tree should know that everyone in the family loved the tree.

The next morning Joey went into the yard, ran to the tree, and said, "Good morning, sad tree. Why are you unhappy?"

The sad tree replied, "I am the smallest tree around. The birds don't fly to my branches. The rabbits don't eat the grass around my trunk. The squirrels don't climb to my top. Some of the larger trees have swings on them. Nobody needs me. I don't fit in<sub>6</sub>." "I'm sorry you feel



"Let's build a seat around the tree so we can sit under its branches," she suggested.

"Liz, that is a good idea," Joey remarked<sup>14</sup>. He looked at his dad. "What about that idea, Dad?"

"I think that is a good idea, but why not<sub>4</sub> build seats around all the trees that don't have swings<sup>15</sup> hanging from them? I'll need help to build them," he answered. Sue, Joey's younger sister, added, "I know I can help by holding nails and running errands<sub>5</sub>."

The family also agreed that Joey should find out why the tree was sad. Mother and

like that," Joey said. "Maybe my family and friends can help you. After breakfast, I'll talk to my animal friends."

When breakfast time came, Joey brought nuts for the squirrels, carrots and lettuce for the rabbits, and birdseed and breadcrumbs for the birds. Joey also filled the drinking bowl with fresh water from the hose<sup>16</sup>.

The animals ate breakfast. A squirrel sat on Joey's lap eating a nut. A rabbit sat at Joey's feet munching<sup>17</sup> a lettuce leaf. Two birds ate birdseed and breadcrumbs from Joey's hand. Joey told his special friends why the tree was

sad. Joey thought he could depend on<sub>7</sub> his friends to help make the sad tree happy again.

The birds in one of the tallest trees stopped singing to listen to Joey. They did not like to think that someone was unhappy. As each animal heard why the tree was sad, the activity in the yard stopped. The birds flew to tell their friends. The squirrels and rabbits rushed to spread the news. The yard was quiet.

That night while Joey and his family were sleeping, the birds and little animals gathered near the creek<sup>18</sup>. They discussed how to help the sad tree. They wanted to help Joey and his family, too. They wanted to show their love for receiving fresh food and water each day.

One red bird said, "My friends and I will sing in the branches of the sad tree. We'll tell others, and they will begin to build nests in it."

A squirrel said, "My friends and I will climb the branches to eat our nuts. We'll hide our nuts in the sad tree, and we'll run all over its branches and play on it."

A rabbit said, "My friends and I will hop around the trunk of the sad tree. When we get tired, we'll eat some grass there, and take a nap<sub>8</sub> by its trunk."

A wise old owl was there. He said to all the animals, "Go to sleep now. Then you can get up early and surprise the sad tree, Joey, and Joey's family."

Early the next morning all the birds and animals met in the yard to launch<sup>19</sup> their

surprise for the sad tree. Joey awakened<sup>20</sup> to the sound of birds singing and the chattering of squirrels. When he went out into the yard, he saw that the tree was no longer sad.

The tree's turned-down bark was now turned up. Squirrels were running up the trunk. Some were eating nuts in the branches. Rabbits were eating the fresh green grass around the trunk. Birds of all kinds were singing in the happy tree.

Joey ran inside to tell the good news to his family. Mother, Father, Liz, and Sue came out into the yard and saw the happy tree.

Father said, "I'll start to build a seat around the happy tree today."

Mother said, "Let's all remember that to be happy, we must love and be loved in return<sub>10</sub>."



In a large tree nearby, the wise old owl was awakened by the happy sounds. He opened his eyes and looked down. He said to himself, "Everyone is happy because a kind boy and his family showed their love and kindness for a sad tree." The owl had a happy smile on his face as he closed his eyes and went back to sleep.



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. companion [kəm'pænjən] *n.* 伙伴, 伴侣
2. container [kən'teɪnə] *n.* 容器; 箱; 匣; 罐; 槽
3. cracker ['krækə] *n.* 爆竹, 鞭炮; [美]脆饼; 饼干
4. spread [spred] *vt.* 伸开, 展开; 传播; 涂抹, 敷
5. lettuce ['letɪs] *n.* 莴苣, 生菜
6. crumb [krʌm] *n.* 食物碎屑, (尤指) 面包屑
7. delight [dɪ'laɪt] *n.* 高兴, 愉快 *vt.* 使高兴, 乐于 *vi.* 感到高兴(或愉快、快乐)
8. hop [hɒp] *v.* 跳跃
9. lap [ləp] *n.* 膝盖; (跑道的) 一圈
10. trunk [trʌŋk] *n.* 树干; 身躯; 象鼻; 行李箱
11. bark [bɑ:k] *n.* 树皮
12. expression [ɪks'preʃən] *n.* 表达, 说明; 表情, 脸色
13. solve [sɒlv] *vt.* 解决
14. remark [rɪ'mɑ:k] *vt.* 评论, 议论
15. swing [swɪŋ] *n.* 秋千
16. hose [həʊz] *n.* 水管, 橡皮软管
17. munch [mʌntʃ] *v.* 用力咀嚼, 大声咀嚼
18. creek [kri:k] *n.* 小溪, 小河
19. launch [lɔ:ntʃ] *vt.* 发射(导弹等); 开展, 发动
20. awaken [ə'weɪkən] *v.* 唤醒, 唤起, 意识到



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. In the large yard were thirteen trees of various sizes.

此处为了加重语气或出于修辞的需要, 把地点状语 “in the large yard” 提前到句首, 句子发生倒装。这种情况(强调状语、表语或分词)须用全倒装。

e.g. Across the desert walked the old man himself.

老人独自穿越沙漠。

In the vast ocean sailed a small boat.

宽阔的海面上行驶着一只小船。

Many a time have I met him in the street.

我在街上遇到过他很多次。(强调时间状语)

### 2. within arm's (one's) reach/beyond (out of) the reach of sb 伸手可及/够不到



e.g. He rushed out angrily, hitting anyone within his reach.

他气呼呼地跑了出去，见人就打。

The shot was well beyond the reach of the goalkeeper.

这记射门使守门员鞭长莫及。

### 3. talk sth over 详细讨论，详谈

e.g. You will find it helpful to talk things over with your friends.

把事情和朋友谈一谈，可能会有帮助。

### 4. why not do sth/why don't you do sth 为什么不做某事（表建议）

e.g. Why not go out and have a walk?

为什么不出去散散步呢？

Why don't you come with us?

为什么不和我们一起来呢？

### 5. run errands (errand ['erənd] *n.* 差事) 办差事，跑腿儿

e.g. He often runs errands for his grandmother.

他经常给他的祖母跑腿儿。

### 6. fit in (with sb/sth) （与……）合得来；适应

e.g. I don't fit in with these people.

我与这些人格格不入。

Does this plan fit in with your arrangements?

这个计划与你的安排冲突吗？

### 7. depend on/upon sb/sth 依靠，信赖

e.g. I know I can always depend on her to deal with such situations.

我知道我可以依靠她来应对这种棘手的局面。

### 8. take/have a nap 打个盹，小睡一会儿

e.g. Grandpa likes to have a nap after lunch.

爷爷喜欢在午饭后小睡一会儿。

### 9. awaken to sth （使）醒来；意识到

e.g. She awakened to her parents talking.

她听到父母谈话的声音醒了过来。

I have awakened to the new challenges.

我已经意识到了新的挑战。

**10. in return (for sth)** 作为（对……的）回报；作为回应

e.g. Can I buy you a drink in return for your help?

为了感谢你帮忙，我请你喝一杯可以吗？

I asked her opinion, but she asked mine in return.

我问她意见，她却反过来问我认为如何。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. Joey is happy because \_\_\_\_\_

- A. he has two sisters.
- B. he has a large backyard.
- C. he has many special friends.
- D. he has no worries.

2. Which sentence best tells why Joey's family was happy?

- A. Joey and his family loved their home.
- B. Everyone smiled and mother patted Sue's head.
- C. They shared their thoughts.
- D. Joey ran to Liz and hugged her.

3. Which sentence best describes the meaning of the story?

- A. "Nobody needs me."
- B. When Joey went to the backyard, he saw that the tree was no longer sad.
- C. "Let's all remember that to be happy, we must love and be loved in return."
- D. "Everyone is happy because a kind boy and his family showed love and kindness for a sad tree."

**II. Choose words from the following list that could be used in each sentence to replace the underlined word. Write the letter in the blank.**

a. planned

b. make

c. poured

d. belong

e. glad

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I don't fit in.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The birds and little animals decided how to help.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Others will build nests in it.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Everyone is happy because the boy was kind.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Joey ran fresh water from the hose.

**III. Circle the word that is closest in meaning to the underlined word(s) in the sentence. Write the letter of the new answer in the blank.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ A rabbit sat near Joey's feet munching a lettuce leaf.  
A. licking B. gobbling C. chewing
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Nobody needs me.  
A. likes B. wants C. cares for
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The animals will launch their surprise.  
A. start B. shoot off C. make noise
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The animals gathered at the creek.  
A. collected B. pulled together C. met
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Joey felt he could depend on his friends  
A. listen B. count on C. see

**IV. Match each word and its meaning. Write the letter of the correct answer on the line.**

- |                                       |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. difficulty, pain, or worry _____   | a. special   |
| 2. what one thinks _____              | b. container |
| 3. anything that gives pleasure _____ | c. thought   |
| 4. to settle _____                    | d. trouble   |
| 5. particular _____                   | e. to rest   |
| 6. something that can hold _____      | f. treat     |
| something else within it _____        |              |

## 参考译文

乔伊·普林斯生活得很快乐，因为他有很多特殊的朋友。这些特殊的伙伴分别是四只松鼠，两只兔子，以及很多只羽毛鲜艳、天天到鸟食槽来吃食的鸟儿。这个大院子里有大大小小13棵树。

在每天的吃饭时间，乔伊和他的家人都会来喂喂那些鸟儿、松鼠和兔子。水槽每天也都会加满水。他们给松鼠吃坚果和饼干，有时候，普林斯太太还会在饼干上涂花生酱。给兔子的是它们喜爱的莴苣和胡萝卜叶子。鸟儿则吃鸟食和面包屑。

乔伊的特殊朋友们用令乔伊和他的家人都感到十分高兴的方式来感谢他们。兔子在他们身边蹦跳吃食，乔伊和他的家人伸手就能摸到它们。松鼠有时候坐在乔伊的腿上吃东西，鸟儿则经常停在他的肩上。乔伊的妹妹苏常常在院子里玩，兔子和鸟儿就在她附近吃食，松鼠还会从她手中接过坚果。这些野生动物之所以如此接近乔伊一家是因为信任他们。

有一天，乔伊在院子里玩，他发现一棵树看上去很悲伤。他跑进屋子里，告诉他妈妈有棵树的树皮呈现出一副悲伤的面容。

妈妈听了亲自走到院子里去看。

“你说得没错，乔伊，那棵树看上去确实不快乐。我们必须找出它悲伤的原因。”

乔伊的姐姐莉斯回到家后，乔伊也带她去看那棵悲伤的树。她说，“我会想想该怎么让它重新快乐起来的。”

乔伊一家都很爱他们的家和住在附近的那些

小动物。他们过得很幸福，因为他们互相分享彼此的心事和想法。只要其中一个人有了烦恼，其他人都会知道。他们就一起坐下来讨论研究他们的问题。他们明白，这样可以解决大多数问题。

那天晚饭后全家人到客厅里讨论那棵悲伤的树。莉斯第一个开口说话。

她建议，“我们在树下安一张椅子吧，这样我们就可以坐在它的树荫下了。”

“莉斯，好主意。”乔伊说道。他看着他爸爸，“这个主意怎么样呢，爸爸？”

“我认为不错，但为什么不在所有没挂秋千的树下面都安上椅子呢？我需要你们来帮我做这些椅子。”爸爸答道。乔伊的妹妹苏立刻接着说，“我可以帮忙扶扶钉子、跑跑腿什么的。”

全家人还一致认为乔伊应该去找出那棵树悲伤的原因。爸爸和妈妈告诉乔伊，要让那棵树知道家里的每一个人都爱它。

第二天早晨乔伊到院子里去，跑向那棵树，跟它说：“早上好，悲伤的树，你为什么不快乐呢？”

树答道：“我是这里最小的一棵树。鸟儿不肯飞到我的身上，兔子不愿在我脚边吃草，松鼠也不愿爬上我的肩头。有些比我大的树上面挂着秋千，我却没有。没有人需要我，我和这里格格不入。”“你这么想我很难过，”乔伊说，“或许我的家人和朋友能帮助你。吃完早饭我会和我的动物朋友们说一说的。”

到了吃早饭的时候，乔伊带上坚果去喂松鼠，胡萝卜和莴苣喂兔子，鸟食和面包屑喂鸟



儿，还用水管给饮水槽加满了清水。

动物们正在享用早餐。一只松鼠坐在乔伊腿上吃着一个坚果，一只兔子蹲在他脚边嚼着莴苣叶，还有两只鸟儿从他手里啄食鸟食和面包屑。乔伊把那棵树悲伤的原因说给它们听。他想他可以借助这些朋友的力量使那棵悲伤的树重新快乐起来。

那些站在一棵最高的树上面唱歌的鸟儿也都停下来听乔伊说话。听到有人心情不好它们可不愿意。现在每一只动物都听说了那棵树悲伤的原因，院子里的活动都停了下来。鸟儿都飞去告诉它们的朋友。松鼠和兔子急急忙忙地跑去传播这个消息。院子里静悄悄的。

那天晚上，乔伊一家都在睡觉，鸟儿们和其他小动物们在小溪边集合。它们要讨论如何才能帮助那棵悲伤的树。它们也想帮助乔伊一家。因为乔伊一家，它们每天都可以吃到新鲜的水和食物，现在想要报答他们。

一只红色的鸟儿说：“我和我的朋友们会到那棵树上唱歌，我们会告诉其他鸟儿，让它们将来到那棵树上筑巢。”

一只松鼠说：“我和我的朋友们会爬到树枝上去吃坚果，把坚果藏在树上，在它的枝叶间攀爬玩耍。”

一只兔子说：“我和我的朋友们将在它身边蹦跳。累了我们就在那儿吃草，然后靠在它身上打个盹儿。”

在场的还有一只聪明的猫头鹰。它对所有动物说：“现在去睡觉吧，这样明天才能早起，给悲伤的树和乔伊一家一个惊喜。”

第二天一大早，所有的鸟儿和动物们都来到院子里会合，准备实施它们的计划，给悲伤的树一个惊喜。乔伊被鸟儿的歌唱声和松鼠叽叽喳喳的声音唤醒了，他走到院子里一看，那棵悲伤的树已经不再悲伤了。

它的树皮原先往下拉着，呈现出一副垂头丧气的模样，现在却变得神采奕奕了。松鼠在树上爬来爬去，有几只还坐在树枝上吃坚果。兔子们在树下吃青草。各种各样的鸟儿在这棵快乐的树上唱歌。

乔伊跑进屋里把这个好消息告诉他的家人。妈妈、爸爸、莉斯和苏都来到院子里看那棵快乐的树。

爸爸说：“我今天就开始在这棵树下安椅子。”

妈妈说：“我们都要记住，只有爱别人并因此而被别人爱，我们才会快乐。”

在附近的一棵大树上，那只聪明的猫头鹰被这些欢声笑语叫醒了。它睁开眼睛向下看了看，自言自语地说道：“由于一个善良的男孩和他的家人对一棵悲伤的树表示了爱和关心，现在所有人都很快乐。”然后它闭上眼睛，脸上浮现出一个快乐的笑容，重新进入了梦乡。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国人的住房

我们在国内都听说了美国人的住房条件如何如何好，住的几乎都是占地两三百平米、独立的、有庭院有草坪的“别墅”，而且价格才几十万美金，并不比国内多数城市的普通商品房贵。这里我们不讨论两国的房价，只简单对美国的房型做一个介绍。

最好的当属独立家庭住房（single family house, 简称house）。这是最传统的单门独户的住房，有自己的车库、地下室和庭院。很多家庭都住这样的房子，并且都有庭院和后院。这种房子出售时连着地皮一起出售，所以主人可以随心所欲地在地皮上修建各种设施，比如小花园、小球场，或安装秋千、吊环、滑轮车等。许多美国人都是先买了地皮，然后自己设计建造房子。

其次是城市房子（townhouse），其外表看是一栋小楼，但分两家或几家居住，各家有各家的门，也有自己的小块草坪或车库。

再次是共管房（condominium）。这是介于城市房子和公寓之间的住宅，外表看是一栋低层楼房，住户一般由多家或十几户组成，两三家共享出入口，草坪、车库大都是集体管理。

最后是公寓（apartment），由高层大楼组成，出入口、车库、绿地以及各种设施都是大家共享。不过美国的公寓较少，据统计只有2%。公寓也分几类，比如顶楼大房（penthouse）以及酒店式管理的豪华小区。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



军士：你今天早上刮脸了吗？

新兵：刮了，先生。

军士：那么下次刮脸站得离剃须刀近一点。

## Answer

- I. 1. C 2. C 3. D  
 II. 1. d 2. a 3. b 4. e 5. c  
 III. 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B  
 IV. 1. d 2. c 3. f 4. e 5. a 6. b

# Paragraph Writing

## 段落写作



英语的语言课会教大家如何写作。一篇文章都是由一个个段落组成的，我们应该如何写好这些小段落呢？格式上又有哪些地方需要注意呢？这篇文章将会为我们提供一个参考的标准。

Every paragraph should have a topic sentence and several sentences that give details about that topic.

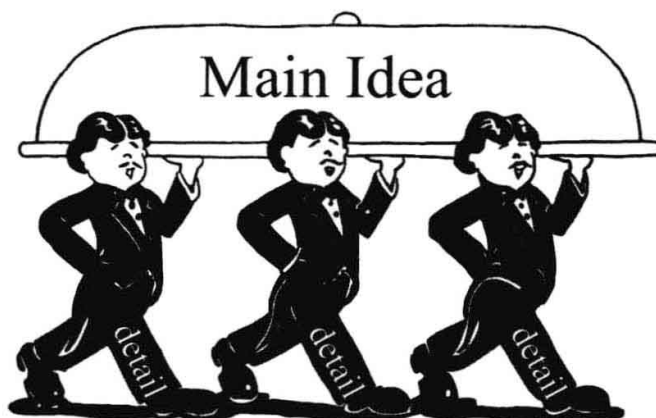
Look at this paragraph.

Roy and Roger Miller are twins who love airplanes. They love to build **model**<sup>1</sup> airplanes. They love to fly paper airplanes. They are **thrilled**<sup>2</sup> when a plane they have made goes up in the air and flies. Someday they will go up in a plane with their neighbor, Mr. Johnson. He is a pilot. When they get big, they want to learn to fly.

In this paragraph the first sentence is

the topic sentence. All the other sentences tell about that first sentence — what these boys like. We say that these sentences support the topic, or main idea.

To make a paragraph interesting, we use adjectives and adverbs. Every sentence in a paragraph begins with a **capital**<sup>3</sup> letter and ends with a **period**<sup>4</sup>. The first line of every paragraph should be **indented**<sup>5</sup> to show where a new paragraph is beginning. The indentation should be the space of about five letters or two of your fingers.




Indent the space of five letters:

abcde

Or

Indent the space of two fingers:



**Narrative<sup>6</sup> paragraphs.** There are different kinds of paragraphs. A narrative paragraph tells a story. It often tells events in sequence<sup>7</sup>.

To write a narrative paragraph, first choose a topic. List all the things you want to say about that topic. Decide which things are the most important. Use those things and cross out<sub>2</sub> the others. Are there going to be events? Are they in the right order<sub>3</sub>?

## WRITE A NARRATIVE PARAGRAPH

Choose a topic. Write it here.

---



---

Now jot down<sub>4</sub> details about your topic. Then, cross out the unimportant details and number the left over<sub>5</sub> details in the order you will write them.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
- c. \_\_\_\_\_
- d. \_\_\_\_\_
- e. \_\_\_\_\_
- f. \_\_\_\_\_

On the lines below, write a good topic sentence about your topic. Be sure to indent it, then



write each detail into a good sentence by adding adjectives and adverbs. You should have a good paragraph when you are finished.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### WRITE ANOTHER PARAGRAPH

Write a narrative paragraph now about one of these topics:

My Favorite Holiday      The Church Supper

Getting Ready for a Picnic      A Funny Dream

A Basketball Game      Finding My Cat

Your paragraph should tell a sequence of events. Be sure to indent.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Descriptive<sup>8</sup>** paragraphs. A descriptive paragraph does not tell a story. It describes something. Those who read what you have written need to know just how it looked to you when you wrote it. You must **sharpen<sup>9</sup>** your looking skills to write this kind of paragraph.

Do this project. Your classroom is very **familiar<sup>10</sup>**. Look around the room. What does it look like?

Now, without looking, list as many things as you can remember that you saw. Try to name at least six.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_  
 c. \_\_\_\_\_  
 d. \_\_\_\_\_  
 e. \_\_\_\_\_  
 f. \_\_\_\_\_

Write a descriptive paragraph on the lines below about your classroom. First, write a topic sentence. Then write the descriptive details you wrote above into good sentences. Make your description very clear. Remember to use adjectives and adverbs and remember to indent the first sentence.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **model** ['mɒdl] *n.* 模型
2. **thrill** [θrɪl] *n./vt.* 激动; 刺激
3. **capital** ['kæpɪtəl] *n.* 首都; 资本  
*adj.* 大写的; 死刑的
4. **period** ['piəriəd] *n.* 时期, 阶段; 句号
5. **indent** [ɪn'dent] *vt.* (首行印刷或书写) 缩进
6. **narrative** ['nærətɪv] *adj.* 叙述的, 故事体的

- narrate** [nə'reɪt] *vt.* 讲(故事), 叙述
7. **sequence** ['si:kwəns] *n.* 次序; 后果
8. **descriptive** [dɪs'krɪptɪv] *adj.* 描写的  
**describe** [dɪs'kraɪb] *vt.* 描写, 描绘
9. **sharpen** ['ʃa:pən] *vt.* 使尖锐; 增强
10. **familiar** [fə'mɪljə] *adj.* 日常的, 熟悉的



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. in sequence 按顺序

e.g. Please arrange the pages in sequence for bookbinding.

请把各页按顺序排列好以便装订。

**2. cross out** 删掉, 画掉

e.g. He said he would not go with us, so let's cross out his name from the list.

他说他不能和我们一起去了, 那把他的名字从名单上画掉吧。

**3. in the right order** 按照正确的顺序/in order of... 按照……的顺序

e.g. The names are listed in alphabetical order.

姓名是按字母顺序排列的。

Please file the documents in order of importance.

请按重要性把那些文件归档。

**4. jot down** 匆匆记下

e.g. Jot down his license number!

快记下他的牌照号码!

**5. be left over** 剩下, 残留; left-over (*n./adj.*) 吃剩的食物, 残留物; 剩下的

e.g. They are questions left over by history.

这是历史上遗留下来的问题。

**Exercise** 牛刀小试**I. Reading comprehension.**

1. What is a narrative paragraph?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What is a descriptive paragraph?

\_\_\_\_\_

**II. The suffix -ive can be added to some verbs or nouns to form adjectives.**

**For example:**

narrate — narrative    describe — descriptive    sense — sensitive

Now, select words from the following list and change them into -ive adjectives to complete the sentences.

**attract act sense addict object create expense**

1. The car is so \_\_\_\_\_ that I cannot afford it.
2. Students are required to take a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ part in school life.
3. We need a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ analysis rather than a subjective one.
4. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ person—she writes poetry and composes music.
5. I like him but I don't think him \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Jack is very \_\_\_\_\_ to his weight.
7. Heroin is highly \_\_\_\_\_.

### III. The suffix **-en** can be added to some adjectives or nouns to form verbs.

**For example:**

sharp—sharpen hard—harden height—heighten

Now, select words from the following list and change them into — en verbs to complete the sentences.

**weak sharp length light dark strength tough wide**

1. The skirt is too short. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. All this mountain climbing will \_\_\_\_\_ the boys up.
3. The sky began to \_\_\_\_\_ as the storm approached.
4. His illness had permanently \_\_\_\_\_ him.
5. You are too nervous. Just take a deep breath and \_\_\_\_\_ up.
6. Travel can \_\_\_\_\_ one's knowledge.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ his pencil with a knife.
8. We should \_\_\_\_\_ administrative management.

## 参考译文

每一个段落都应该包含一个主题句和若干对主题进行补充说明的扩展句。

看下面这段话:

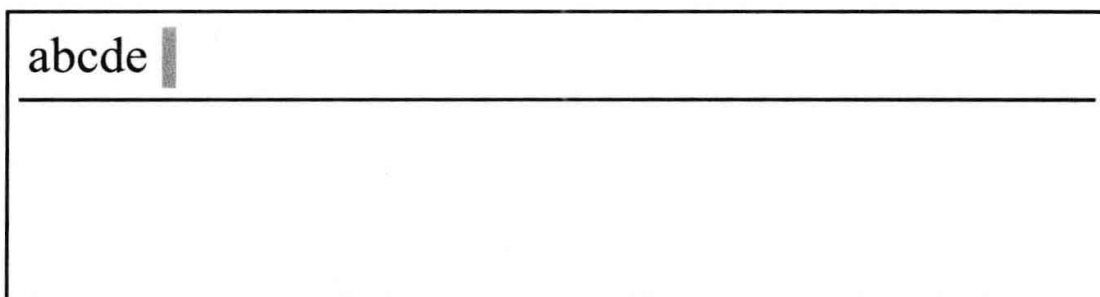


罗伊·米勒和罗杰·米勒是双胞胎兄弟，他俩很喜欢飞机。他们喜欢做飞机模型，也喜欢玩纸飞机。每次看到他们做的飞机腾空飞起，他们都兴奋不已。将来有一天他们会跟他们的邻居、飞行员约翰逊先生坐飞机上天。等他们长大了，他们要学习开飞机。

这段话中，第一句是主题句，其他句子都围绕第一句展开，描述兄弟俩的兴趣爱好，这些句子都对主题，或称为中心思想，起到支持扩展的作用。

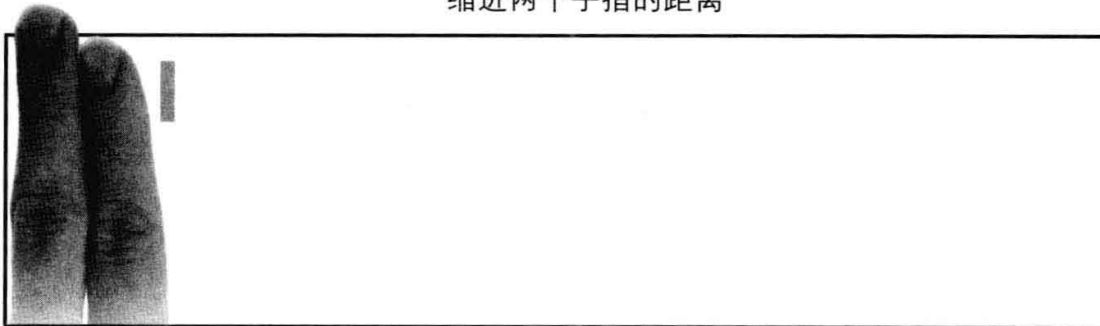
为了把段落写得生动活泼，我们要使用形容词和副词。段落中的每个句子都要以一个大写字母开头，以句号结尾。每个段落的第一句话都应缩格，这样人们才能看得清楚。每段首行应缩进5个字母或者两指宽的距离。

缩进5个字母的距离



或者

缩进两个手指的距离



**记叙性段落：**段落有很多种。记叙性段落的功能主要是叙述一个事件，经常使用时间顺序来叙述发生的事情。

要写一个记叙性段落，首先要选好主题，接下来列出跟主题有关的细节。选出最重要的细节写入段落中，其余的则舍弃。在写作的过程当中还要注意事件的发展和前后顺序。

#### 记叙性段落写作练习一

选择一个主题，把它写下来：\_\_\_\_\_

现在写下跟主题相关的细节，然后画掉不重要的，把剩下的按顺序排好。

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

在下面的横线上为你的主题写一个好的主题句，首行要缩进，然后使用形容词和副词对细节进行扩展，这样你将会写出一个很好的段落。

### 记叙性段落写作练习二

根据下面的任何一个主题再写一段话：

我最喜爱的一个节日

一次教堂的晚餐聚会

为野餐做准备

一个有趣的梦

一场篮球比赛

寻找我的猫

请按照事件的发生顺序进行写作。务必首行缩进。

---

---

**描写性段落：**描写性段落不是叙述事件，而是对某物进行描写。你得让你的读者了解你所写之物在你写作之时是什么样子。为了写好这种段落，你必须提高你的观察力。

完成以下练习：你的教室是你熟悉的地方。看看四周，它是什么样子的。现在，不要看四周，凭记忆写下你所看到的，至少写出六点。

---

---

在下面的横线上写一个段落描写你的教室。先写主题句，然后把上面的细节扩展成句，描写要清晰。记得使用形容词和副词，以及首行缩进。

---

---

---

## “美”事一桩

### 美国小学英语课程的特点

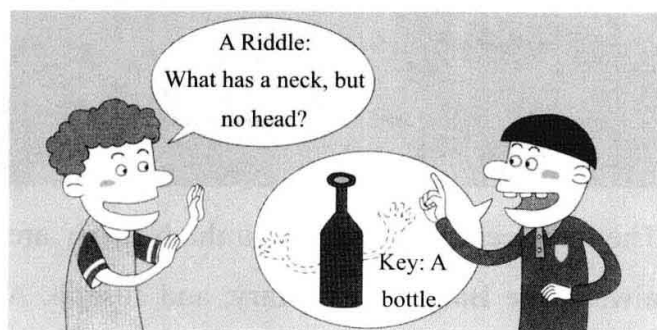
美国课程中的英语学科是一大类课程的总称，包括拼写、阅读、写作等。还有些学校把它叫做“语言艺术”(Language Arts)。例如，我们这一章节的课文所选自的课本就是四年级的Language Arts课本。

从课程组织方式来看，小学阶段主要采用综合课，即语言艺术，它包含了拼写、阅读、写作、文学等知识，这样更符合小学生的思维发展水平。

美国小学用于英语课程的教学时间比其他任何学科要多得多。一般每天跟英语有关的教学时间约

为2.5小时。学生每天有2个小时进阅读作业室（包括小型课、独立阅读、交流与指导，以及指导性阅读或策略课程）和写作作业室学习，另外还安排15~40分钟不等用于词汇拼写、大声朗读和书本讨论等语言练习。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



### 谜语

什么东西有脖子，但是没有头？

答案：瓶子。

注释：“neck”可以指人的脖颈或瓶子的瓶颈。瓶子还有“lips”（瓶口），就是没有“head”。

### Answer

I. 1. It's a paragraph that tells a story and often tells events in sequence.

2. It's a paragraph that describes something.

II. 1. expensive 2. active 3. objective 4. creative  
5. attractive 6. sensitive 7. addictive

III. 1. lengthen 2. toughen 3. darken 4. weaken  
5. lighten 6. widen 7. sharpen 8. strengthen

# Christmas Customs

## 圣诞风俗



圣诞节，每年12月25日，是教会年历的一个传统节日，它是基督徒庆祝耶稣基督诞生的庆祝日。如今圣诞节已经成为全球各地人们狂欢的一个节日。

In this lesson you will read about some of the customs of Christmas. You will learn how to write study notes.

### CHRISTMAS CUSTOMS

Did you ever wonder why certain things are done at Christmas that are not done at any other time of the year? Some people bring a tree into their home and string<sup>1</sup> colored lights on it. Many people give one another<sub>1</sub> gifts. Some people have a Nativity<sup>2</sup> scene in their front yard or in their home.

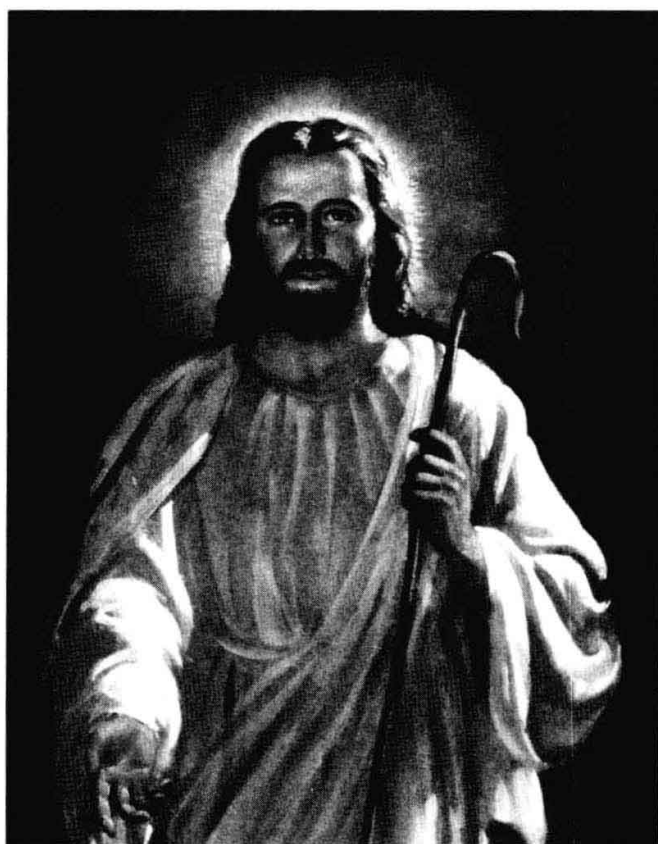
While reading the following paragraphs, think about what study notes you might make. Notes usually contain the main ideas about the subject. They'll tell you *who* or *what*, *when* and *where*, and *how* and *why*.

### THE NATIVITY

In Christian<sup>3</sup> countries around the world, Christmas is the time of the Nativity scene.

The three central characters in the Nativity are always the Baby Jesus, Mary, and Joseph. A shepherd animals are also in some scenes of the stable<sup>4</sup> and the manger<sup>5</sup>.

The first Nativity scene appeared in Italy in 1223. The Nativity scene has become popular in all Christian countries. The Nativity





scene is popular because it shows the real meaning of Christmas, which is the celebration of the birth of Jesus.

## STUDY NOTES

If you were to take short notes on the two paragraphs you just read, what would you include?

### Example:

Subject or Title: The Nativity (The Birth of Jesus)

Who: Baby Jesus, Mary, Joseph, a shepherd or two, a sheep, lamb, donkey. (Perhaps you'd include cattle and three wise men in royal robes.)

Where: Bethlehem<sup>6</sup> stable

When: First seen in Italy in 1223. Now seen in all Christian countries.

Why: Shows real meaning of Christmas.

This example shows how to take notes. Notice that the notes are much shorter than the two paragraphs. All of the important information, however, has been kept. Notes like those in the example can be taken on index<sup>7</sup> cards or on separate sheets of paper if index cards are not available<sup>8</sup>. First, write the *subject* or the title on each card. Each card or sheet of paper is used for a different source. The notes in the example are not written in complete sentences.

Notes often are not written in complete sentences. Sometimes, though, notes in complete sentences can help you recall<sup>9</sup> an

important idea more clearly than notes written in incomplete sentences.

After studying the example, you should be able to make your own note cards for a Nativity story. Then, you should be able to compose your own short story about the Nativity from those notes.

Complete this activity.

On a separate sheet of paper, write your own story of the Nativity from the notes above. You may wish to re-read the story again to check the notes against<sub>2</sub> the story. Check your results with your helper. Read each other's stories and notes and compare.

## THE LIGHTS OF CHRISTMAS

The star of Bethlehem was the first Christmas light. In the first Gospel<sup>10</sup>, Matthew tells the story of the wise men who came from the east to Jerusalem. They had seen His star in the east. They had come to worship Him. Matthew 2:9 and 10 continues: "...and, lo, the star, which they saw in the east, went before them, till it came and stood over where the young child was. When they saw the star, they rejoiced<sup>11</sup> with exceedingly<sup>12</sup> great joy."

The star atop<sup>13</sup> many Christmas trees in homes throughout the world stands for<sub>3</sub> the star of Bethlehem. In this way the night of Christ's birth is remembered.

Many Christians throughout the world

place a candle in their window on Christmas Eve. The candle is usually tall so that<sub>4</sub> it will burn all night. The candle is also a symbol<sup>14</sup> for the star of Bethlehem that shows the way to the Christ Child.

## CHRISTMAS GREENS

For centuries, a Roman custom was to place evergreens<sup>15</sup> in houses and public places. Evergreens stood for peace<sup>16</sup>, joy, and victory<sup>17</sup>.



For centuries, the English have made use of<sub>5</sub> greens and holly. Holly was their favorite. Its dark green leaves and red berries may have given the color scheme<sup>18</sup> of red and green to the Christmas season.

The French people decorate<sup>19</sup> their churches with greens, with fresh flowers, and with lighted candles.

The first mention of a Christmas tree was in a book from England dated<sub>6</sub> 1444, more than five hundred years ago.

The first record of people bringing fir

trees into their houses for Christmas was in Germany in 1604, nearly four hundred years ago. This custom spread throughout Germany and to other countries. Christmas trees were brought into the houses of America in about 1850. Now, nearly 150 years later, the Christmas tree is the center of the Christmas celebration in many American homes. Who should be the center of attention in Christian homes?

## THE GIFTS OF CHRISTMAS

How did the custom of giving gifts at Christmas begin?

In Matthew 2:11 we know that the wise men brought gifts to the Baby Jesus.

More than three hundred years later, St. Nicholas gave gifts to the poor. He was kind and generous<sup>20</sup>, and he became known in many places. Some people made up<sub>7</sub> their own names for St. Nicholas.

In America, the gift bringer is Santa Claus. In England, he is Father Christmas. In France, he is known as Papa Noel. In Germany, he is called Christkindel, which sounds like Kriss Kringle.

Although many gifts are given at Christmas time, the giver of every good gift and every perfect gift is the heavenly Father (James 1:17)



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. <b>string</b> [striŋ] <i>n.</i> 线, 绳子; 一串 <i>vt.</i> 串起, 缚, 扎</p> <p>2. <b>nativity</b> [nə'tɪvɪtɪ] <i>n.</i> 诞生 (the Nativity 耶稣降生图)</p> <p>3. <b>Christian</b> ['krɪstʃən] <i>n.</i> 基督教徒 <i>adj.</i> 基督教的, 信基督的</p> <p>4. <b>stable</b> ['steɪbl] <i>n.</i> 马厩 <i>adj.</i> 稳定的</p> <p>5. <b>manger</b> ['meɪndʒə] <i>n.</i> 马槽</p> <p>6. <b>Bethlehem</b> ['beθlihem] <i>n.</i> 伯利恒 (位于耶路撒冷, 相传为耶稣诞生地)</p> <p>7. <b>index</b> ['ɪndeks] <i>n.</i> 索引</p> <p>8. <b>available</b> [ə'veɪləbl] <i>adj.</i> 可获得的, 可用的</p> <p>9. <b>recall</b> [rɪ'kɔ:l] <i>vt.</i> 回忆, 回想起, 召回</p> | <p>10. <b>gospel</b> ['ɡɒspəl] <i>n.</i> 《圣经》福音书</p> <p>11. <b>rejoice</b> [rɪ'dʒɔɪs] <i>vi.</i> 高兴, 快乐</p> <p>12. <b>exceedingly</b> [ɪk'si:dɪŋli] <i>adv.</i> 非常, 极度</p> <p>13. <b>atop</b> [ə'tɒp] <i>adv./prep.</i> 在……顶上</p> <p>14. <b>symbol</b> ['sɪmbəl] <i>n.</i> 符号, 象征</p> <p>15. <b>evergreen</b> ['evəɡri:n] <i>n.</i> 常绿树 <i>adj.</i> 四季常青的</p> <p>16. <b>peace</b> [pi:s] <i>n.</i> 和平</p> <p>17. <b>victory</b> ['vɪktəri] <i>n.</i> 胜利</p> <p>18. <b>scheme</b> [ski:m] <i>n.</i> 计划, 系统</p> <p>19. <b>decorate</b> ['dekəreɪt] <i>vt.</i> 装饰, 布置</p> <p>20. <b>generous</b> ['dʒenərəs] <i>adj.</i> 慷慨的, 大方的</p> |
|---|--|



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. one another 互相

e.g. We should help one another.

我们应该互相帮助。

### 2. against 与……相比

e.g. Do these exercises, and then check your answer against the text.

做这些练习, 然后参照课文核对你的答案。

You must weigh the benefits against the cost before you invest your money in the stock market.

在你把钱投入股市之前, 要先衡量一下利润和成本的得失。

**3. stand for** 是……的意思, 代表; 主张, 支持

e.g. What does "ISO" stand for?

"ISO" 是什么意思?

We stand for self-reliance.

我们主张自力更生。

**4. so that** (表示目的) 为了, 以便

e.g. She worked hard so that she could earn enough money to support her family.

她努力工作以便挣到足够的钱养家糊口。

**5. make use of** 使用, 利用

e.g. We should make better use of our natural resources.

我们应该更好地利用自然资源。

**6. ... a book from England dated 1444...: a book from England which was dated 1444** date: v. 日期是……

e.g. Thank you for your letter dated June 21.

您6月21号的来信已经收悉, 谢谢。

**7. make up** 拼装, 组成; 编造

e.g. I made up a story to amuse the children.

我编了个故事逗孩子们开心。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Answer these questions.

1. When and where did the first Nativity scene appear?
2. Why are there lights at Christmas?
3. Why did the Romans place evergreens in houses and public places during Christmas?
4. What was the real name for Santa Claus?

### II. Complete these sentences with words from the text.

1. Children are \_\_\_\_\_ their classroom for the coming festival.



2. In the library, we use the \_\_\_\_\_ to find out what books are available.
3. He always \_\_\_\_\_ his wild youth with regret.
4. She was overwhelmed by \_\_\_\_\_ great sorrow.
5. There are some mysterious \_\_\_\_\_ engraved on the stones. Maybe they were a certain kind of language used long long ago.
6. In the swimming medals table, China still stands \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Jim is very selfish. But on the contrary, his brother Sam is very \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I have to put off the trip because no air tickets are \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.

## 参考译文

在这一课中你将读到有关圣诞风俗的内容，并学习如何记读书笔记。

### 圣诞风俗

你是否曾经想过，为什么有些事我们只在圣诞节而不是一年中的其他时间做？比如，搬一棵树回家，把一串串的彩灯挂在树上；人们互赠礼物；有些人还会在前院或者房子里摆上耶稣降生的场景。

阅读以下段落的时候，请思考你的笔记可以记些什么。笔记的内容通常包括文章的中心思想、人物、事件、时间、地点、方式和原因。

### 耶稣降生场景

在世界上所有的基督教国家，耶稣降生场景在圣诞期间极为常见。场景的三个主要人物通常是圣婴耶稣、圣母玛利亚和约瑟夫。如果场景是马厩和马槽，则还会加上一个牧羊人和几只动物。

最早的耶稣降生场景于1223年在意大利出

现，继而在所有基督教国家流行开来。基督降生场景之所以流行，是因为它体现了圣诞节的真正含义，即庆祝耶稣的降生。

### 读书笔记

如果要就以上两段话记笔记，你会记些什么？

例如：

主题：耶稣降生场景。

人物：圣婴耶稣、圣母玛利亚、约瑟夫、一两个牧羊人、一只羊、一只羊羔、一只毛驴。（你也可以加上几头牛和三个穿皇家长袍的智者。

地点：伯利恒的一个马厩。

用意：彰显圣诞节的真正含义。

以上是读书笔记的范例。请注意，笔记要比段落内容简短得多，但重要的信息全都包括在内。上述的笔记范例可以记录在索引卡片上，如果没有索引卡片，就记在活页纸上。

首先，在每张卡片上写下题目。每篇文章单

独使用一张卡片。上述范例采用非完整句来记笔记。

笔记通常不用完整句。但有时候比起简略句，用完整句记的笔记可以帮助你更清楚地回忆起读过的某个重要内容。

学习了这个范例，你就能自己记一个关于耶稣降生场景的笔记了。然后，根据这些笔记创造一个你自己的关于耶稣降生场景的故事。

完成以下练习：

根据你上面所做的笔记，在一张纸上写下你自己的关于耶稣降生场景的故事。写完之后把笔记和故事对照一遍。和你的搭档交换阅读彼此的笔记和故事，并进行比较。

## 圣诞灯

伯利恒之星是圣诞灯的起源。四大福音书的第一卷，《马太福音》讲了这样一个故事：几位智者在东方看见巴勒斯坦西岸伯利恒的上空有一颗星星，他们知道这颗星象征着耶稣降生的地点，就循着这颗星来到耶路撒冷朝拜耶稣。《马太福音》2:9-10写道：“……看，那颗他们在东方看到的星，在前方引导他们，一直来到那小孩子出生地方的上空才停住。他们看见那颗星，是多么欢欣快乐呀！”

全世界很多家庭中的圣诞树顶端都装饰着一颗星，象征着伯利恒之星。人们以此来纪念耶稣的诞生之夜。

在圣诞前夜，全世界的很多基督教徒都会在窗台上点一根蜡烛。蜡烛通常很长，这样才可以点到天亮。它也是把人们引向圣婴耶稣的伯利恒之星的象征。

## 圣诞树

几个世纪以来，罗马人一直有这样一个风

俗，在屋子里和公共场所摆一棵常青树。常青树象征和平、欢乐和胜利。

而几百年来，英国人一直使用的是各种绿叶树和冬青，后者最受人们喜爱。冬青深绿的枝叶和鲜红的浆果可能正是圣诞节以红绿为主色调的原因。

法国人用绿叶树、鲜花和点燃的蜡烛装饰教堂。

第一个有关圣诞树的记载迄今已500多年，出自英国一本1444年出版的书。

第一个有关人们把冷杉带进家中作为圣诞树的记载则出自400多年前的德国。这个做法在德国传播开来并流传到其他国家。大约在1850年，美国人才开始布置圣诞树。到了150年后的今天，装饰圣诞树已经成为很多美国家庭庆祝圣诞节的重头戏。

## 圣诞礼物

圣诞期间互赠礼物的习俗是怎么来的呢？

《马太福音》2:11告诉我们，几位智者带了礼物送给圣婴耶稣。

300年之后，有一个叫圣·尼古拉斯的人，为人热心慷慨，经常送东西给穷人并帮助他们。他的事迹流传到其他地方，那些地方的人根据本国语言的发音，给主人公换了新名字。

在美国，圣诞节为人们带礼物来的是圣克劳斯。英国把他叫做圣诞之父。到了法国，他的名字变成诺尔。德国人则称呼他为克里斯金格尔。

虽然人们在圣诞期间互相赠送礼物，但你要记住，一切美好的礼物都是从天父那儿来的。

（出自《圣经·雅各书》1:17）

## “美”事一桩

### 耶稣降生场景

耶稣降生场景(Nativity Scene)是根据《马太福音》和《路加福音》中的记载,对耶稣降生进行描绘的艺术表现形式。所谓的“Nativity Scene”本义上包含了二维的艺术形式,如电影、绘画和版画等,但深受大众喜爱的要数静态的立体模型(雕塑等)或者真人演出的舞台剧。圣诞期间很多家庭都会在角落里摆放一个微型的耶稣降生场景,也就是一个用不同材料制作的马厩模型,有约瑟夫、玛利亚、智者、牧羊人和动物等。圣诞夜的前半夜马槽是空的,过了12点才把圣婴放进去,以示耶稣降生。公共场所也会摆放耶稣降生场景的大型雕塑。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

Call no man happy until he dies.

盖棺才能定论。

Diligence is the mother of success.

勤奋是成功之母。

The way to a man's heart is through his stomach.

欲得君心,先悦君腹。

Don't put off till tomorrow what you can do today.

今日之事,勿留明日。

### Answer

- I. 1. The first Nativity scene appeared in Italy in 1223.
2. They stand for the star of Bethlehem.
3. Because they thought Evergreens stood for peace, joy, and victory.
4. It was St. Nicholas.
- II. 1. decorating 2. index 3. recalled 4. exceedingly
5. symbols
6. atop 7. generous 8. available

# 9

# A Letter of Invitation

## 邀请信



英文的书信有严格的格式，我们在写英文书信的时候应该注意一些什么呢？本篇文章通过具体的实例告诉你英文书信的写作要领，并设置练习让你熟练掌握英文书信的写作技巧。

### WRITTEN INVITATIONS

You are going to write a holiday letter of invitation to someone you have not seen for some time. A very short sample<sup>1</sup> letter is given as an example. The right-hand margin<sup>2</sup> shows the names of the five parts of a letter.

<p>123 Fourth Street Anytown, U.S.A. December 5, 1998</p>	<p>} Heading</p>
<p>Dear Jane and Bill,</p>	<p>→ Salutation<sup>3</sup></p>
<p>Our family has not seen you and your mother and father for a long time. Are you doing anything special during the holidays? We would dearly love to share with you the Lord's blessings<sup>4</sup>. We all miss you!</p> <p>We know you live a long way from here. If you're planning a trip, you're welcome to stay with us.</p>	<p>} Body</p>
<p>Your friends,</p>	<p>→ Closing</p>
<p>Jean and Rick</p>	<p>→ Signature<sup>5</sup></p>



**I. Answer these questions.**

1. Who wrote the letter? \_\_\_\_\_
2. To whom was it written? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Who lives on Fourth Street? \_\_\_\_\_
4. When was the letter written? \_\_\_\_\_
5. What is Jean and Rick's address? \_\_\_\_\_
6. What is the main point of the letter called? \_\_\_\_\_
7. What closing was used? \_\_\_\_\_

**II. On the lines below, write a letter to your friend.**

Remember to address and date your letter. You may wish to write your letter first on a separate piece of paper. Then, write it in the lines below.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>sample</b> ['sæmpl] <i>n.</i> 样品, 示例             | 头的) 称呼   |
| 2. <b>margin</b> ['mɑ:dʒɪn] <i>n.</i> 边缘, 页边的空白部分      | 4. <b>blessing</b> ['blesɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 祝福, 神的恩赐  |
| 3. <b>salutation</b> [sælju'teɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 招呼; (书信开 | 5. <b>signature</b> ['sɪɡnətʃə] <i>n.</i> 签字, 签名 |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### sometime, sometimes, some time, some times 用法区别

#### 1. sometime

(1) *adv.* 某个时候。可指过去或将来的某个时候。如:

- ① Would you come to the cinema with me, sometime?

可以找个时间和我看场电影吗?

- ② I bought this sometime last summer.

这是我在去年夏天买的。

(2) *adj.* 以前的, 过去的。相当于former。

- ① This is our sometime general manager.

这是我们的前任总经理。

- ② Our sometime classmate, Rose, is now a pop star.

我们以前的同学罗斯, 现在是明星了。

#### 2. sometimes: *adv.* 有时候。相当于at times。

- ① Every man is a fool sometimes, but none at all times.

每个人都有犯傻的时候, 但没有谁会一直都傻。

- ② Sometimes we went to the beach and at other times we sunbathed on the patio.

我们有时去海滩, 有时在院子里日光浴。

### 3. some time 某段时间。常与for连用。

- ① We plan to stay in Hainan for some time.

我们打算在海南呆上一段时间。

- ② I'm sorry to trouble you, but I wondered if we could have a word some time.

很遗憾打扰你一下，我想问问我们什么时候能聊聊。

### 4. some times 几次。相当于several times。此处 time作可数名词，表示“次数”。

- ① I am sure that we have met some times before.

我肯定我们之前见过几次了。

- ② The newly-bought microwave oven failed to work some times.

新买的微波炉坏了几次了。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### Answer these questions according to the text.

1. What do you call the main part of a letter?
2. What do you call the part of a letter in which you give your address and the date?
3. What do you call the part of a letter in which you address the person or persons to whom you are writing?

## 参考译文

### 邀请信

在这一课中你要学习写信给一位很久不见的朋友，邀请他/她来与你共度某个节假日。这里有一封示范信。信右边的空白处列出了信的五个组成部分的名称。

	美国A城	}	信头
	第4街123号		
	1998年12月5日		
亲爱的简、比尔:		→	称呼语
我们一家已经有很长一段时间没有见过你们和你们的爸爸妈妈了。这个节日期间你们有什么特别的安排吗? 很想念你们! 愿上帝保佑你我。		}	正文
你们住的地方离这儿很远, 所以如果你们计划出来旅行, 欢迎到我们家来做客!			
	你们的朋友	→	结束语
	珍妮、里克	→	签名

## I. 回答以下问题。

1. 这封信是谁写的?
2. 写给谁的?
3. 谁住在第4街?
4. 这封信什么时候写的?
5. 珍妮和里克的地址是什么?
6. 信的主体称为什么?
7. 用了什么结束语?

## II. 在下列横线上写一封信给你的朋友。

记得写上地址和日期。你可以先写在草稿纸上, 再抄到下面横线上。

<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 100px; width: 100%;"></div>	_____
	_____
	_____
	_____




## “美”事一桩

### 英文书信格式

英文书信通常由下列五个部分组成：

#### A 信头 (Heading)

信头包括写信人地址和写信日期，通常写在信笺的右上角。比较熟识的朋友之间的通信，写信人的地址常可略去。

日期通常有下列两种写法：(a) 月、日、年。如 August 15, 2010; (b) 日、月、年。如 15th August, 2010.

地址的写法通常是由小到大，如门牌号、街道名、市(县)名、省名、国名(邮政编码通常写在城市名之后)。这同中文书信的地址写法完全相反。地址可以写1~3行，日期写在地址的下方。

#### B 称呼语 (Salutation)

称呼语指写信人对收信人的称呼，如 Dear Jane，写在信头的下方和信笺的左边。称呼一般用 Dear...或 My dear...开头，称呼后一般用逗号。

#### C 正文 (Body)

这是书信的主体部分，即写信人要表达的内容。正文要求文字通顺，层次分明，表意清楚。可以手书，也可以打印。

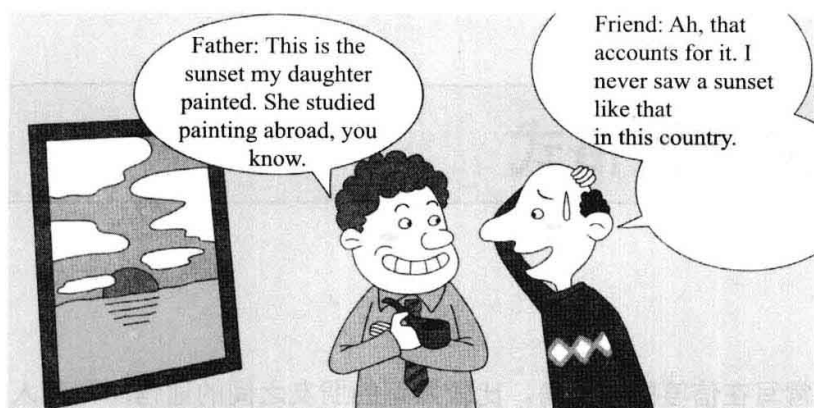
#### D 结束语 (Closing)

写在书信结尾。朋友之间最简单常用的是 “Yours”，也可以用 “Best wishes”，最后一个词后面用逗号。在比较正式的信函中如商务信函，为了突出对对方的敬意，结束语可采用 “Yours sincerely(英式)”，或 “Sincerely (美式)”。

#### E 签名 (Signature)

签名通常出现在结束语下方的中间偏右的位置，通常应为亲笔书写，即使是打印出来的信件，最后仍须亲笔签名。

### A Humor 休闲时刻



父亲：这是我女儿画的日落。她在国外学的绘画。

朋友：哦，难怪。我从来没在这个国家看到过这样的日落。

#### Answer

1. Jean and Rick.
2. Jane and Bill.
3. Jean and Rick.
4. December 5, 1998.
5. 123 Fourth Street, Anytown, U.S.A.

# Olympic Games

## 奥林匹克运动会

10



奥运会是当今时代的一大盛事，奥运会的举办是一个国家的荣耀，能大大增强一个国家的国际影响力。现在人们对奥运会的关注度越来越高。那就跟随我们一起追溯奥运历史，感受奥运激情吧。

In this section you will read a story about the early Olympic games. The Olympic games now take place<sub>1</sub> every four years<sub>2</sub>. They are divided into summer games and winter games. The opening parade<sup>1</sup> is beautiful. The athletes from Greece march into the stadium<sup>2</sup> first in honor of<sub>3</sub> the first Olympics held long ago in Greece. The other nations follow in alphabetical order. A beautiful moment is the lighting of the Olympic flame<sup>3</sup>.

The story "Olympic Games" was *not* written in the first person as the other two stories in this LIFE PAC were. When a story is written in the first person, the storyteller experienced the story he is telling. It really happened to<sub>4</sub> him. He was there. In this story, "Olympic Games," the writer is just telling about the games. He did not experience them. He was not there. It is not told in the first person.

### READING

Read this story and notice details. Look for the names of the countries that were present and the events included in the games. Remember, A.D. 392 means 392 years after Christ's birth while 490 B.C. means 490 years before Christ.

### OLYMPIC GAMES

When the Olympic games were held in Athens (a' thunz), Greece, in 1896, it was the first time they had taken place since A.D. 392.

The games began on April 6 in a beautiful stadium. The king and queen of Greece were there. Forty-five thousand people tilted<sup>4</sup> the seats. The surrounding<sup>5</sup> hills were crowded with others who wished to get a look at the scene inside. Their ancestors<sup>6</sup> had sat on these hills and watched the games.

Following a colorful parade and official program, the king rose and stated:

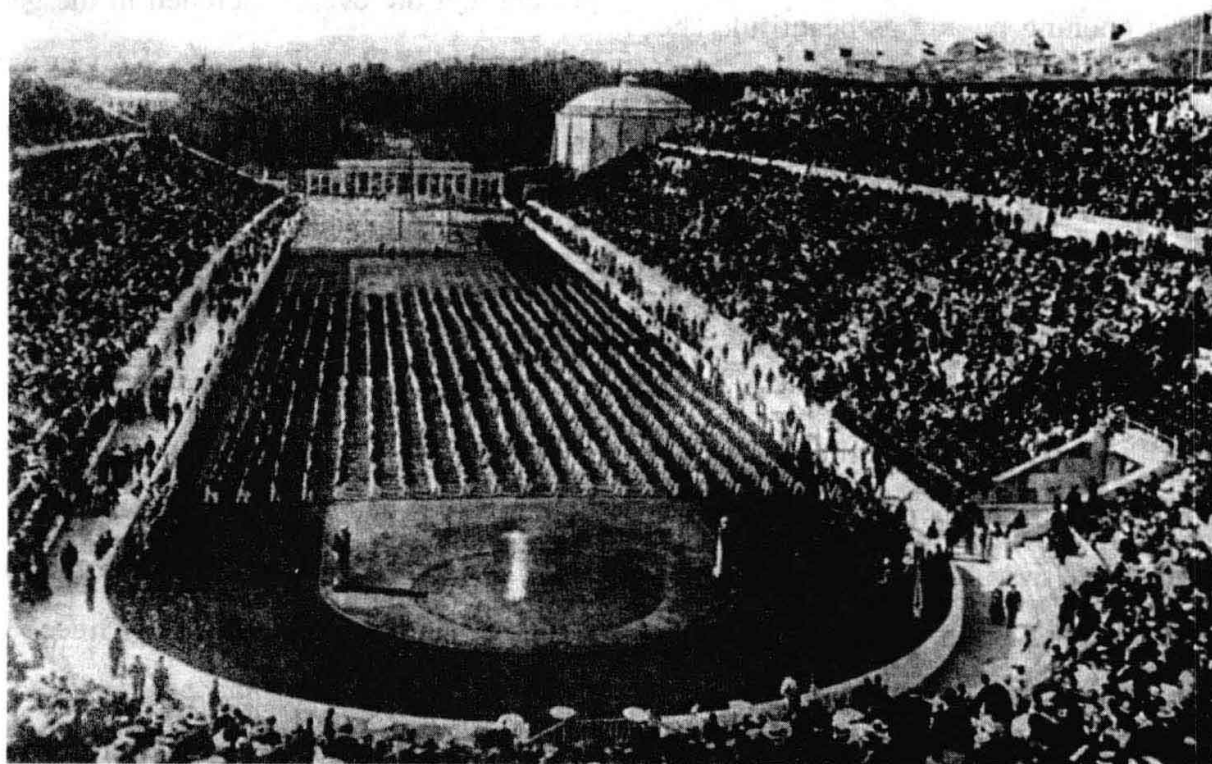
"I hereby open the first international Olympic games."

The nations who were there were the United States, Great Britain, Australia, France, Hungary, Sweden, Denmark, Switzerland, Germany, and Greece. As each event was finished, the flag of the country from which the victor had come was raised. The band played his national anthem<sup>7</sup>. When the games were all over, the king gave a medal and an olive branch to each winner. This honor was a custom meaning victory. Laurel branches were handed to those who had been runners-up.

had raced on foot from the town of Marathon to Athens that day, announcing an important victory over<sup>6</sup> the enemy for the Greeks. Now the runners were going to cover the same distance of about twenty-four miles.

Twenty-five runners started. However, a number of them had to drop out, along the route<sup>9</sup>. The race was won by Spiridon Loues, a young Greek shepherd. The young shepherd made it<sup>8</sup> in two hours, fifty-five minutes, and twenty seconds.

When Spiridon reached the stadium, the crowd became greatly excited. The princess dashed<sup>10</sup> from her seat and ran around the track<sup>11</sup> with him. As he stood in the Royal Box,



Although the marathon had not been one of the events long ago, it was included in memory of<sup>5</sup> a day in 490 B.C. A messenger<sup>8</sup>

the people shouted and clapped<sup>12</sup> their hands. Many pushed forward to shake his hand and to promise gifts. It is said that a bootblack<sup>13</sup>



offered to polish<sup>14</sup> his shoes without charge for the rest of his life. It was an offer that would not have been very practical<sup>15</sup> to a shepherd lad, but it was all the bootblack could give.

Spiridon Loues wanted to win. He had practised long hours. He had fasted. He had prayed. Winning the marathon had special meaning for him. Everyone was glad that a Greek had won the event which had such historical importance. Even the word *marathon*, meaning *race or test of power to keep on*, dates from<sub>9</sub> that time in 490 B.C when a runner covered the long distance to tell the people of Athens the good news of victory.

Among other athletes who did well in these games was Robert S. Garrett, a student from Princeton. He won the discus<sup>16</sup> throw, and the shotput<sup>17</sup>. He came in second in the broad jump and tied for second place in the high jump.

The Olympics were held in Paris in 1900, and in St. Louis, Missouri, in 1904. There was an Athletic Festival in Athens in 1906, which was much the same as the Olympics, though not official. This time it was W. J. Sherring, a young Canadian, who won the marathon. The distance had been increased more than a mile and a quarter, but Sherring still ran it in record time to go ahead of the former marathon

runners. He had arrived in Greece two months before the festival and had gone over the route often so as to<sub>10</sub> be prepared for the big day.

It was disappointing<sup>18</sup> to the Greeks to have an athlete from so far away win the marathon, but they cheered him as he deserved<sup>19</sup> and were eager to<sub>11</sub> give him presents. Among these was a goat which the giver thought would be a fine, useful gift. Sherring was grateful for<sub>12</sub> the thought. Whether the goat went with him to Canada is not stated in Olympic records.

In 1908 the games took place not far from London, and in addition to<sub>13</sub> the awards<sup>20</sup>, the winners were given twigs<sup>21</sup> from a royal oak tree in Windsor (win' zur) Forest. This year marked the beginning of tryouts for selection<sup>22</sup> of athletes.

Tryouts, or tests, had been held centuries before in Greece and athletes often trained for as much as a year before the games. Although it is generally believed that the first games began much earlier, the term "Olympic Games" was not used until<sub>14</sub> 776 B.C.

Wreaths<sup>23</sup> of wild olive leaves were placed upon the foreheads<sup>24</sup> of the winners. The winners were shown every honor. When they returned to their homes, they were greeted joyously<sup>25</sup> like heroes.



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. <b>parade</b> [pə'reɪd] <i>n.</i> 游行</p> <p>2. <b>stadium</b> ['steɪdiəm] <i>n.</i> 大型运动场, (古希腊) 赛跑场</p> <p>3. <b>flame</b> [fleɪm] <i>n.</i> 火焰</p> <p>4. <b>tilt</b> [tɪlt] <i>v.</i> 倾斜</p> <p>5. <b>surround</b> [sə'raʊnd] <i>vt.</i> 包围, 环绕</p> <p>6. <b>ancestor</b> ['ænsɪstə] <i>n.</i> 祖先, 祖宗</p> <p>7. <b>anthem</b> ['ænθəm] <i>n.</i> 圣歌, 赞美诗</p> <p>8. <b>messenger</b> ['mesɪndʒə] <i>n.</i> 使者, 信使</p> <p>9. <b>route</b> [ru:t] <i>n.</i> 路径, 路线</p> <p>10. <b>dash</b> [dæʃ] <i>v.</i> 猛冲, 冲撞</p> <p>11. <b>track</b> [træk] <i>n.</i> 轨迹, 跑道 <i>v.</i> 追踪</p> <p>12. <b>clap</b> [klæp] <i>v.</i> 拍手, 鼓掌</p> <p>13. <b>bootblack</b> [bu:t'blæk] <i>n.</i> 擦鞋匠</p> | <p>14. <b>polish</b> ['pɒlɪʃ] <i>vt.</i> 擦, 擦拭; 磨光</p> <p>15. <b>practical</b> ['præktɪkəl] <i>adj.</i> 实用的, 符合实际的</p> <p>16. <b>discus</b> ['dɪskəs] <i>n.</i> 铁饼</p> <p>17. <b>shotput</b> ['ʃɒt'put] <i>n.</i> 铅球</p> <p>18. <b>disappoint</b> [dɪsə'pɔɪnt] <i>vt.</i> 使失望</p> <p>19. <b>deserve</b> [dɪ'zɜ:v] <i>vt.</i> 该得到, 值得</p> <p>20. <b>award</b> [ə'wɔ:d] <i>n.</i> 奖赏</p> <p>21. <b>twig</b> [twɪɡ] <i>n.</i> 树枝</p> <p>22. <b>selection</b> [sɪ'lekʃən] <i>n.</i> 选择</p> <p>23. <b>wreath</b> [ri:θ] <i>n.</i> 花圈, 花环</p> <p>24. <b>forehead</b> ['fɒrɪd] <i>n.</i> 前额, 脑门</p> <p>25. <b>joyously</b> ['dʒɔɪəsli] <i>adv.</i> 快活地, 高兴地</p> |
|---|--|



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. take place 发生

e.g. Where did the accident take place?  
事故发生在什么地方?

### 2. every + 一段时间: 每, 每逢

e.g. The buses go every ten minutes.  
公共汽车每10分钟发一班车。

### 3. in honor of sb/sth (in sb's/sth's honor) 为向……表示敬意

e.g. This monument was built in honor of soldiers who died for their country.  
这座纪念碑是为了纪念那些为祖国献出生命的战士们而建的。

**4. happen to sb/sth** 遭到, 遇到

e.g. Falls happen to everyone sometimes.

人人偶尔都会摔跤。

**5. in memory of sb/sth** 作为对……的纪念

e.g. He founded the charity in memory of his late wife.

他创立了这一慈善机构以纪念他的亡妻。

**6. victory (over/against sb/sth)** 战胜, 成功

e.g. Liverpool chalked up yet another home victory against Arsenal.

利物浦队又一次刷新了主场战胜阿森纳队的纪录。

**7. drop out (of sth)** 不再参加, 脱离, 退出

e.g. He dropped out of school because of the pressure.

因为压力太大, 他退学了。

**8. make it** 获得成功, 准时到达

e.g. Although the task was very difficult, we still made it ahead of time.

虽然任务很艰巨, 我们还是提前完成了。

The train leaves in ten minutes—we can never make it.

火车过10分钟就要开了, 我们无论如何赶不上了。

**9. date from/date back to** 追溯到, 始于, 自……至今

e.g. This college dates from medieval times.

这所学院创办于中世纪。

**10. so as to do sth/so that...** 为了做某事, 以便做某事

e.g. We have to go early to the classroom so as to get good seats.

为了占到好座位, 我们必须早早地去教室。

**11. be eager to do sth/for sth** 渴望做某事

e.g. Maggie was eager to visit me.

麦琪急于来看我。

He was eager for success.

他渴望成功。

**12. be grateful (to sb) for sth** 为……向……表示感谢

e.g. We're very grateful for his sponsorship.

我们十分感激他的慷慨资助。

**13. in addition (to sb/sth)** 另外, 除……以外

e.g. In addition, I have committed a stupid error.

除此之外, 我还犯了一个愚蠢的错误。

In addition to French, he has to study Japanese.

除了法语, 他还得学日语。

**14. not...until** 直到……才

e.g. I didn't go back to my own room until the kids were sound asleep.

直到孩子们睡沉了, 我才回到自己房间。

注意, not until 如果放在句首, 则主句需要倒装, 意思不变。上述例句变为:  
Not until the kid were sound asleep did I go back to my own room.



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. Circle the main idea of this story:

a. The marathon b. The wild olive wreath c. Early Olympic games

2. Name the ten countries present for the Olympic games of 1896.

a. \_\_\_\_\_ b. \_\_\_\_\_ c. \_\_\_\_\_

d. \_\_\_\_\_ e. \_\_\_\_\_ f. \_\_\_\_\_

g. \_\_\_\_\_ h. \_\_\_\_\_ i. \_\_\_\_\_

j. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Choose the events mentioned in the story.

a. baseball b. shotput c. swimming d. discus throw e. tennis f. marathon

4. Choose the gifts mentioned in the story.

a. money b. goat c. house d. shoes polished for life

e. clothes for life f. medals



## II. Fill in the blanks with words from the text. The first letters of the words have been given.

1. The games began on April 6 in a beautiful s\_\_\_\_\_.
2. As each event was finished, the flag of the country from which the w\_\_\_\_\_ had come was raised.
3. The king presented a medal and an o\_\_\_\_\_ branch to each winner.
4. The word marathon means race or test of p\_\_\_\_\_ to keep on.
5. A student from Princeton won the d\_\_\_\_\_ and the s\_\_\_\_\_.
6. A Canadian who won the marathon in 1908 received a g\_\_\_\_\_ for a gift.
7. In 1908 in England, the winners were given t\_\_\_\_\_ from a royal oak tree in Windsor Forest.
8. The house is not on a bus r\_\_\_\_\_.

## III. Match each word to its meaning.

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| 1. _____ a long run                     | a. ancestors       |
| 2. _____ country's song                 | b. ancient         |
| 3. _____ winner                         | c. athletes        |
| 4. _____ people who enter Olympic games | d. fasted          |
| 5. _____ used for a prize               | e. laurel          |
| 6. _____ old                            | f. marathon        |
| 7. _____ went without food              | g. national anthem |
| 8. _____ people in your family long ago | h. victor          |

## 参考译文

你将在本课读到一个关于早期奥林匹克运动会的故事。现在的奥运会每四年举办一次，分为夏季奥运会和冬季奥运会。奥运会的开幕式非常宏伟壮观。希腊是奥运会的发源地，为向其表示敬意，

希腊运动员获得殊荣，第一个进入会场。其他国家则按字母表顺序依次进入。点燃奥运圣火是开幕式的一个动人时刻。

本篇课文不是用第一人称写成。如果采用第一

人作为叙述方式,所叙述的事件为叙述者本人亲身经历。事情确实发生在他/她身上,或者他/她当时就在现场。而本篇课文的作者只是讲述有关奥运会的事情,这些事情并非作者亲身经历。因此,作者不用第一人称来讲述。

## 阅读提示

读课文,注意细节描写。找出文中提到的国家和比赛项目。请记住,A.D. 392指耶稣诞生后392年(即公元392年),490 B.C.则指耶稣诞生前490年(即公元前490年)。

## 奥林匹克运动会

1896年在希腊雅典举行的奥运会是自公元392年以来的第一届奥运会。

这一届奥运会于当年4月6日在一座雄伟的体育馆里举行。国王和王后都到场观看比赛。45000名观众把会场挤得水泄不通。体育馆外面的山上也挤满了想一睹馆内盛况的人们。过去,他们的祖先就是坐在这些山上观看比赛的。

多姿多彩的游行和官方仪式之后,国王站起来宣布:

“我宣布,第一届国际奥林匹克运动会,现在开幕!”

当时参赛的国家有美国、英国、澳大利亚、法国、匈牙利、瑞典、丹麦、瑞士、德国以及希腊。每个项目的比赛一结束,升冠军所在国的国旗,乐队奏其国歌。所有项目都比赛完之后,国王给每个冠军颁发一个奖牌和一根橄榄树枝。这象征着胜利。亚军则得到月桂树枝。

马拉松长跑不是早期奥运会的比赛项目之一,后来成为奥运比赛项目是为了纪念公元前490年的某一天。那一天,有个信使从马拉松镇跑到雅典,

宣布他们已经战胜敌人的重要消息。在1896年,参赛选手将跑完当年那个信使跑过的路线,从马拉松至雅典,全程24英里。

25名选手出发了,其中一名中途退出比赛。斯皮里东·路易斯,一个年轻的希腊牧羊人赢得了比赛。他用了2小时55分20秒跑完全程。

当斯皮里东跑进运动场时,全场沸腾起来。公主跑下看台,跟随他跑上跑道。当他站到皇家观礼台前面时,人们欢呼着,掌声雷动。大家争先恐后地挤到前面跟他握手,许诺要送他礼物。据传有个擦鞋匠提出要为他终生免费擦鞋。这份礼物对一个牧羊人并不太实用,但这已经是一个擦鞋匠能给予的全部了。

斯皮里东·路易斯一开始就想要获胜。为了达到目标,他长时间坚持训练,还进行斋戒、祈祷。赢得马拉松对他有着特殊的意义。这个项目具有如此重要的历史意义,而冠军是一个希腊人,大家都为此感到高兴。“马拉松”这个词意为“比赛”或“对毅力的考验”,起源于公元前490年,有个人跑了24英里路到雅典向人们通报胜利的消息。

在这一届奥运会中表现突出的还有一位来自普林斯顿的学生,罗伯特·加勒特。他获得了掷铁饼和投铅球两项冠军,并在跳远和跳高项目上获得亚军。

1900年第二届奥运会在巴黎举行,第三届则于1904年在密苏里州的圣路易斯举行。1906年雅典又举办了一次运动会,尽管是非正式的,却几乎与奥运会相同。这一次获得马拉松冠军的是一个加拿大小伙子W.J.谢林。此时马拉松的距离比起以前延长了不只1.25英里,但谢林仍然在以往的记录时间内跑完了全程。因此,他远胜过以前的参赛者。早在运动会开始前两个月他就来到希腊,多次沿比赛路线

进行训练, 以此为比赛做准备。

看到马拉松的桂冠被远道而来的外国运动员摘走, 希腊人很是失望。但他们还是为他欢呼, 争着送他礼物, 因为那是他该得的。礼物中有一只山羊, 送山羊的人认为这是一件不错的、有用的礼物。谢林对此表示感激。然而, 这只山羊有没有跟随他回到加拿大就不得而知了, 奥林匹克的记录中没有相关记载。

1908年的奥运会在伦敦举行。获胜者除了原有的奖品之外, 还另外得到采摘自温莎森林的一棵皇

家橡树的树枝。这一届奥运会还开始对参赛运动员实行预赛选拔。

早在数百年前, 希腊就有了预赛制。运动员在比赛的前一年就开始为比赛做准备。“奥林匹克运动会”这个名词直到公元前776年才出现, 但人们普遍认为第一次运动会的举办时间要比这早得多。

那时, 比赛的获胜者头戴野生橄榄树枝编成的花环, 获得无上的荣耀。当他们回到家中, 所有人都把他们当做英雄, 为他们欢呼喝彩。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国与奥运会

至20世纪末, 美国是举办现代奥运会次数最多的国家。其中包括四届夏季奥运会和三届冬季奥运会。

1904年, 美国的圣路易斯举办了第三届夏季奥运会, 也正式从这一届奥运会开始创办了金银铜奖牌; 1932年, 美国洛杉矶主办了第十届夏季奥运会; 1984年, 洛杉矶再次成为东道主, 举办了第23届夏季奥运会; 1996年, 亚特兰大主办了第26届夏季奥运会; 1932年, 美国普莱西德湖举办了第三届冬季奥运会; 1960年, 美国斯阔谷主办了第八届冬奥会; 1980年, 普莱西德湖再次主办了第13届冬奥会。

2002年, 美国举办了盐湖城冬奥会, 这是21世纪首届冬奥会。看来, 美国举办现代奥运会次数最多的纪录仍将延续。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### A Riddle

Which hand should you stir soup with?

Key: Neither. You should use a spoon!

你会用哪只手来搅拌汤?

答案: 都不用, 你应该用勺子!

### Answer

I. 1. c

2. a. the United States b. Great Britain c. Australia  
d. France e. Hungary f. Sweden g. Denmark h.  
Switzerland i. Germany j. Greece

3. b d f

4. b d f

II. 1. stadium 2. winner 3. olive 4. power 5. discus  
throw, shotput 6. goat 7. twigs 8. route

III. 1. f 2. g 3. h 4. c 5. e 6. b 7. d 8. a

# 11

# Figurative<sup>1</sup> Language

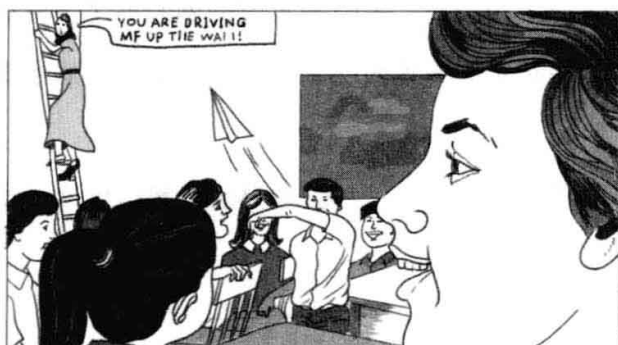
## 比喻



比喻，作为一种修辞手法，在文学作品中非常常见，恰当地使用比喻可以使文章生动，使用不当则会画蛇添足。对于比喻意义的理解也至关重要，如果理解不当必将会贻笑大方。

Many times, we use expressions that make our speech more colorful and interesting. These expressions do not always mean exactly what they say. They should not be taken *literally*<sup>2</sup>. We call these expressions figurative speech.

EXAMPLE:



"Quiet down! You are driving me up the wall!"

Circle the correct answer.

What do you think the teacher really means?

- a. You children are really bothering me!
- b. You children are crowding me out.

Here is a story that really happened when

someone used figurative language.

### GET UNDER THE TABLE

Melinda was a Papago (pap' a go) Indian girl who attended<sup>3</sup> a mission<sup>4</sup> boarding<sup>5</sup> school in Phoenix, Arizona. At the school, everyone spoke English. At home on the reservation<sup>6</sup>, Melinda's family spoke Papago.

One day the dorm<sup>7</sup> mother asked Melinda to sweep<sup>8</sup> the kitchen floor. Melinda began to sweep the floor.

As the dorm mother left the room for a minute she said, "Be sure to get under the table, Melinda."

A short time later when the dorm mother returned, she was surprised to find Melinda under the table.

A puzzled Melinda looked out from under the table<sup>1</sup>. "What do you want me to do under



here?" she asked.

The dorm mother smiled. She realized she had used figurative language and Melinda had taken her literally.



"What do you want me to do under here?"



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>figurative</b> ['figjʊrətɪv] <i>adj.</i> 比喻的, 修辞的  | 5. <b>board</b> [bɔ:d] <i>n.</i> 木板; 委员会 <i>v.</i> 膳宿      |
| 2. <b>literally</b> ['lɪtərəli] <i>adv.</i> 逐字地, 按照字义地   | 6. <b>reservation</b> [ˌrezə'veɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 保留, 储备; 保留地 |
| 3. <b>attend</b> [ətend] <i>vt.</i> 出席, 参加, 上(学、教堂等); 照顾 | 7. <b>dorm</b> [dɔ:m] <i>n.</i> 宿舍                         |
| 4. <b>mission</b> ['mɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 任务; 传道(团体)          | 8. <b>sweep</b> [swi:p] <i>v.</i> 打扫                       |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. from under the table 从桌子下面

这里把from和under两个介词并列在一起, 作为一个介词组合使用并表达一个完整的意思, 称为“二重介词”。常见的二重介词还有from among, from behind, until/till after等。

e.g. The sun peered from behind a cloud.

太阳从一朵云后面探出头来。

Cal stays out every night until after midnight.

卡尔每晚在外面一呆就到后半夜。

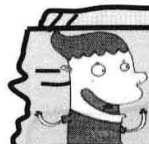
### 2. take ... literally 按字面意思理解

e.g. They have no sense of humor and take everything you say literally.

他们缺乏幽默感, 把别人说的每句话都当真。

When I told you to 'get lost', I didn't expect to be taken literally.

我叫你“get lost（消失）”，并没有想让你按字面意思来理解（“迷路”）。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. What do you think the dorm mother really meant for Melinda to do?
2. Why do you think Melinda was confused?

### II. Choose the statement that best explains each figurative expression.

1. Her cheeks were as red as apples.

- a. She had apples on her cheeks.
- b. Her cheeks were very red.

2. She cried her eyes out.

- a. Her eyes fell out.
- b. She cried very hard.

3. You are pulling my leg.

- a. You are trying to trick me.
- b. You are poking my leg.

4. He is as strong as an ox.

- a. He is large and clumsy.
- b. He is very strong.

## 参考译文

我们经常使用一些短语来使我们的语言变得更加生动有趣。这些短语的内在含义往往与其字面意思不相一致，不能按其字面意义来理解。这样的短语就称为“比喻性语言”。

例如：“安静点！你们快把我逼上墙头了！”

圈中正确答案。

你认为图中那位老师说这话是什么意思？

- a. 你们这些孩子快把我烦死了！
- b. 你们这些孩子快把我挤出去了！

下面是一个跟比喻性语言有关的真实的故事。

### 到桌子下面去

梅琳达是个北美印第安帕帕格族的小女孩，

她在亚利桑那州凤凰城的一所教会办的寄宿学校上学。在学校大家都讲英语，而在她位于保留地的家里，她和家人说帕帕格语。

有一天管宿舍的嬷嬷叫梅琳达打扫厨房的地板。梅琳达照办了。

然后嬷嬷要离开一下，走之前她说，“一定要到桌子下面去，梅琳达。”

过了一会儿，嬷嬷回来了。她看到桌子底下的梅琳达，非常惊讶。

梅琳达疑惑地望着她，“您要我到桌子下面来干什么呢？”

嬷嬷笑了。她明白了，刚才她用了比喻性语言，而梅琳达把它按字面意思来理解了。

## “美”事一桩

### “X”代表“吻”，“O”代表“拥抱”

我们在欧美文学或者影视作品中有时会看到人们（尤其是情侣）在信或者明信片的末尾写上“X”、“O”。这两个字母分别代表“吻”和“拥抱”。关于这两个记号的起源有很多说法。有人说，“X”用来表示吻是因为它的发音和“Kiss”相似。另一种说法跟宗教有关。中世纪时不识字的人用“X”在文件或合同上签名，并当着证人的面吻这个记号以示自己的诚挚，“吻”和“X”就这样被联系在了一起。“O”代表拥抱则是因为人们拥抱时张开的手臂像“O”的形状。这两个符号经常被人们随意搭配或者单独使用，以传达爱恋之情。例如：

ooo = hugs 拥抱

xxx = kisses 亲吻

OOO = big hugs 加力的拥抱

XXX = big kisses 加力的亲吻

OO! = big, excited hugs 加力、兴奋的拥抱

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

Money does not grow on trees.

天上不会掉馅饼。

He who hesitates is lost.

犹豫不决，易失良机。

Don't put all your eggs in one basket.

不要孤注一掷。

Curiosity killed the cat.

好奇致祸。

### Answer

I. 1. I think the dorm mother really meant that Melinda should clean every corner of the floor including the place under the table.

2. Melinda was confused because she had taken the dorm mother's words literally.

II. 1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b



# Lost

## 迷失



小朋友要听大人的话，不要在外面乱跑，要不然可能会迷路，找不到回家的方向，就像文中的玛丽，不听大人的劝告，最后回不了家，后悔莫及。

Mary had been told to stay close to the cabin, but she had to keep going. The raccoon<sup>1</sup> was scampering<sup>2</sup> just a few yards ahead of<sub>1</sub> her. He would run a few yards, stop, and glance back at Mary. Then he'd run a few more yards. Surely she would remember the way back.

Daylight was dimming<sup>3</sup>, making the grassy field look misty<sup>4</sup> and dreamy. The woods in the distance<sub>2</sub> were a large shadow looming<sup>5</sup> before Mary. She began looking for the patch<sup>6</sup> of white on the raccoon's chest which would sparkle<sup>7</sup> through the tall grass each time he turned to look at her.

"It's almost as if<sub>3</sub> he's leading me somewhere," she thought. "Wouldn't that be exciting? Maybe he'll show me his family. Baby raccoons! Maybe he's leading me to a hidden pond or a magic waterfall. Maybe..."

Then it happened. Mary tripped on a gopher hole. Her body whirled<sup>8</sup> and fell heavily on her turned leg, causing a sharp, hot pain



in her ankle<sup>9</sup>. The pain was like an insult<sup>10</sup>, a slap<sup>11</sup> in the face—a flash of anger, then tears. It hurt. It really hurt.

The raccoon stopped and looked at her one more time. Then he darted<sup>12</sup> into the woods and out of sight<sub>4</sub>. Mary gave a loud wail<sup>13</sup> as she watched him disappear, knowing that she couldn't follow him now and would never know where he was leading her. She sobbed<sup>14</sup> into her hands, feeling an angry disappointment and the dull, sickening ache of her ankle.

After a while, Mary became aware of<sub>5</sub> the prickly<sup>15</sup> grass on her legs and the dampness<sup>16</sup> in the air. Then she realized with alarm<sup>17</sup> that

it was dark! She couldn't even see the woods where the raccoon had gone. Now which way was that? Straight ahead and a little to the right. But as she struggled to stand up, she couldn't be sure. Maybe it was a little more to the left.

Lost and alone. How would she ever get back to the cabin? How foolish she had been to stray<sup>18</sup> this far. She knew better. What could she do now? How could she walk? Which way should she go? Which way? Which way? Questions were coming fast now, but there were no answers.

## REACTING TO WHAT YOU READ

Reading becomes easier and more

meaningful when you react to<sup>6</sup> what you read as you go along. The more involved<sup>19</sup> in the reading you become, the better you read. Two of the reacting skills are finding meaning and predicting<sup>20</sup> outcomes.

**Finding meaning.** To find the meaning, you must make a good guess about what an author means but does not tell directly. For instance, if a character in a story rushes up to a drinking fountain<sup>21</sup> and gulps<sup>22</sup> hurriedly and for a long time, you may guess that the character was thirsty. To find the right meanings, you need to be an active reader and react to clues<sup>23</sup> that the author gives you.

**Write your ideas.** Use complete sentences that start with a capital letter and end with a period.

1. Does the story "Lost" take place in the country or the city?

---



---

2. Why do you think Mary does or does not have a good imagination?

---



---

3. How is Mary feeling at this point in the story?

---



---

4. When in your life did you feel like Mary's feeling?

---



---

**Predicting outcomes.** To predict an outcome is to guess what will happen next or how a story will end. If you try to predict an outcome, you will read more actively because you will want to see if you are right or not. Whether you are right or not is not nearly as important as just making the predictions.

**Predict some outcomes.** Write your predictions in complete sentences.

5. Do you think Mary will ever see the raccoon again?

---



---

6. What do you think Mary will do now?

---



---

7. Why do you think Mary will or will not get back to her cabin?

---



---

Which way? Which way? Mary stood as still as a deer in the wide, dark field of tall grasses. She was too frightened to cry, too panicked to move. When her mind finally



cleared of the pounding questions, Mary said a simple prayer asking for help. She repeated the prayer and then remembered part of a *Bible* verse she had heard in Sunday school, "...fear

no evil, thy rod and thy staff shall comfort me." She felt calmer now.

Looking around she could see the blurred<sup>24</sup> outlines<sup>25</sup> of shapes in the darkness. There on the right were the woods. Behind her was a bush she had passed, and beyond it was a boulder<sup>26</sup> that she remembered.

"Thy rod and thy staff..." she thought with a smile of relief<sup>27</sup>, "of course, that's what I need." She hopped along toward the outlined woods. After finding and discarding<sup>28</sup> several small sticks, Mary found a thick one that was a little too short, but it would do. She used it like a crutch<sup>29</sup>, leaning on it as she turned. Then she hopped slowly but surely in what she knew was the right direction.

Some time later, she heard the calls of her

parents. What a joy it was to hear their voices! She answered them, "I'm here! I'm here!" They ran to her and hugged her, telling her how worried they had been and laughing with relief and happiness. Mary's ankle quickly became the center of attention. It did look terrible, quite swollen<sup>30</sup>, but strangely Mary didn't notice the pain in the excitement of the reunion with her parents. They murmured<sup>31</sup> and fussed<sup>32</sup> over her. Making a basket with their arms, they

carried her like a princess the rest of the way home.

Mary had so much to tell them about; the raccoon, the gopher hole, her panic, and her prayer. Most of all, she wanted to explain to them about her crutch and the *Bible* verse. How grateful she was for the calmness the verse had brought her. How glad she was to be home again!

by Beverly Hardcastle Lewis



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. raccoon [rə'ku:n] *n.* 浣熊
2. scamper ['skæmpə] *vi.* 蹦跳, 奔跑
3. dim [dɪm] *v./adj.* 昏暗, 模糊
4. misty ['mɪsti] *adj.* 有雾的, 模糊的
5. loom [lu:m] *vi.* 隐隐呈现, 朦胧呈现
6. patch [pætʃ] *n.* 补丁, 斑点
7. sparkle ['spɑ:kəl] *vi.* 闪耀, 冒火花
8. whirl [wɜ:l] *v.* 旋转, 回旋
9. ankle ['æŋkl] *n.* 脚踝
10. insult ['ɪnsʌlt] *n.* 辱骂
11. slap [slæp] *n.* 一巴掌
12. dart [dɑ:t] *v.* 猛冲, 突进, 飞奔
13. wail [weɪl] *n./v.* 痛苦
14. sob [sɒb] *v.* 抽泣, 呜咽
15. prickly ['prɪkli] *adj.* 多刺的, 刺痛的
16. dampness ['dæmpnɪs] *n.* 潮湿, 湿度
17. alarm [ə'la:m] *n.* 警告, 警觉 *v.* 警告, 报警
18. stray [streɪ] *vi.* 走散, 走失, 误入歧途
19. involve [ɪn'vɒlv] *vt.* 卷入, 陷入, 涉及
20. predict [prɪ'dɪkt] *v.* 预测
21. fountain ['faʊntɪn] *n.* 喷泉, (装有龙头的) 汽水容器
22. gulp [gʌlp] *v.* 狼吞虎咽
23. clue [klu:] *n.* 线索
24. blur [blɜ:] *v.* 弄脏, 模糊
25. outline ['aʊtaɪn] *n.* 大纲, 梗概, 轮廓
26. boulder ['bəʊldə] *n.* 大圆石
27. relief [rɪ'li:f] *n.* 轻松, 放松; 减轻, 解除; 安慰
28. discard [dɪs'ka:d] *vt.* 抛弃, 丢弃
29. crutch [krʌtʃ] *n.* 拐杖
30. swollen ['swɒlən] *adj.* 肿大的
31. murmur ['mɜ:mə] *v.* 低语
32. fuss [fʌs] *v.* 焦急, 焦躁 *n.* 大惊小怪, 小题大做





## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. ahead of 在……之前

e.g. Ahead of us lie many difficulties.

我们面前有很多困难。

Can we finish the project ahead of time?

我们能提前完成项目吗?

### 2. in the distance 在远处

e.g. The thunder rolled in the distance.

雷声在远处轰隆作响。

### 3. as if 好像, 如

as if 引导方式状语从句, 从句所用语气分为两种情况:

①当说话者认为句子所述的是真实的或极有可能发生或存在的事实时, as if 从句用陈述语气。

e.g. It sounds as if it is raining.

听起来像是在下雨。

He talks as if he is drunk.

从他谈话的样子来看他是醉了。

②当说话人认为句子所述的是不真实的或极少有可能发生或存在的情况时, as if 从句用虚拟语气。

e.g. He talks as if he knew where she was.

他说话的样子, 好像他知道她在哪里似的。

The girl listened as if she had been turned to stone.

那女孩倾听着, 一动也不动, 像已经变成了石头似的。

### 4. out of sight 超出视力所及范围, 看不见

e.g. Out of sight, out of mind.

眼不见, 心不烦。

You must keep out of sight.

你必须远离人们的视线。

**5. be/become aware of** 意识到

e.g. China is aware of the threat.

中国意识到了威胁。

**6. react to** 回应, 反应

e.g. You choose how you react to situations.

你选择如何应付生活中的种种情形。

**7. ...it would do** 合适; 足够

e.g. This dress won't do for the dinner party.

这裙子不适合穿去参加晚宴。

**8. lean on** 倚, 靠

e.g. Don't always lean on others for help.

不要老是依靠别人的帮助。



**Exercise** 牛刀小试

**I. Reading comprehension.**

1. What was Mary following?

- A. A trail.
- B. A butterfly.
- C. A raccoon.
- D. A gopher.

2. What time was it when Mary got lost?

- A. Early morning.
- B. Early afternoon.
- C. Early evening.
- D. At night.

3. How did Mary get home again?

- A. She crawled.
- B. She used a crutch.
- C. She hopped.
- D. She ran.

4. Who met Mary when she got home?

- A. Her mother.
- B. Her parents.
- C. The raccoon.
- D. Her friends.

5. Which one of the following best summarizes the main idea of the story?

- A. Mary got lost chasing a raccoon into the woods.
- B. Mary hurt her ankle and had to be carried home.
- C. Mary got lost, but after praying she found her way home.
- D. A raccoon got lost, but Mary found him.

## II. Match the words with their meanings. One item in the right column is not needed.

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. _____ dampness       | a. an attack of words meant to hurt someone's feelings |
| 2. _____ stray          | b. scratchy  |
| 3. _____ discarding     | c. to wander away                                      |
| 4. _____ looming        | d. appearing very large                                |
| 5. _____ prickly        | e. slight wetness                                      |
| 6. _____ insult         | f. a small ground squirrel                             |
| 7. _____ disappointment | g. a story   |
| 8. _____ gopher         | h. the failure to come up with what is hoped for       |
|                         | i. throwing away                                       |

## III. Rearrange the sentences in time sequence.

- a. "Thy rod and thy staff..."
- b. She felt a sharp, hot pain in her ankle.
- c. "It's almost as if he's leading me somewhere."

d. Which way? Which way?

e. She heard the calls of her parents.

#### IV. Choose the right word from the form to fill in each blank, for example, a flash of anger.

**bar, shelf, slice, flash, bunch, set, glass, loaf, crew, herd, drop, bowl, spoonful, handful, pair, swarm, suite, lump, gang, flight**

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. a _____ of bees/flies           | 2. a _____ of hooligans              |
| 3. a _____ of chocolate            | 4. a _____ of stairs                 |
| 5. a _____ of water/oil            | 6. a _____ of meat                   |
| 7. a _____ of sugar/coal           | 8. a _____ of rooms                  |
| 9. a _____ of soup                 | 10. a _____ of shoes                 |
| 11. a _____ of rice                | 12. a _____ of books                 |
| 13. a _____ of bread               | 14. a _____ of sand/clay             |
| 15. a _____ of keys/grapes/bananas | 16. a _____ of teeth                 |
| 17. a _____ of cattle              | 18. a _____ of lightening/hope/light |

### 参考译文

大人叮嘱过玛丽不要走得离小屋太远，但她不停地走，越走越远。那只浣熊就在离她几码远的地方，跳几步，停下来回头看看玛丽，又向前跳几步。玛丽相信自己能找到回家的路。

天越来越暗，暮色中的草地显得雾气蒙蒙，像梦中的幻境。远处的树林像一片巨大的阴影，隐隐呈现在前方。她开始搜寻浣熊胸前的那块白色，每次它转身看她时，那块白色就在黑暗中闪闪发亮。

“它似乎是要带我到什么地方去，”她想，“这不是很好玩吗？也许它要带我去见它一家。

啊，会有小浣熊！也许它要带我去某个秘密池塘，或者某个有魔力的瀑布。也许……”

就在这时，玛丽踩到一个地鼠洞，被绊倒了。她身体失去平衡，倒下时重重地压在一条腿上，只觉得脚踝一阵剧烈的疼痛。这疼痛就像是被人辱骂，或者是被打了一耳光——先是愤怒，而后眼泪流了下来。真的很疼。

那只浣熊又回头看了她一眼，然后飞快地跑进树林里，消失不见了。眼睁睁地看着它跑走，玛丽失声痛哭起来，她追不上它了，也永远不会知道它要带她到什么地方去了。她把脸埋在臂弯



里，抽泣着，因为失望而感到愤怒，脚踝又痛得叫人无法忍受。

过了一会儿，玛丽发现腿边的草扎得她生疼，空气中的湿气越来越重，她猛然警觉：天已经黑了！那只浣熊跑进去的树林已经看不见了。现在该走哪条路呢？前方偏右的那条。但挣扎着站起来之后，她犹豫了。也可能是偏左的那一条。

迷路了，只有自己一个。要怎样才能回到小屋？自己居然乱走，还走了这么远，多愚蠢呀。现在得到教训了。可是现在怎么办呢？要怎么做才能走路，该走哪一条路？哪一条路？到底是哪一条？疑问潮水般涌上来，却找不到答案。

### 边读边思考

如果你边读边思考，阅读将会变得更简单、更有意义。阅读时越专心，阅读质量越好。边读边思考有两个方法，一是找出言外之意，二是预测结果。

**找出言外之意：**要找出言外之意，你必须能够准确地猜测出作者想说又没有明说的东西。比如，一个故事中的某个人物冲到饮用水水龙头跟前，大口大口地喝了很长一段时间，你就能推测出这个人一定是渴了。要正确地找出言外之意，阅读时你必须主动积极地思考，对作者提供的线索要有足够的敏感度。

**写出你的看法：**使用完整的句子，以大写字母开头，句号结束。

1. 这个故事发生在农村还是城市？

---



---

2. 你认为玛丽的想象力丰富吗？为什么？

---



---

3. 故事发展到这个阶段，玛丽有什么感受？

---



---

4. 你有过玛丽这样的感受吗，什么时候？

---



---

**预测结果：**预测结果是指猜测故事下一步如何发展或者如何结束。如果你想要预测结果，你就得更加积极地阅读，这样才能知道你的预测是对还是错。然而，预测的对错与否并不重要，重要的是作出预测这个过程。

你的预测：把你的预测用完整的句子写下来。

5. 你认为玛丽会再见到那只浣熊吗？

---

---

6. 你认为玛丽现在会怎么做？

---

---

7. 你认为玛丽能回到小屋吗，为什么？

---

---

该走哪条路呢？哪一条好呢？玛丽像一只迷途的小鹿，一动不动地站在高高的草丛中，周围一片漆黑。她已经吓得哭不出来、挪不动脚步。当她终于可以不去想那些烦人的问题时，她向上帝祈祷以寻求帮助。她反复念着祷告词，然后记起了在主日学校学到的《圣经》中的一句话，“……不怕遭害，你的杖，你的竿，都安慰我。”她觉得平静些了。

她朝四周望去，黑暗中只看得见一片片模糊的影子。右手边有片树林，身后是她之前经过的一片灌木丛，灌木丛后面有块石头。她曾经见过这块石头。

“你的杖，你的竿……”她想起这句话，露出了宽慰的笑容，“这正是我所需要的。”她单脚跳着朝树林方向前进。她找了几根木棍，丢掉几根细的，留下一根粗一点的，尽管有点短，但凑合着能用。她把木棍当做拐杖，拄着它转过身，朝她认定的方向走去，走得很慢，却坚定不移。

过了一阵子，她听到爸爸妈妈在呼唤着她。听到他们的声音令她多么高兴呀！她答应着，“我在这儿！我在这儿！”他们朝她跑过来，抱住她，欣慰地笑着，告诉她他们刚刚有多担心。玛丽的脚踝立刻成为大家关注的焦点。脚踝看上去伤得很严重，肿得很厉害，但很奇怪，玛丽沉浸在与父母团聚的兴奋之中，一点都不觉得痛。他们低声说着话，为玛丽的脚伤忧心忡忡。他俩把胳膊叠在一起搭了个轿子，像抬着公主似的把玛丽抬回家。

玛丽有很多话要说给爸爸妈妈听：浣熊、地鼠洞、她的惊慌和祈祷。但最想说的是她的拐棍和《圣经》里的那句话。这句话让她平静下来，对此她无比感激。重新回到家她是多么高兴呀！

贝弗利·哈德卡斯尔·刘易斯 著

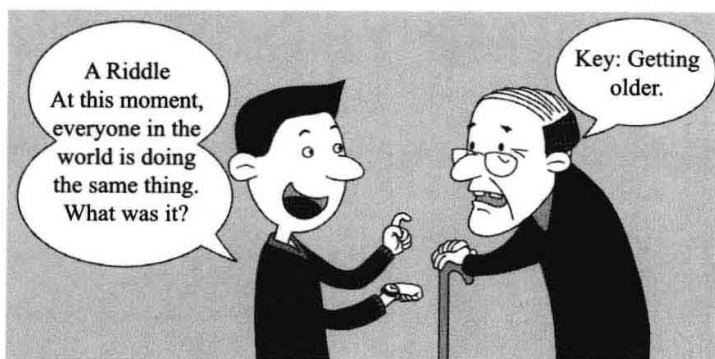
## “美”事一桩

### 什么是主日学校

主日学校 (Sunday School)，通常指在固定主日礼拜之前、之间或之后举行的宗教教导课程，有些教会用“教会学校”一词。现代的主日学校正与其名称一样，绝大部分都是在星期日开办，主要是针对儿童，教孩子们学习教会知识，也包括英语、舞蹈、伦理等其他课程。但大多数教会，也为成人开设课程。成人课有时也称查经班。主日学校的教师常为接受过某些训练的平信徒志愿者。课程按年龄层次设置并通常与教会年历一致。大量跨教派间的或各教派组织为主日学校提供教材。

最初的主日学校是由一位叫做罗伯特·瑞克斯的报纸编辑于1780年在英格兰的格洛斯特创立。其目的在于教穷人的孩子读书写字和宗教知识。瑞克斯的做法很快传到英国其他地方、欧洲大陆和美国。美国最初的主日学校之一是美国循道宗创始人，法兰西斯·亚斯理 (Francis Asbury) 于1786年在佛吉尼亚州的汉诺威县开办，从此，主日学校运动迅速流行开来。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



### 谜语

此刻，世界上每个人都在做同一件事情，你猜是什么？

答案：变老。

### Answer

I. 1. C 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A

II. 1. e 2. c 3. i 4. d 5. b 6. a 7. h 8. f

III. c b d a e

IV. 1. swarm 2. gang 3. bar 4. flight 5. drop 6. slice  
7. lump 8. suite 9. bowl/spoonful 10. pair 11. bowl  
12. shelf 13. loaf/slice 14. handful 15. bunch 16. set  
17. herd 18. flash



# **Part 2**

## **Social Studies**

### 社会科学

# Continents

## 大陆



地球上共有七个大陆。虽然我们从小就开始学习地理知识，但对于这些大陆，我们了解多少呢？对于我们生活的地球的几大板块，我们应该有清楚的了解。现在就随我们一起进入环球之旅吧！

(Look at a globe or world map with this section.) The seven largest pieces of land on earth are called *continents*. Two of them, North and South America, are in the Western Hemisphere. Four others: Europe, Africa, Asia, and Australia, are in the Eastern Hemisphere. The last continent, *Antarctica*<sup>1</sup>, is unusual because it is at the South Pole, and is in both the Eastern and Western Hemispheres<sup>2</sup>.

Europe, Asia and Africa are all connected together. Europe and Asia are divided by mountains and seas. The border between the two is an *imaginary*<sup>3</sup> line through the Ural Mountains, the Caspian Sea, the Caucasus Mountains, and the Black Sea. The land of these two continents is often called *Eurasia* to show how closely they are connected.

Africa is *connected* to Asia by the *Isthmus*<sup>4</sup> of Suez. This thin piece of land is crossed by the *Suez Canal*<sup>5</sup>. The canal was finished in 1869. The 118-mile-long (190

kilometers) man-made *strait*<sup>6</sup> connects the Red Sea to the *Mediterranean*<sup>7</sup> Sea. It allows ships to sail between Europe and southern Asia without going all the way around Africa.

Asia is the largest continent on earth. It also has more people living on it than any other continents. *It is in Asia that*, Noah's Ark landed after the Flood and human life *started over again*<sup>8</sup>. The Tower of Babel was built in Asia in what is now the country of Iraq. From there *mankind spread out*, all over the earth. It is also in Asia, in Israel, where Jesus, our Lord and Savior, was born and lived his entire life.

Europe is much smaller than Asia. The *apostle*<sup>9</sup> Paul first brought the good news about Jesus to that continent. The good news spread until almost all of Europe was Christian. Many years later, beginning in about 1500, the people from this continent began to *explore the entire earth*. They were the first people to *map our world*. We will study what they did during the



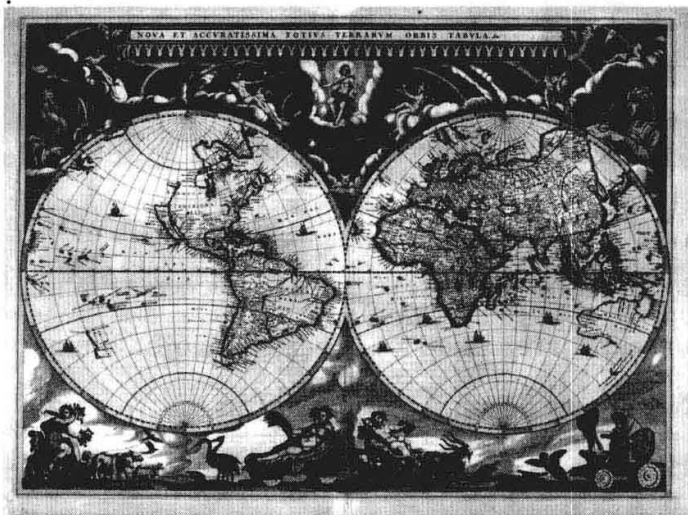
“Age of Exploration” in section two of this LIFE PAC.

Africa is the second largest continent. The country of Egypt in North Africa was a very important nation during Bible times. Joseph was sent into slavery there and became the second-most important ruler in the land. The children of Israel lived in Egypt for 400 years, until Moses led them out to the Promised Land. North Africa was also an important area of Christianity in the first few hundred years after Jesus's resurrection<sup>9</sup>. Many important early leaders of the Christian Church came from North Africa. The church there was destroyed by a new religion called Islam about 700 years after Jesus's birth.

Australia is often called the “Island Continent,” because it is the smallest continent on earth. It is not connected to any other continent, and all of it is south of the equator<sup>10</sup>. There is one continent that is even further south — Antarctica. It is a continent at the South Pole covered with snow and ice. It is larger than Europe or Australia, but it is too cold for people to make their homes there.

North and South America are the continents you know best. They are connected

by the Isthmus of Panama. There is a canal across this isthmus, also. The Panama Canal is 51 miles (82 kilometers) long from start to finish. (It crosses a lake at one point.) The canal was built by the United States and opened in 1914. Ships sailing from New York to San Francisco traveled 7,800 fewer miles (12,630 kilometers) by using the canal instead



of sailing around South America.

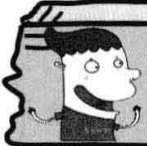
Many islands in the ocean are part of whatever continent they are close to. For example, the big island of Greenland northeast of North America is part of that continent. The archipelago<sup>11</sup> of Japan (made up of thousands of islands) is part of Asia, the continent that is just to the west of it.

注：本课选自四年级《历史与地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>Antarctica</b> [æn'ta:ktikə] <i>n.</i> 南极洲        | <i>adj.</i> 地中海的  |
| 2. <b>hemisphere</b> ['hemɪsfɪə] <i>n.</i> 半球           | 8. <b>apostle</b> [ə'pɒsl] <i>n.</i> 使徒(耶稣的十二门徒之一); 最初的传教士      |
| 3. <b>imaginary</b> [ɪ'mædʒɪnəri] <i>adj.</i> 想象的, 虚构的  | 9. <b>resurrection</b> [ˌrezə'rekʃən] <i>n.</i> 复活; 复兴; 恢复, 再流行 |
| 4. <b>isthmus</b> ['ɪsməs] <i>n.</i> 地峡                 | 10. <b>equator</b> [ɪ'kweɪtə] <i>n.</i> 赤道                      |
| 5. <b>canal</b> [kə'næl] <i>n.</i> 运河                   | 11. <b>archipelago</b> [ˌɑ:kɪ'pelɪɡəʊ] <i>n.</i> 群岛             |
| 6. <b>strait</b> [streɪt] <i>n.</i> 海峡                  |   |
| 7. <b>Mediterranean</b> [ˌmedɪtə'reɪnjən] <i>n.</i> 地中海 |   |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. It's in Asia that...

“it” 引导强调句型, 强调主语、宾语或状语, 其结构是: It + be + 被强调部分 + that + 句子其余部分。

#### 1) 强调主语

e.g. It's the times that produce their heroes.

时势造英雄。

It's I who finally solved the problem.

最后解决问题的是我。

注意: that后面的动词要与被强调的名词或代词保持数的一致。

#### 2) 强调宾语

e.g. It's English that I teach in the college.

我在大学里教的是英语。

It was a watch that I received as my 16th birthday gift.

我收到的16岁生日礼物是一块手表。

### 3) 强调状语

e.g. It was in Fuzhou that I finished my college education.

我是在福州上的大学。(强调地点介词短语用that)

It was in 1983 that my parents got married.

我父母亲是在1983结婚的。(强调时间介词短语用that)

It was yesterday that/when he bought a new bike.

他昨天买了辆新自行车。(强调时间副词可用that或when)

### 2. start (all)over again 再次重新开始

e.g. He tore up the letter and started over again.

他把信撕了重新写。

I hope you can forgive him and let him start all over again.

我希望你能够原谅他，让他重新开始。

### 3. spread out 铺开，展开；传播

e.g. The search team spread out in the forest.

搜救小组在森林里分散开来。

The beautiful valley now lay spread out before us.

美丽的山谷呈现在我们眼前。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### Put the correct answer in the blank.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest continent with the most people.
2. There are (how many) \_\_\_\_\_ continents.
3. The continent that is furthest south is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The first people to explore and map the entire earth came from \_\_\_\_\_.
5. North and South America are connected by the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Egypt was an important nation of the continent of \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are in the Western Hemisphere.
8. The land of Europe and Asia together is sometimes called \_\_\_\_\_.

## 参考译文

(对照地球仪或世界地图来看这部分。)地球上最大的七块陆地称为“大陆”，其中的两块大陆，即北美洲和南美洲，位于西半球。另外四块即欧洲、非洲、亚洲和澳洲位于东半球。最后一块大陆——南极洲，它的特别之处在于它地处南极，并且跨越东西两个半球。

欧洲、亚洲和非洲互相连接。欧洲和亚洲之间隔着山川和海洋，它们的分界线实际上是一条贯穿乌拉尔山、里海、大高加索山脉和土耳其海峡的假想线。人们通常把这两块大陆合称为“欧亚大陆”，以此来体现它们的紧密联系。

非洲与亚洲通过苏伊士地峡连接在一起。苏伊士运河从这块狭长的土地上穿过。苏伊士运河于1869年开通，全长118英里（190公里），是一条连接红海与地中海的人工海峡。有了苏伊士运河，往返于欧洲和南亚的轮船不必绕道非洲就可以直接到达目的地。

亚洲是地球上最大、居住人口最多的一块大陆。上帝降下大洪水之后，诺亚方舟就是在亚洲着陆的，也正是在这里，人类重新开始繁衍生息。《圣经》里提到的巴别塔就位于亚洲，那儿如今是伊拉克的国土。也正是在亚洲的以色列，我们的救主耶稣出世并在那儿度过一生。

比起亚洲，欧洲要小得多了。使徒保罗首先把福音传播到欧洲，最终使欧洲人都成为了基督徒。很多年之后，大约始于1500年，欧洲人开始探索世界。他们是最早绘制世界地图的人。我们将在这本书的第二部分学到他们在“探索时期”学到了什么。

非洲是世界第二大洲。位于非洲北部的埃及是圣经时代非常重要的一个国家。《圣经》记载，以色列人雅各布的儿子约瑟夫被卖到埃及为奴，后来成为埃及的宰相。以色列人的子孙在埃及生活了400余年，直到摩西把他们带出埃及进入上帝许给他们的福地。耶稣复活后的前几百年间，非洲北部还是基督教的一个重要教区。基督教会早期的几个重要领袖就来自那里。后来，大约在耶稣诞生700年之后，非洲的基督教被新生的伊斯兰教替代了。

澳大利亚经常被称为“岛洲”，因为它是地球上最小的一块大陆。它与其他大陆毫无联系，完全位于赤道以南。更南边还有一块大陆——南极洲。它位于南极，冰雪覆盖。南极洲面积比欧洲、澳洲都大，却由于气候寒冷而不适合人类居住。

北美洲和南美洲是你们最了解的两块大陆。它们通过巴拿马地峡相连。这地峡上也有一条运河。巴拿马运河全长51英里（82公里），（中途经过一个湖泊）。该运河由美国开凿，于1914年投入使用。这样一来，从纽约驶往旧金山的轮船就无需绕行南美，可省7800英里（12630公里）的航程。

海洋中的岛屿划归与其相距最近的大陆。例如，北美洲东北方向的格陵兰岛划归北美洲，日本群岛（包含上千个岛屿）则划归位于群岛西侧的亚洲。



## “美”事一桩

## 美国社会科课程的特点

我们前面介绍过美国的中小学课程有一门社会科(Social Studies), 本章的课文正是以这一学科为依据挑选整理出来的, 选用的课本主要是《历史与地理》(*History & Geography*)。有些读者可能会产生疑问: 地理到底属于自然科学还是社会科学?

其实, 美国学校的社会科也是一门综合性的课程。美国社会科协会提出十大主题轴作为该门学科的课程标准: 文化, 时间, 人、地与环境, 个人发展与认同, 个人、团体与制度, 权力、权威与管理, 生产、分配与消费, 科学、技术与社会, 全球联系, 公民意识与实践。这十大主题轴始终在社会学科(包括某些自然科学)间进行综合。

这门课程不是历史和地理学科知识的简单拼凑, 而是诸社会学科相关领域的综合; 不仅是知识层面的综合, 更是方法和视角的整合; 不仅是社会科学和自然科学领域的知识, 还包括了学生的生活经验和社会实践的知识。它冲破了学科间的界限, 大大拓展了课程的空间和开放性, 促使学生更好地接触社会、认识社会、了解社会、融入社会。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



一个女士问医生, “生牡蛎卫生吗?”

“是的,” 医生说, “没听过它们不舒服。”

注释: “healthy”既可指本身健康, 也可指对人有益。

## Answer

1. Asia 2. seven 3. Antarctica 4. Europe 5. Isthmus of Panama 6. Africa 7. North America, South America 8. Eurasia

# The United States (Part One)

2

## 美国地理概况 (上)



作为世界上最发达的资本主义国家，很多人对美国充满了好奇与向往。对于美国的概况，我们都有兴趣也有必要去了解。那就从美国的基本概况入手吧！

The United States of America is in the center section of North America. It's one of the richest and certainly the most powerful nation on earth. The forty-eight states in the center of the continent are called the *contiguous*<sup>1</sup> states. Two other states, Alaska (northwest of Canada) and Hawaii (in the middle of the Pacific Ocean), are also a part of this nation.

The people of the United States (also called America) came mostly from Europe, seeking both freedom and better lives. They were the type of people who were willing to *take a chance on* the unknown. They were *bold*<sup>2</sup> risk-takers. They made the country a "melting pot," where many cultures of Europe were melted together to create a new culture. These adventurous Americans also worked hard to turn a rich wilderness into farms, cities,

and prosperous businesses.

Today America is an English-speaking nation. Most of the people there have ancestors from many different countries. The culture of the country honors hard work and independence. It also used to honor God, but power and pride have made many Americans forget the God who created the land for them.

You will study the history and the people of the United States another time. In this LIFEPAK you will learn the states, their capitals, and a little about the geography of the country. You will learn the states in six sections: Northeast, Southern, Central, *Prairie*<sup>3</sup>, Mountain, and Pacific States.

### NORTHEAST STATES

The Northeast is where the second

American colony<sup>4</sup> founded by the British began. The settlers came to Plymouth, Massachusetts in 1620. They were Christians who were escaping persecution<sup>5</sup> in England by the state church. We call them the Pilgrims.

The colonists naturally named the land “New England” after their home. That name is still used for the states of Maine, Vermont, New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. It became a land of small farms and close-knit towns. The deep religious faith of the people created a stable, hard-working group.

The land of New England is mostly mountains, the Appalachian Mountains. The Green, White, and Blue Mountains are the best-known ranges<sup>6</sup> in the area. The thin strip<sup>7</sup> of the Coastal Plains is the best land. The soil is usually thin and rocky. But, there is plenty of water and with hard work, the farmers grew enough to survive.

The Northeast is a beautiful section of the country. The mountains and hills are covered with forests. They glimmer<sup>8</sup> with a white blanket of snow in winter and a deep green covering in summer. In the fall the hills are covered with bright trees dancing in their changing colors. The mountains, forests, and streams are a delight to people who love the outdoors.

Eventually, the fast moving streams that tumbled<sup>9</sup> down out of the mountains were put

to practical use<sup>2</sup>. They were used to power machines to spin<sup>10</sup> thread, weave<sup>11</sup> cloth, and make other goods. America's first factories began in the Northeast in the 1700—1800's. For many years it was the main manufacturing center of the country. Gradually, however, other places have replaced it. Today much of the Northeast's industry is too old and has been shut down.

The Northeast, along with<sup>3</sup> Virginia from the South, was the heartland of the country when the United States was formed in 1776. Virginia was the first and largest colony. New York City and Philadelphia, Pennsylvania were the largest cities. Much of the Revolutionary War, which won freedom from Britain, was fought in these states.

The Catskill and Adirondack Ranges are part of the Appalachians in New York. The mountains run through most of the Northeast States, but the Coastal Plains get wider south of New England, providing more good farmland. Also, the Hudson and Mohawk Rivers cut through the mountains in New York. This creates a fertile valley, as well as<sup>4</sup> a way to cross the highlands. In 1825, the Erie Canal<sup>12</sup> connected the Mohawk River with Lake Erie. That meant that goods could be shipped from the Great Lakes through the canal and rivers to New York City on the Atlantic Ocean.

The Northeast port cities of Boston, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and New York grew

huge on the trade between America and the world. They also grew bigger as industries were built all over the Northeast in the 1800's. Today these are megalopolises<sup>13</sup> that spread out for miles along the coast.

There are many important features<sup>14</sup> in these states. Niagara Falls is on the river between Lake Erie and Ontario in New York. The St. Lawrence River forms part of the border<sup>15</sup> between New York and Canada. Also off the coast of New York is Long Island, the largest island in the contiguous states. The Atlantic coastline is dotted with sand beaches and has many barrier islands. The Allegheny and Monongahela Rivers, on the western side of the mountains, meet at Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania. They join to create the Ohio River, which drains west into the great Mississippi River.

## SOUTHERN STATES

The Southern States begin south of Pennsylvania at the Mason-Dixon Line. The Mason-Dixon Line began as the border between Maryland and Pennsylvania. It is named after the two men who surveyed and set it in the 1760's. Over many years people began to think of it as the line which separated the North from the South in American history. It included not only the border of Maryland, but the northern border of the states that allowed blacks to be kept as slaves in the mid-1800's. The

Mason-Dixon Line, therefore, also ran along the Ohio River, the northern border of both West Virginia and Kentucky.

It was the Southern States that formed most of the Confederate<sup>16</sup> States of America in 1860 at the start of the Civil War. Those states wanted to keep slaves to grow their crops, while the Northern States wanted to end slavery. The Southern States tried to rebel<sup>17</sup> and form their own country. After five years of terrible war, they were forced to stay in the United States and free their slaves.

West Virginia had just been part of Virginia before that time, but the people of that area separated from Virginia and created their own state. They did not want to join the Confederacy. Because the capital of the United States, Washington D.C., is in Maryland, U.S. soldiers came into the state and would not let it join the Confederacy.

The capital of the United States is built on land taken from Maryland and Virginia in 1790. The 10-mile-square piece of land was named the District of Columbia (after Columbus). The capital city built there was named Washington after the first president. Eventually the city got so big it filled the whole District. Today, the capital is called Washington, District of Columbia, or Washington, D.C. for short.

The Coastal Plains that run along the Atlantic and Gulf coast are the biggest land feature of the Southern States. The good



farmland and many rivers to transport crops attracted the settlers. The Appalachian Mountains run mainly through West Virginia, Kentucky, and Tennessee. Between the mountains and the plains, however, is another important feature, the Piedmont Plateau.

The Piedmont Plateau is a gently rolling plateau between the Coastal Plains and the Appalachian Mountains in the South. It is a part of the Appalachian Highlands. The plateau runs between the plains and the Appalachians all the way<sub>6</sub> from New Jersey to Alabama. The soil is not as good as in the plains, but it is better than in the mountains, and many crops are grown there. The drop from the plateau to the plains can be very steep<sup>18</sup>, and rivers usually form waterfalls there. Many cities have been built on this “fall line” to take advantage of<sub>7</sub> the power from the waterfalls.

There is one other area of highland you need to know in this section. That is the Ozark Mountains. The Ozarks are located where Arkansas, Missouri, and Oklahoma touch. Those three states are in three different sections, so we will mention the Ozarks here. It is one of two important highland areas between the Appalachians and the Cordillera in the United States.

The Ohio River begins at Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania and forms the northern border of this section of states. It joins the Mississippi River where Illinois, Kentucky, and Missouri

meet. From there, the Mississippi goes south to the Gulf of Mexico. The greatest river in North America, the Mississippi has tributaries<sup>19</sup> that come from both the Appalachian and Cordillera Mountains. It is an American river that has a drainage<sup>20</sup> basin that covers the entire center of the contiguous states.

## CENTRAL STATES

The Central States are in the Central Lowlands of North America. There is one small area of higher land in this section. It is called the Superior Uplands. It is the second important area of highlands between the Appalachians and the Cordillera (the other was the Ozarks). The Superior Uplands are located at the west (left, on the map) end of Lake Superior, the largest of the Great Lakes (also the largest lake in the world). It is a hilly, rocky area covered with beautiful lakes.

The Great Lakes form most of the border between the U.S. and Canada in this region. Lake Michigan is the only one of the Great Lakes that is completely in the United States. The other four lakes are half in the U.S. and half in Canada.

All of the Great Lakes are part of the St. Lawrence Seaway. The Seaway uses canals, rivers, and the Great Lakes to provide a way for ocean ships to reach cities far away from the ocean. The result is another coastline for America and Canada. Chicago, Illinois on Lake

Michigan is about 700 miles from the Atlantic Ocean, but it is still a port city for ships that sail on the Atlantic!

The Central Lowlands have excellent farmland. The colder temperatures of the most northern states do limit the crops that can be grown there, but the rich, well-watered lands of Iowa, Missouri, Illinois, Indiana, and Ohio produce abundant<sup>21</sup> crops.

The Mississippi River runs through the center of this section. The source of the Mississippi itself is in the Superior Uplands. From its source in Minnesota it flows south to reach the Gulf of Mexico in Louisiana. The

Mississippi is a border for many states as it crosses the country. For example, the river forms the entire eastern border for the states of Iowa, Missouri, and Arkansas.

Another important tributary, the Missouri River, joins the Mississippi near St. Louis, Missouri. The source of the Missouri is in the Rocky Mountains of the Cordillera. These rivers and the Great Lakes allowed settlers to go deep into this land long before roads could be built. This land, on the far side of the Appalachians, was next to be settled after the east coast.

注：本课选自四年级《历史和地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **contiguous** [kən'tɪɡjuəs] *adj.* 连接的, 邻近的
2. **bold** [bəʊld] *adj.* 大胆的, 勇敢的
3. **prairie** ['preəri] *n.* 大草原, 牧场
4. **colony** ['kɒləni] *n.* 殖民地
5. **persecution** [ˌpɜːsɪ'kjuːʃən] *n.* 迫害, 虐待
6. **range** [reɪndʒ] *n.* 列, 行; 山脉
7. **strip** [stri:p] *n.* 带, 条, 条板; 带状地
8. **glimmer** ['ɡlɪmə] *vi.* 发微光, 闪光
9. **tumble** ['tʌmbəl] *vi.* 摔倒, 跌倒; 滚动
10. **spin** [spɪn] *v.* 纺; 转动
11. **weave** [wi:v] *vt.* 织, 编织

12. **canal** [kə'næl] *n.* 运河
13. **megapolis** [ˌmegə'ləpəlɪs] *n.* 特大都市
14. **feature** ['fi:tʃə] *n.* 面容, 特征 *vt.* 以……为特征
15. **border** ['bɔːdə] *n.* 边(界, 缘, 境); 界线
16. **confederate** [kən'fedəreɪt] *n.* 同盟者
17. **rebel** ['rebəl] *n.* 叛徒
18. **steep** [sti:p] *adj.* 险峻的, 陡峭的, 急剧升降的
19. **tributary** ['trɪbjʊtəri] *n.* 支流
20. **drainage** ['dreɪnɪdʒ] *n.* 排水, 水系
21. **abundant** [ə'bʌndənt] *adj.* 丰富的, 充足的



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. take a chance on sth 冒险

e.g. We took a chance on the weather and planned to have a picnic.

我们怀着天气可能会好的侥幸心理计划外出野餐。

### 2. put sth to use 使用, 利用

e.g. She could put her talents to good use in this company.

在这家公司, 她能够好好发挥她的才干。

### 3. along with/together with 连同句中谓语的数应与句子的主语保持一致。如课文中句子的主语是“the northeast”, 故be动词用“was”。

e.g. The teacher, along with 20 students, is laughing happily.

老师和20个学生一起开心地笑着。

### 4. as well as sth 而且, 也, 还

e.g. We grow flowers as well as vegetables in our courtyard.

我们在院子种花, 也种菜。

### 5. for short 简称, 缩写

e.g. Fujian Province is called Min for short.

福建省简称闽。

### 6. all the way 一路上, 自始至终

e.g. My dog followed me all the way to the riverside.

我的狗一路跟着我来到河边。

### 7. take advantage of 利用

e.g. You should take good advantage of this opportunity.

你应该好好利用这个机会。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Choose the correct letter to match these items on the left.

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. _____ Pilgrims     | a. waterfall between Lakes Erie and Ontario                                      |
| 2. _____ Catskill     | b. Monongahela and Allegheny Rivers make this river when they meet at Pittsburgh |
| 3. _____ Erie         | c. Maine, Vermont, New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island       |
| 4. _____ Ohio         | d. mountain range in the Appalachians  |
| 5. _____ Niagara      | e. river that cuts through the mountains in New York                             |
| 6. _____ New England  | f. canal that connected Lake Erie and the Mohawk River                           |
| 7. _____ Hudson       | g. river between New York and Canada   |
| 8. _____ St. Lawrence | h. settled at Plymouth, Massachusetts in 1620                                    |

### II. Put the correct word or words in the blank to complete each sentence.

- The United States is the most p \_\_\_\_\_ nation on earth.
- The forty-eight states of the U.S. in the center of North America are called the c \_\_\_\_\_ states.
- America is called a m \_\_\_\_\_ because many cultures were melted together to form one nation.
- The Coastal Plain gets w \_\_\_\_\_ south of New England.
- The soil in New England is thin and r \_\_\_\_\_.
- The A \_\_\_\_\_ Mountains cover much of New England.
- America's first f \_\_\_\_\_ began in New England in the 1700's and 1800's.
- L \_\_\_\_\_ Island is the largest island in the contiguous states.
- The M \_\_\_\_\_ Line divides the North from the South in American history.
- Most of the Southern States were a part of the C \_\_\_\_\_ States of America during the Civil War.
- The state of W \_\_\_\_\_ separated from Virginia at the start of the Civil War.
- The full name of the capital of the United States (no abbreviations) is W \_\_\_\_\_.



13. The land for the capital was taken from the states of M \_\_\_\_\_ and V \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The biggest land feature of the Southern States is the C \_\_\_\_\_ Plains.
15. From New Jersey and Alabama, the P \_\_\_\_\_ Plateau lies between the Appalachians and the plains.

### III. Write true(T) or false(F) on the blank.

1. \_\_\_ The Superior Uplands are a plateau between Lake Superior and Lake Michigan.
2. \_\_\_ The St. Lawrence Seaway allows ships to travel from the Great Lakes down the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico,
3. \_\_\_ Chicago, Illinois is a port city for ocean ships.
4. \_\_\_ The Central Lowlands have excellent farmland.
5. \_\_\_ The source of the Missouri River is in the Cordillera
6. \_\_\_ The source of the Mississippi River is in the Appalachian Mountains.
7. \_\_\_ The Mississippi River flows into the Caribbean Sea from the state of Mississippi.
8. \_\_\_ All five of the Great Lakes are half in Canada and half in the United States.

## 参考译文

美利坚合众国位于北美洲的中部，是世界上  
最富饶、最强大的国家之一。位于美洲大陆上的  
48个州称为美国本土，另外还有两个州不在本土  
大陆地域上，它们分别是阿拉斯加州（地处加拿  
大西北部）和夏威夷州（地处太平洋中央）。

大部分美国人都是从欧洲移民来的，他们到  
美国是为了追求自由和更好的生活。他们是勇敢  
的冒险家，愿意把赌注投在未知的事物上面。他  
们使美国变为一个“熔炉”，致使欧洲各国不同  
的文化在这里融合，创造出了一种新的文化。这  
些勇于开拓的美国人艰苦奋斗，把大片的荒原变  
成了农场、城市和繁荣的工商业区。

当今的美国是个英语国家。大多数美国人的

祖先来自许多不同的国家。美国文化注重艰苦奋  
斗和独立自主的精神。他们过去常常崇拜上帝，  
但是他们现在崇尚的是权力和自豪，已经忘了为  
他们创造土地的上帝了。

你将在以后学到美国的历史和人们。在这一  
课你将学习美国各州及它们的首府，还会稍微了  
解一下美国的地理状况。我们把美国各州划分为  
六个区域：东北部、南部、中部、草原区、山区  
和太平洋各州。

### 东北诸州

东北地区是英国人在美洲大陆建立的第二块  
殖民地。1620年，英国移民来到马萨诸塞州的普

利茅斯。这些移民都是基督教徒，为躲避英国教会的迫害而离开祖国，我们称他们为清教徒。

理所当然地，这些殖民者用祖国的名字为这片新大陆命名，把它叫做“新英格兰”。至今，缅因州、佛蒙特州、新罕布什尔州、马萨诸塞州、康涅狄格州和罗得岛州仍然被称为“新英格兰地区”。移民到来之后，小型农场和城镇在这一地区纷纷涌现。深植于心中的宗教信念使他们成为坚定、勤劳的人。

新英格兰地区多山，这些山都是阿巴拉契亚山脉的组成部分。其中绿山、白山和蓝山是比较著名的山脉。最好的土地则位于沿海狭窄的平原地带。山脉地区的土壤通常比较贫瘠，地表多岩石，原本不太适合耕种。幸而雨水充足，加上农民辛勤耕作，作物产量也还够人们解决温饱问题。

东北各州风光秀丽。此处森林繁茂，夏季，触目之处青山葱茏；冬季，白雪皑皑，一片银装素裹；到了秋天，五彩缤纷的树叶在山间随风起舞。观赏这里的群山、森林和溪流，对热爱自然的人们来说是一大享受。

人们还把从山间奔涌而下的湍急溪流利用起来，运用水力驱动机器纺纱、织布和生产其他货物。美国最早的工厂于18-19世纪期间在东北地区诞生。长期以来东北一直是美国生产制造业的中心。然而，其中心地位逐渐被其他地区取代。如今，东北的很多产业都太陈旧，已经不再进行生产了。

东北地区连同南部的弗吉尼亚，是1776年美国成立之时全国的中心地带。弗吉尼亚是英国在北美建立的第一个且是最大的殖民地，纽约市、费城和宾夕法尼亚则是该州最大的三个城市。美

国独立战争的许多场战役都是在这几个州进行的。

卡兹奇山脉和阿铁罗德克山脉是阿巴拉契亚山脉位于纽约州境内的部分。这些山脉几乎贯穿东北各州，但越靠近南方，狭窄的沿海平原就越来越宽阔，农田越来越多。哈德逊河、莫霍克河从纽约州的山间流过，冲出了一片肥沃的谷地，这片谷地也是几个高原之间的通道。1825年，伊利运河开通，把莫霍克河与伊利湖连接起来。这意味着，通过运河和河流，人们可以把货物从五大湖区运到位于大西洋的纽约城。

随着美国和世界其他地区贸易的发展，以及19世纪在东北地区大力发展工业，东北部的港口城市如波士顿、费城、巴尔的摩和纽约的规模逐渐变大，如今都已成为绵延数百里的沿海大都市。

东北各州有很多重要的特点。尼亚加拉大瀑布位于纽约州连接伊利湖和安大略湖的一条河上。圣劳伦斯河构成了美加边界线的一部分。离纽约海岸不远，是本土州最大的岛屿——长岛，大西洋沿岸散布着许多沙滩和堰洲岛。阿勒格尼河与莫农加希拉河在阿巴拉契亚山脉西侧的宾夕法尼亚州的匹兹堡交汇，形成了俄亥俄河。俄亥俄河向西流入密西西比河。

## 南部诸州

一过宾夕法尼亚州南部的梅森—迪克森线就算是进入南部各州的范围了。梅森—迪克森线是马里兰州与宾夕法尼亚州之间的分界线，以于18世纪60年代测定这条线的两个人的名字来命名。很多年之后人们开始把这条线看做美国历史上的南北分界线。它不仅仅是马里兰州的边界，也是

19世纪时允许蓄奴的南方各州与不允许蓄奴的北方各州的分界线。因此，作为西弗吉尼亚州和肯塔基州北边界的俄亥俄河也是梅森—迪克森线的一部分。

1860年南北战争开始之初，南方邦联的大部分成员都来自今天的南部诸州。南方各州想要继续蓄奴为他们种植农作物，北方各州则要解放黑奴。于是，南方各州企图联合与北方各州决裂，建立新的国家。双方经过五年的血战，南方各州的叛变最终失败，被迫留在美利坚联邦合众国内，并释放奴隶。

战争打响之前，西弗吉尼亚本是弗吉尼亚州的一部分。战争开始之后，因为美国首都华盛顿就在邻近的马里兰州，军队来到西弗吉尼亚，不让它加入南部邦联。于是，当地人从弗吉尼亚州脱离出来，建立了自己的州政府。

美国首都位于马里兰州和弗吉尼亚州交界的地方，于1790年建成。这块方圆10平方英里的土地被命名为哥伦比亚特区（以纪念哥伦布）。为了纪念美国的第一位总统，在这块土地上所建的都城被命名为华盛顿。渐渐地，这座城市越来越大，不断向外扩张，最终占据了整个特区。今天，首都被称为哥伦比亚特区华盛顿城，或者简称为华盛顿。

南部各州最显著的地貌特征是大西洋和墨西哥湾沿岸的平原地带。肥沃的农田以及可以用来运输农产品的河流吸引了人们来此定居。阿巴拉契亚山脉主要经过西弗吉尼亚、肯塔基和田纳西州。然而，南方还有另一个重要的地貌——皮德蒙特高原。

皮德蒙特高原地处阿巴拉契亚山脉和沿海平原之间，地势起伏比较和缓，是阿巴拉契亚高

地的一部分。皮德蒙特高原从新泽西州一直延伸到阿拉巴马州。虽然高原上的土壤没有平原上的好，却胜过山上的。高原上种了许多农作物。高原与平原交界处的悬崖有的十分陡峭，河流到了这里就形成瀑布。为了利用瀑布的能量，人们在这些地带建立了很多城市。

本单元你还须认识另一个高原地区——奥沙克山地。它位于阿肯色州、密苏里州和俄克拉何马州的交界处。这三个州分处美国的三个不同地区，因此，我们把奥沙克山地放到这里来讲。它是阿巴拉契亚和美国境内的科迪勒拉山系之间的两个重要高地之一。

发源于宾夕法尼亚州的匹兹堡的俄亥俄河是南部各州的北边界。它在伊利诺斯州、肯塔基州和密苏里州的交界处汇入密西西比河。从这里开始，密西西比河向西流入墨西哥湾。密西西比河是北美最大的河流，它接纳了来自阿巴拉契亚河科迪勒拉山脉的众多支流，其流域覆盖了美国本土的整个中心地带。

## 中部诸州

中部各州位于北美的中央低地。此处只有一小片地区地势较高，被称为“苏必利尔高地”。这是阿巴拉契亚山脉和科迪勒拉山系之间的第二个重要地区（另外一个奥沙克山地）。苏必利尔高地位于苏必利尔湖（五大湖中最大的湖，也是世界上最大的一个）西侧，丘陵起伏，湖泊密布。

在这个地区，美国和加拿大的边界线有很大一部分是由五大湖所组成。五大湖中只有密西根湖完全属于美国，其他四大湖都由美国与加拿大共有。

五大湖皆是圣劳伦斯海路的一部分。这条海路借助运河、河流及五大湖，使海上的轮船能够到达远离海洋的城市。这为美国和加拿大创造了另一条海岸线。地处密西根湖区伊利诺斯州的芝加哥城距大西洋有700英里之遥，却仍是大西洋航船的一个港口。

中央低地有着肥沃的农田。北部各州多数气温较低，这直接影响了农作物的种植；而位于中部的依阿华州、密苏里州、伊利诺斯州、印第安那州和俄亥俄州土地肥沃，水源充足，作物产量丰富。

密西西比河由此区域中心流过。密西西比河

的源头来自苏必利尔高地。从明尼苏达州的源头流出之后，密西西比河一路向西，汇入位于路易斯安那州的墨西哥湾。沿途很多个州都把它作为与邻州的边界。例如，它就是依阿华州、密苏里州和阿肯色州的东侧边界。

密西西比河的另一条重要支流——密苏里河，与其在密苏里州的圣路易斯附近汇合。密苏里河发源于科迪勒拉山系的落基山脉。正因为有了这些河流及五大湖的存在，拓荒者们才能在道路修通之前深入这片土地。这片土地的开垦时间仅次于东海岸。

## “美”事一桩

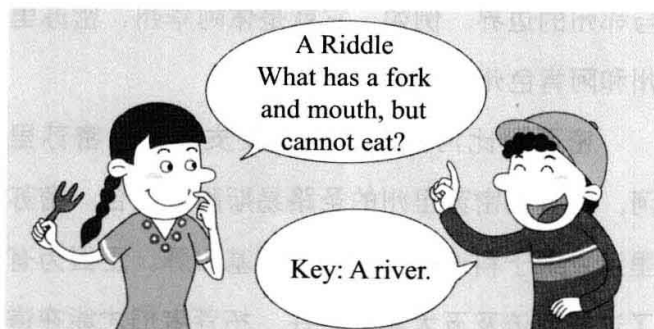
## 美国领土的由来

1776年7月4日，北美13个殖民地宣布脱离英国独立。此时，美国领土只有大西洋沿岸13个州的面积，约80万平方公里。1783年，英国承认美国独立，并先后把13个州以外大西洋沿岸的大部分土地划归美国，美国领土达到230万平方公里，约占现在美国本土面积的30%。1789年，美国联邦政府成立。刚刚成立的美国很快就走上了领土扩张的道路，除了战争，金钱成了获得领土最常用的方式。

1803年4月30日，美国以1500万美元从法国手中购买了面积为260万平方公里左右的路易斯安娜州，每平方公里不到5美元。1819年2月22日，美国通过武力逼迫西班牙签订条约，仅花了500万美元就获得15万多平方公里的佛罗里达。路易斯安那和佛罗里达的扩张使美国尝到了甜头，1845年，美国又相继通过策反与威胁的方式从墨西哥和英国手中得到了得克萨斯和俄勒冈地区，美国领土从大西洋沿岸扩展到太平洋沿岸。1846年—1848年，美国通过世界近代历史上臭名昭著的美墨战争掠夺了墨西哥一半以上的领土，可怜的墨西哥损失了150多万领土。1867年10月8日，美国以720万美元从俄罗斯购买了阿拉斯加150多万平方公里领土，平均每亩几美分。1898年，夏威夷被美国吞并，1959年成为美国第50个州。



## A Humor 休闲时刻



### 谜语

什么东西有叉子，也有嘴，但是不能吃东西？

答案：河流。

注释：“fork”既可指餐具“叉子”，也可以指河流或道路分岔的地方；河流的“mouth”就是它的入海口。

### Answer

I. 1. h 2. d 3. f 4. b 5. a 6. c 7. e 8. g

II. 1. powerful 2. contiguous 3. melting pot 4. wider  
5. rocky 6. Appalachian 7. factories 8. Long 9.  
Mason-Dixon 10. Confederate  
11. West Virginia 12. Washington, District of  
Columbia 13. Maryland, Virginia 14. Coastal 15.  
Piedmont

III. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T 6. F 7. F 8. F

# The United States (Part Two)

3

## 美国地理概况（下）



在上一单元中，我们已经了解了美国的一些地区。在本课，我们将继续深入了解美国的一些其他区域，还原一个完整、真实的“美利坚”。

### PRAIRIE STATES

The Prairie States are on the Great Plains of North America. The land is very flat and slowly slopes upward toward the Cordillera Mountains like a tilted<sup>1</sup> table top. The word *prairie* comes from a French word for *meadow*<sup>2</sup>. Before the coming of the Europeans the Great Plains were a vast meadow, a sea of grass stretching<sup>3</sup> out to the horizon in every direction. The land has few trees and was once the home of great herds of wild buffaloes<sup>4</sup>.

The wide open spaces of the Great Plains can make for<sup>1</sup> very difficult weather. Wind and storms come in swiftly, with nothing to block<sup>5</sup> their path. Sudden changes in weather and temperature are normal. Tornadoes or cyclones<sup>6</sup> are very common, especially in Texas, Oklahoma, and Kansas. These are twisting<sup>7</sup>

clouds that come down out of thunderstorms.

When they touch the ground they suck<sup>8</sup> in the things in their path, causing great damage.

The long arms of the Mississippi reach even into this dry place for tributaries. The Missouri River and its tributary, the Platte River, flow through the Dakotas and Nebraska. The Red River that is part of the border between Texas and Oklahoma is also a Mississippi tributary. But the Rio Grande River, which separates Texas from Mexico does not flow into the Mississippi. Instead, it finds its own, independent way to the Gulf of Mexico.

The land of the Great Plains was some of the last settled in the United States. Many of the early explorers thought that people could not live there because it was so dry. In fact,

the land does get drier and more desert-like as you get closer to the Cordillera and their rain shadow. People headed for new settlements in Oregon and California, beyond the mountains, passed quickly through this supposedly barren<sup>9</sup> desert.

However, much of the prairie land is perfect for growing wheat and grain and raising cattle. It was the cattle ranchers<sup>10</sup> who first tried to settle the land, fattening huge herds of cattle for market. Eventually, however, it was the Homestead Acts that brought in settlers.

After the Civil War (1860—1865), Congress<sup>11</sup> passed laws that gave land to any citizen who lived on it or farmed it for five years. Called the Homestead Acts, these laws brought settlers to the empty prairies. The promise of free land brought people willing to try farming in the harsh<sup>12</sup> climate. Many failed and returned east. Those who succeeded turned the American prairie into the greatest grain-growing area of the world.

## MOUNTAIN STATES

The Mountain States are right on top of the Cordillera. The Rocky Mountains run all along the east side of this section, like a wall beside the floor of the Great Plains.

The first high ridge<sup>13</sup> of the Rocky Mountains coming up from the Great Plains is the continental divide. The arms of the Mississippi go no further west. In Colorado,

the source of the South Platte River is on the east side of the divide. The Platte will join the Missouri and the Mississippi to flow into the Atlantic at the Gulf of Mexico. On the western side of that same mountain ridge in Colorado is the source of the Colorado River. The Colorado will flow to the Gulf of California in the Pacific.

Because the mountains of the Pacific coast block the moisture<sup>14</sup> from the ocean, this section of America is very dry. Much of it is real desert. The Great Basin Desert, for example, is in Nevada and Utah. It is like a bowl lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada Mountains of California. The little rain that does fall there does not reach either ocean. Some of it drains into the Great Salt Lake. There it evaporates<sup>15</sup>, leaving salty water behind. The Great Salt Lake is the largest lake west of the Great Lakes and one of the saltiest lakes in the world.

What this region lacks in green plants, it makes up for in spectacular<sup>16</sup> scenery. The huge mountains, deep canyons<sup>17</sup>, and brilliant-colored rocks attract tourists from all over the world. The excellent skiing also attracts many winter visitors.

The most famous feature of the Mountain States is the Grand Canyon in Arizona. The Grand Canyon is a 277 mile (446 km)-long canyon that is more than 5000 feet (1500 m) deep and 18 miles (29 km) wide in places. The

Colorado River flows through the bottom of it. The many colored layers of rock, tall buttes<sup>18</sup>, and beautiful mesas<sup>19</sup> attract millions of visitors every year.

The Mountain States have very little land that is good for growing crops. Some of the grassland can be used for raising cattle, and crops can be irrigated<sup>20</sup> or grown in river valleys. But for years the biggest attractions for this section were the minerals in the mountains and the beautiful scenery. Today, however, these states are growing rapidly as people move in to find jobs in the many businesses there.

## PACIFIC STATES

The Pacific States are all mountainous states on the Pacific Ocean. The Cordillera covers California, Oregon, Washington, and Alaska. The Sierra Nevada in California, the Cascades in Washington, and the Brooks Range in Alaska are just some of the mountains of this section. The tallest mountain in the U.S., Mt. McKinley, is in the Alaska Range of the Cordillera. Some of the mountains, called the Coastal Ranges, reach right to the edge of the ocean. The Pacific coast does not have a wide coastal plain like the Atlantic side of the country.

Hawaii, however, is not in the Cordillera. It is an archipelago of volcanic islands in the middle of the Pacific Ocean. There are tall

volcanic mountains on the big islands. Some of the smaller islands are atolls<sup>21</sup> left when the volcanoes sank back into the sea.

The Pacific States are places where the earth is not predictable<sup>22</sup>. Alaska, Washington, Oregon, and California are all on top of faults<sup>23</sup> in the earth, where earthquakes often occur. One such earthquake near San Francisco, California occurred in 1989, killing over 60 people and interrupted the World Series. Another in Alaska in 1964 killed over 130 people.

Volcanoes are another danger in the Pacific States. They can erupt<sup>24</sup> along the faults. Mount Saint Helens in the Cascade Range of Washington erupted in 1980, killing 57 people. Several of the volcanic mountains that formed the Hawaiian Islands are still active. The lava<sup>25</sup> from the volcanoes continues to make the island of Hawaii, the biggest island of the archipelago, bigger by adding land along the edge of the sea. Eruptions and earthquakes sometimes occur together there. Many visitors like to see the lava flowing at Hawaii Volcanoes National Park on the island of Hawaii.

The five Pacific States have many different climates. Parts of Alaska are north of the Arctic Circle, and Arctic tundra<sup>26</sup> covers much of the north end of the state. Hawaii, on the other hand, is a tropical archipelago. Several of the islands have rain forests on



the sides of their mountains. California, Washington, and Oregon have wet, mild climates near the ocean (remember oceans tend to keep nearby land warmer in winter and cooler in the summer).

In California, Oregon, and Washington the land gets drier and drier as it moves inland across the rain-blocking mountains. There are several deserts on the east side of the states, including the Mohave Desert and Death Valley in California. Death Valley is the lowest spot of land in the entire Western Hemisphere! It is

282 feet (86 m) below sea level.

Almost all of eastern Oregon is desert, but not eastern Washington. The Columbia River and its tributary, the Snake River, wind<sup>27</sup> through that part of the state, watering the dry, prairie-like land. The Columbia and the Snake form part of the border for the states of Oregon and Washington. The Colorado forms the border of Arizona and California, on one of the last parts of its journey toward the Gulf of California.

注：本课选自四年级《历史和地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **tilt** [tɪlt] *v.* 倾斜
2. **meadow** ['medəʊ] *n.* 草地, 草甸, 草坪
3. **stretch** [stretʃ] *v.* 伸展, 展开, 铺开
4. **buffalo** ['bʌfələʊ] *n.* 水牛, (美) 野牛
5. **block** [blɒk] *v.* 阻塞, 封锁
6. **cyclone** ['saɪkləʊn] *n.* 旋风, 龙卷风
7. **twist** [twɪst] *v.* 扭, 搅, 卷, 缠绕
8. **suck** [sʌk] *v.* 吸, 吸入, 吮
9. **barren** ['bærən] *adj.* 荒芜的, 贫瘠的
10. **rancher** ['ræntʃə] *n.* [美] 牧场主; 牧场工人; 牧童
11. **congress** ['kɒŋɡres] *n.* 国会, 大会
12. **harsh** [hɑːʃ] *adj.* 粗糙的, 严厉的, 艰苦的
13. **ridge** [rɪdʒ] *n.* 山脊; 岭, 岗; 分水岭, 山脉
14. **moisture** ['mɔɪstʃə] *n.* 湿气, 水分, 潮湿; (空气中的) 水蒸气
15. **evaporate** [ɪ'væpəreɪt] *v.* 蒸发, 失去水分
16. **spectacular** [spek'tækjələ] *adj.* 引人注目的, 壮观的, 富丽堂皇的
17. **canyon** ['kænjən] *n.* 峡谷
18. **butte** [bjʊ:t] *n.* (美国西部及加拿大平原上孤立的) 小尖山
19. **mesa** ['meɪsə] *n.* (美) 方山台地, 平顶山
20. **irrigate** ['ɪrɪɡeɪt] *v.* 灌溉
21. **atoll** ['ætɒl] *n.* 环状珊瑚岛, 环礁
22. **predictable** [prɪ'dɪktəbl] *adj.* 可预知的; 可预报的
23. **fault** [fɔːlt] *n.* 错误, 缺点; [地质] 断层

24. **erupt** [ɪˈrʌpt] *v.* (火山等)喷发, 喷出; 迸发, 爆发

25. **lava** [ˈlɑ:və] *n.* 火山所喷出的熔岩, 火山岩

26. **tundra** [ˈtʌndrə] *n.* 苔原, 冻原

27. **wind** [waɪnd] *v.* 蜿蜒, 迂回, 缠绕



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. **make for sth** 向……移动, 导致, 促成

e.g. Does make-up make for looks?

化妆有助于容颜吗?

2. **turn into** 变成

e.g. Please turn this sentence into English.

请将这个句子译成英语。

Caterpillars will turn into butterflies.

毛毛虫会变成蝴蝶。

3. **leave ... behind** 留下, 遗留, 不带走

e.g. Please don't leave anything behind.

请不要遗忘您的东西。

4. **make up for** 补偿, 弥补

e.g. We will make up for the lost time.

我们会把失去的时间补回来。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**I. Write true(T) or false(F) on the blank.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The prairie is part of the Coastal Plains.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Prairie comes from a French word for meadow.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Tornadoes are a danger on the Great Plains.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The Platte River is a tributary of the Missouri.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The Rio Grande River is a tributary of the Mississippi.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Prairie land gets a large amount of rain, particularly near the mountains.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The Homestead Acts brought many settlers to the prairie.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Wheat and grain grow well on much of the Great Plains.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Most of the Pacific States are coastal plains.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The Sierra Nevada and the Cascades are part of the Cordillera Mountains in the Pacific States.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The state of Hawaii is an island near the coast of Alaska created by the Cordillera Mountains as they go out into the ocean.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Earthquakes are a danger in the Pacific States.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ There are no active volcanoes in the Pacific States.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The Pacific States all have the same climate, wet and warm.

## II. Put the correct word(s) in the blank to complete the sentence.

1. The continental divide for the United States is in the R\_\_\_\_\_ Mountains.
2. The sources of both the South Platte and Colorado Rivers are in the state of C\_\_\_\_\_.
3. The G\_\_\_\_\_ Desert is a bowl-shaped desert in Nevada and Utah.
4. The G\_\_\_\_\_ Canyon is over 200 miles long on the Colorado River in Arizona.
5. The largest lake in American west of the Great Lakes is the G\_\_\_\_\_ Lake.
6. D\_\_\_\_\_ is the lowest spot of land in North America.
7. The Columbia and Snake Rivers form part of the b\_\_\_\_\_ for the Washington and Oregon,
8. The Colorado River flows into the A\_\_\_\_\_ Ocean.

### 参考译文

#### 草原诸州

草原诸州位于北美的大平原上。这片区域地

势十分平坦，整体看起来像个倾斜的桌面，由科迪勒拉山系缓缓向下倾斜。“prairie”这个词来

自法语“meadow”，意为草地。欧洲人到来之前，整个大平原是一片一望无际的草地，像茫茫的海洋，一直延伸到天尽头。这里树木稀少，曾是大群野牛的家園。

大平原地形开阔，无遮无挡，极易产生灾害性天气，如大风和暴雨。天气和气温的骤变在这儿是家常便饭。龙卷风和旋风是常客，在得克萨斯州、俄克拉何马州和堪萨斯州尤为常见。龙卷风和旋风的形成都与雷雨天气所带来的积雨云有关。一旦到达地面，龙卷风和旋风就会吸起它们接触到的一切东西，造成极大的破坏。

这片土地相对干燥，但仍然有密西西比河的支流。密苏里河及其支流普拉特河，流经达科他州和内布拉斯加州。作为得克萨斯与俄克拉何马州边界一部分的红河也是密西西比河的支流。然而，把得克萨斯与墨西哥分隔开来的格兰德河，并不流入密西西比河，而是自行其道地汇入墨西哥湾。

大平原是美国最后一批开垦的土地之一。早期的很多探险家认为这里太干燥，人不可能生存下来。事实上，现在越靠近科迪勒拉山系及其雨影区（山脉的背风面降雨量较少的地区），土地就越干燥，沙漠化也越严重。于是，人们越过这些贫瘠的沙漠地区，向山另一边的俄勒冈州和加利福尼亚州进发。

然而，草原上的很多土地都非常适合种植小麦和谷物，也适合养牛。当年正是养牛场的场主们率先来开发这片土地，他们在这里养牛供给市场。但最终引来大批拓荒者的则是后来颁布的《宅地法》。

内战（1860—1865年）结束之后，国会颁布法令，规定凡在某块土地上居住或耕种满五年，

即可获得该土地。这就是《宅地法》。该法令吸引了大批拓荒者来到这些空旷的草原上，政府关于免费土地的承诺使他们愿意在艰苦的气候条件下尝试垦荒耕种。很多人失败了，不得不返回东部去；那些成功了则把这片大草原变成了世界上最大的谷物种植地。

## 山地诸州

山地诸州位于科迪勒拉山系之上。这个区域东侧的落基山脉像一堵墙，竖立在大平原旁边。从大平原下来，落基山脉的第一座山脊被称为大陆分水岭。到了这里，密西西比河就不再继续向西流了。在科罗拉多州，南普拉特河的源头就在分水岭的东侧，普拉特河将与密苏里河、密西西比河汇合于墨西哥湾流入大西洋。在科罗拉多州同一座山脉的西侧，是科罗拉多河的源头，科罗拉多河将流入太平洋的加利福尼亚海峡。

由于太平洋沿岸的山峰挡住了来自海洋的湿气，美国的这个区域十分干燥，大部分为沙漠。例如，大盆地沙漠就位于内华达和犹他州之中。它就像一只巨大的碗，躺在落基山脉和加州的内华达山脉之间。该地区的少量降水最终并不进入海洋。其中一部分流入大盐湖，蒸发之后留下咸水。大盐湖是五大湖区西侧最大的湖泊，也是世界上盐度最高的湖泊之一。

这一地区缺少绿色植被，却不乏壮观的景色。雄伟壮丽的高山、深不可测的峡谷和色彩斑斓的岩石吸引着世界各地的游客前来游览。到了冬季，这里一流的滑雪场也是个休闲度假的好去处。

该区域最显著的地貌特征是亚利桑那州的大峡谷。大峡谷长227英里（446公里），宽18英里



(29公里)，深度超过5000英尺(1500米)。科罗拉多河由峡谷底部流过。五颜六色的岩石层，高耸的尖山和美丽的方山每年都迎接着数百万的游客。

山区诸州适合耕种的土地很少，部分草地可用来养牛，农作物可以引河谷里的水来灌溉或者种在河谷旁边。不过，长期以来该地区最引人注目的还是山里埋藏的矿产和美丽的风光。然而到了今天，随着此地工商业的发展，人们纷纷来到这里寻找工作，山区诸州正在逐渐地成长壮大起来。

## 太平洋诸州

太平洋诸州多山，位于太平洋地区。科迪勒拉山脉贯穿了加利福尼亚州、俄勒冈州、华盛顿州和阿拉斯加，例如加州的内华达山，华盛顿的喀斯喀特山，阿拉斯加的布鲁克斯山。美国最高的山——麦肯尼峰，就在科迪勒拉山脉的阿拉斯加段上。还有几座山，人们称之为“海岸山脉”，一直延伸到海洋的边缘。太平洋沿岸和大西洋不同，没有宽阔的沿海平原。

但是，夏威夷并不属于科迪勒拉山系。它是太平洋之中的火山群岛。大的岛上有高高的火山，一些小岛是火山爆发后沉回海底时形成的环礁。

太平洋诸州所在地区的地壳情况不可预测。阿拉斯加、华盛顿、俄勒冈和加州都处于地壳的断层之上，地震频繁发生。1989年在加州的旧金山发生的地震夺去了60个人的生命，还影响到了当时在那儿举行的世界职业棒球大赛。在另外一

个发生在阿拉斯加的地震中，130多个人丧生。

该地区的另一个危险是火山。它们可能沿着地壳断层爆发。1980年，华盛顿州喀斯喀特山脉的圣海伦斯火山爆发，57个人丧生。夏威夷群岛的部分火山仍然活跃，不断喷发出来的熔岩在海岸边缘堆积下来，使夏威夷最大的岛——夏威夷大岛变得越来越大。有时候，火山喷发和地震同时发生。很多游客都喜欢到夏威夷国家火山公园观看喷出来的岩浆在地上流动的景象。

该地区的五个州气候差异很大。阿拉斯加的一部分位于北极圈内，其北部大部分地区都覆盖着北极苔原。相反，夏威夷是热带群岛，其中几个岛屿的山脉两侧有热带雨林。加州、华盛顿和俄勒冈则是湿润、温和的海洋气候（请记住，海洋能够使附近的地区在冬天相对温暖，夏天相对凉爽一些）。

在加州、俄勒冈和华盛顿，由于山峰挡住了雨水，越靠近内陆的地方就越干燥。这几个州的东部有一些沙漠，例如加州的莫哈韦沙漠和死亡峡谷。死亡峡谷是整个西半球的最低点——低于海平面282英尺(86米)。

俄勒冈州的东部几乎全是沙漠，但华盛顿州东部情况就不一样了。哥伦比亚河及其支流斯内克河流经华盛顿州，滋润了那里干燥的类似草原的土地。这两条河是俄勒冈与华盛顿州边界的一部分。科罗拉多河流到快接近加利福尼亚海湾的部分构成了亚利桑那和加州的边界。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国国旗

我们都知道美国的国旗是星条旗，旗面由13道红白相间的宽条构成，代表美国建国之初的13块殖民地；左上角为蓝色星区，美国的州数就是国旗上的星数。红色象征勇气，白色象征真理，蓝色则象征正义。1818年美国国会通过法案，国旗上的红白宽条固定为13道，五角星数目应与合众国州数一致。每增加一个州，国旗上就增加一颗星，一般在新州加入后的第二年7月4日执行。至今国旗上共有50颗星，代表美国的50个州。每年6月14日为“美国国旗制定纪念日”。在这一天，美国各地举行纪念活动，以示对国旗的敬重和对合众国的热爱。

国旗象征着一个国家的尊严。同各国人民一样，美国人在任何时候和任何场合都要保持对国旗的崇敬。美国许多州专门制定有关法律，规定了对国旗的礼节。美国升国旗的惯例是，着便装的戴帽者，用右手将帽子摘下，举在左胸前；未戴帽者，以立正姿势对国旗行注目礼；穿军装者，则行军礼。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

Where there is smoke, there is fire.

无风不起浪。

The first step is always the hardest.

万事开头难。

Don't bite the hand that feeds you.

不要忘恩负义。

Look before you leap.

三思而后行。

### Answer

I. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. F 7. T 8. T 9. F 10. T

11. F 12. T 13. F 14. F

II. 1. Rocky 2. Colorado 3. Great Basin 4. Grand 5. Great Salt 6. Death Valley 7. borders 8. Atlantic

# 4

# Enemies of the Forest

## 森林的敌人



森林是绿色金子，一片森林就是一座绿色的宝库。森林是自然的保护伞，森林制造氧气，使空气清新，被称为“地球之肺”。因此保护森林也就是保护我们人类自己。只有对森林的“敌人”有了全面的了解，我们才能制订出正确的护林方案。

Trees are large and strong, but they have enemies, too. One enemy is the insect<sup>1</sup>. Insects eat into<sub>1</sub> the trunks<sup>2</sup> and roots of trees. Leaf-eating worms<sup>3</sup> and insects can cause much harm to<sub>2</sub> forests. A tree will die if the leaves are eaten. Birds help to protect the forests by eating many insects and worms.

Another enemy is the wolf tree. If trees grow too close together, they cannot get enough sunlight. They cannot find enough water. Sometimes a tree grows too wide. This kind of tree is called a wolf tree. The other trees do not have enough space. A wolf tree could be called a selfish tree, because it wants all the water and sun for itself. Lumbermen<sup>4</sup> try to find these trees and cut them down before

they spoil<sup>5</sup> the neighboring trees.

One of the greatest enemies of the forest is fire. Each year many trees are lost to<sub>3</sub> fire. Lightning<sup>6</sup> causes many fires. Other fires are started by careless people in the forests. Everyone must be very careful of<sub>4</sub> campfires<sup>7</sup> when camping in a forest.

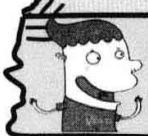


注：本课选自美国三年级《历史和地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. insect ['ɪnsekt] <i>n.</i> 昆虫             | 5. spoil [spɔɪl] <i>v.</i> 损坏, 损伤        |
| 2. trunk [trʌŋk] <i>n.</i> 树干                | 6. lightning ['laɪtnɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 闪电, 雷电 |
| 3. worm [wɜ:m] <i>n.</i> 虫, 蠕虫               | 7. campfire ['kæmpfaɪə] <i>n.</i> 营火, 篝火 |
| 4. lumberman ['lʌmbəmən] <i>n.</i> 伐木工人; 木材商 |  |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. eat into sth 侵蚀; 逐渐耗尽

eg. Our holiday has eaten into the money we saved.

我们度假耗费了一些积蓄。

### 2. cause/do harm to sth/sb 对……造成伤害

eg. He would never cause harm to anybody.

他永远不会伤害任何人。

The accident could have been much worse; luckily no great harm was done.

这次事故本来可能糟糕得多; 所幸没造成大的伤害。

### 3. lose... to... 失去……

eg. The company has lost a lot of business to its competitors.

公司的许多业务都拱手让给了竞争对手。

### 4. be careful of... 小心, 留意……

eg. We should be careful of thieves when we are in public places.

当我们在公众场合时, 应该警惕小偷。





## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. According to the text, which of the following is not trees' enemy?

- A. Worm.    B. Insect.    C. Fire.    D. Lumberman.

2. Which of the following is one of the greatest enemies of the forest?

- A. Bird.    B. Wolf tree.    C. Fire.    D. Worm.

3. Which of the following is not true about the wolf tree?

- A. It grows too wide and other trees do not have enough space.  
B. It wants all the water and sun for itself.  
C. It could be called a selfish tree.  
D. It is not an enemy of the other trees.

### II. Fill in the blanks with words from the text. The first letters of the words have been given.

1. The early birds catch the w\_\_\_\_\_.  
2. Our picnic was s\_\_\_\_\_ by the bad weather.  
3. He was struck by l\_\_\_\_\_ and killed.

### 参考译文

树木虽然看似高大、粗壮，其实它们也有潜在的威胁。其中一个就是昆虫。昆虫会逐渐侵蚀树干和树根。吃树叶的蠕虫和昆虫会给森林带来很大的灾难。如果一棵树的叶子被吃掉了，它就会死掉。鸟儿会吃掉很多蠕虫和昆虫，从而起到保护森林的作用。

另一个敌人就是“短干木”，如果树木长得过于密集，它们就无法得到充足的阳光和雨水。如果一棵树长得很宽阔，这种树就叫做“短干

木”。“短干木”也叫做“自私的树”，因为它们只想着自己得到雨水和阳光。伐木工人会找到这些树，在它们危害到邻近的树木之前将它们砍掉。

森林最大的敌人就是火灾。每年有很多树木因为火灾而消失。闪电会导致火灾，还有一些火灾是由于人在森林里疏忽大意造成的。每个人在森林里露营的时候都应该特别注意营火。

## “美”事一桩

### 首都华盛顿

美国首都华盛顿，全称为“华盛顿哥伦比亚特区”（Washington D.C.），是为纪念美国开国元勋乔治·华盛顿和发现美洲新大陆的哥伦布而命名的。华盛顿在行政上由联邦政府直辖，不属于任何一个州。

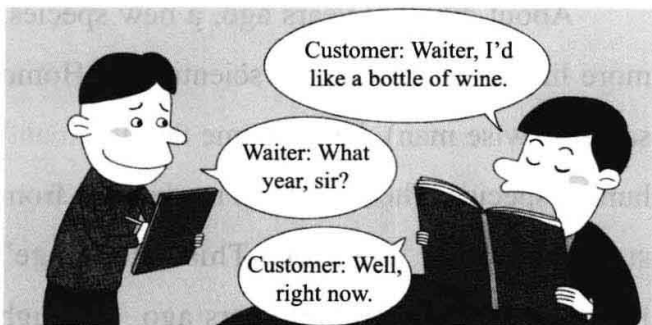
华盛顿位于马里兰州和弗吉尼亚州之间的波托马克河与阿纳卡斯蒂亚河汇合处的东北岸。市区面积174平方公里，特区总面积6094平方公里。

华盛顿是美国的政治中心，白宫、国会、最高法院以及绝大多数政府机构均设在这里。国会大厦建在被人称为“国会山”的全城最高点上，它是华盛顿的象征。这座乳白色的建筑有一个圆顶主楼和相互连接的东、西两翼大楼，美国国会参众两院都在国会大楼里办公。白宫是一座白色大理石圆形建筑，是华盛顿之后美国历届总统办公和居住的地方。华盛顿面积最大的建筑是波托马克河彼岸的五角大楼。它是美国国防部所在地，是一座由五座长方形建筑衔接起来的五边形建筑物。

华盛顿还是美国的文化中心之一。全市有乔治敦、乔治·华盛顿等九所高等院校。创建于1800年的国会图书馆是驰名世界的文化设施，华盛顿歌剧院、国家交响乐团、肯尼迪艺术中心等都是美国著名的文化机构。华盛顿还有美国国家艺术博物馆、自然历史博物馆、宇航博物馆等许多著名博物馆。

华盛顿市徽的外形看上去像是一只正在展翅的鹰，图案近景是华盛顿纪念碑，远景为国会山和波托马克河。华盛顿的市树为美洲橡树，市花为鹃菊，市鸟为红尾雀，市歌为《年轻的故乡华盛顿》。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



顾客：服务生，我要一瓶葡萄酒。

侍者：哪一年的，先生？

顾客：我现在就要。

注释：这里“what year”有歧义。侍者问的是“哪一年的酒”，顾客理解成问他哪一年要喝。

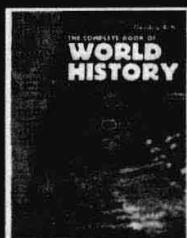
### Answer

I. 1. D 2. C 3. D

II. 1. worms 2. spoilt 3. lightning

# The First Humans

## 最早的人类



人类的起源已经有300万年的历史，但是在36亿年前，第一个有生命的细胞就已经产生了。最早的人类到底是如何生活的，他们又是如何进化的呢？

The beginning of human history can be traced back long before the first human beings appeared—to the earliest forms of life on Earth about 3 billion years ago. Of the enormous<sup>1</sup> variety of animals that evolved<sup>2</sup> over millions of years, among the most advanced<sup>3</sup> were tree-living mammals<sup>4</sup> called primates<sup>5</sup>. These included the first apes<sup>6</sup>.

About 10 million years ago, some apes left the trees to walk on the open plains. They had large brains and used their fingers to pick up food. About 4 million years ago, the humanlike ape Australopithecus(southern ape) lived in Africa. It probably used sticks or stones as tools, in the same way that chimpanzees<sup>7</sup> do.

### THE FIRST HUMANS

The first human species was Homo habilis (handy man), who lived in East Africa

2 million years ago. By 1.5 million years ago, the more advanced Homo erectus (upright man) had appeared, and by 500,000 years ago, Homo erectus had learned to make fire. The first humans lived in family groups. They communicated in some form of language and worked together gathering plants and hunting animals for food.

### MODERN HUMANS

About 400,000 years ago, a new species, more like us and known to scientists as Homo sapiens (wise man), had become the dominant<sup>8</sup> human species. These humans made tools from stone and other materials. This “stone age” lasted until about 10,000 years ago, although isolated<sup>9</sup> groups of people continued using stone tools until the present day.

In a series of migrations<sup>10</sup>, humans spread

to every continent. They crossed over land bridges, which were uncovered as seawater turned to ice during the Ice Age. People moved in groups from Africa across Europe and Asia, and into America and Australasia. Their social organization and developing technology helped them **survive**<sup>11</sup> the harsh climate of the Ice Age.

## HUNTERS BECOME FARMERS

About 10,000 years ago, people became farmers for the first time. They planted crops and kept goats, cattle, and sheep. The earliest centers of the farming revolution were in the Near East and Asia. Here, people first settled in towns and developed a new way of life—the beginning of **civilization**<sup>12</sup>.

注：本课选自四年级《世界历史》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **enormous** [ɪ'nɔ:məs] *adj.* 巨大的, 庞大的
2. **evolve** [ɪ'vɒlv] *v.* 发展, 进化, 演化
3. **advanced** [əd'vɑ:nst] *adj.* 高等的, 先进的
4. **mammal** ['mæməl] *n.* 哺乳动物
5. **primate** ['praɪmeɪt] *n.* 灵长类动物
6. **ape** [eɪp] *n.* 猿
7. **chimpanzee** ['tʃɪmpən'zi:] *n.* 黑猩猩
8. **dominant** ['dɒmɪnənt] *adj.* 支配的, 统治的;

占优势的

**dominate** ['dɒmɪneɪt] *vt.* 支配, 统治, 管辖

9. **isolate** ['aɪsəleɪt] *vt.* 隔离, 孤立; 使脱离

10. **migration** [maɪ'ɡreɪʃən] *n.* 迁徙, 移居  
*v.* migrate

11. **survive** [sə'vaɪv] *v.* 幸存, 活下来

12. **civilization** [sɪvəlɪ'zeɪʃən] *n.* 文明, 文化



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. **be traced /dated back to** 追溯到……

e.g. When can Beijing's history be traced back to?

北京的历史可以追溯到何时?



The rumor was traced back to a journalist.

经追查，谣言是一个记者散布的。

## 2. continue doing/to do sth 继续做某事

continue, begin, start, cease这几个动词后面可接动名词或不定式，书面语中多用动名词，口头语多用不定式。

e.g. I decided to continue working after I gave birth to the baby.

我决定生完孩子后继续工作。

Please continue to support me !

请继续支持我！



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. What did human beings evolve from?

A. Plants. B. Fish. C. Birds. D. Apes.

2. When did people learn to make fire?

A. 2 million years ago. B. 1.5 million years ago.

C. 1 million years ago. D. 0.5 million years ago.

3. How long did "Stone Age" last?

A. 400,000 years. B. 10,000 years. C. 390,000 years. D. 410,000 years.

4. Where did humans first live on the earth?

A. Asia. B. America. C. Africa. D. Australia.

### II. Fill in the blanks with words from the text. The first letters of the words have been given.

1. We need to introduce a \_\_\_\_\_ technology into our factories.

2. It was a miracle that he s \_\_\_\_\_ the accident.

3. Swallows m\_\_\_\_\_ in the fall.
4. Love does not d\_\_\_\_\_; it cultivates.
5. He has an e\_\_\_\_\_ ego.
6. They are getting increasingly i\_\_\_\_\_.

## 参考译文

人类历史的开端可以追溯到30亿年前最早的生命形态在地球上产生之时，那远比第一个人类出现的时间来得早。在生物进化的几百万年间，出现了各种各样的动物，最高级的当属被称为灵长类的树生哺乳动物，其中就包括早期的类人猿。

大约1000万年前，一部分类人猿从树上下来，到广阔的地面行走。它们的脑容量很大，用手指拾取食物。大约400万年前，南方古猿（南猿）在非洲生活，它们可能会像黑猩猩那样使用木棍或石头这样的工具。

### 最早的人类

最早的人类种族是能人。能人生活在200多万年前的非洲东部。距今150万年前，比能人更高级的直立人出现了。100万年之后，直立人学会了生火。原始人以家庭为单位生活，用某种语言形式交流，共同劳动，采集植物或者狩猎以获取食物。

### 现代人类

距今40万年前，一个新的人种出现了，并成为当时人类的主要种族。他们与我们更为接近，被称为智人。他们利用石头和其他材料制造工具，整个石器时代持续了很长一段时期，直到一万年前才结束。但现在一些偏远的与外界隔绝的部落还在使用石器。

通过一系列的迁徙活动，人类跨过因海水在冰河时期结成冰而露出海平面的大陆桥，散布到世界各地。他们成群结队，从非洲出发，经过欧洲和亚洲，进入美洲和澳洲。他们的社会有了一定的组织，生产技术也有了一定的发展，这使得他们能够在冰河时期的严寒气候中生存下来。

### 由狩猎转向农耕

大约在一万年前，人类开始用农耕方式进行生产。他们种植作物、饲养牛羊等牲畜。近东和亚洲是最早的农业中心，人们最先在那儿建立城镇定居下来，形成了一种新的生活方式，这就是文明的开始。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国的印第安人

美国的印第安人(the American Indians)跟印度(India)没有半点关系, 他们的祖先来自墨西哥, 之所以得到这个名字完全是因为一场误会。1492年, 欧洲探险家哥伦布发现美洲新大陆, 却误以为抵达了自己梦寐以求的印度, 于是把当地土著居民称为印度人。为了把这些“印度人”同真正的印度人区分开来, 人们称呼这些土著居民为美洲印第安人。新大陆被发现后, 西方殖民者接踵而至, 印第安人不断地遭受杀戮、驱逐、隔离和歧视。西方人宣扬的所谓“北美开发史”, 是与印第安人的血泪史平行发展的。

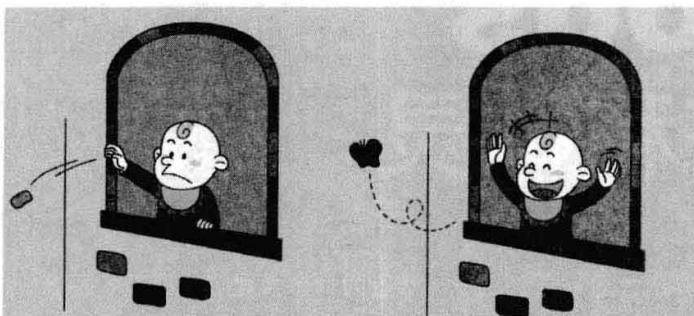
根据与联邦政府签署的条约和美国总统颁布的法令, 盐河皮马印第安人部落于1909年建立了属于自己的保留区, 由联邦政府提供教育、社会福利和医疗保健等基本服务。与此同时, 联邦政府分给当年出生的或还健在的印第安人每人30公顷私人土地作为补偿。

但是, 直到1924年, 美国政府才承认印第安人为美国公民, 他们才具有投票权。根据美国国务院的资料, 目前美国印第安人总数大约为253万, 分属560多个部落, 居住在200多块印第安保留区内。1934年, 美国联邦政府通过了《印第安人承认法》, 允许印第安人建立属于自己的现代化部落政府。居住在这些主权国家的印第安人目前有三重身份: 部落成员、所在州的居民以及美国公民。但是, 这些印第安人主权国家没有军队, 没有外交, 只有自己的宪法和法律, 还有自己的警察和政府系统。

印第安人总体收入水平远远低于全国平均水平, 年收入2.5万美元以下的占41.7%, 是美国平均贫困率的两倍; 印第安人的教育水平也是全美最低的, 大学以上文化的为7.6%, 是美国平均水平的一半; 失业率也是全美最高的, 只有不到1%的印第安人拥有自己的土地。

生活在保留地内的印第安人就业机会很少, 他们以狩猎和务农为主, 农闲时无事可干。自上世纪80年代以来, 保留地内的印第安部落同外界发生更多的联系, 逐步发展起自己的工业和商业, 有的还开辟旅游业。印第安人保留区已成为美国人和外国人参观访问的一景。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



### A Riddle

Why did the boy throw the butter out of the window?

Key: To see the butterfly.

### 谜语

那个男孩为什么把黄油扔出窗外?

答案: 为了看蝴蝶。

(butter 为黄油; butterfly 则为蝴蝶, 此为借用 fly 产生幽默效果。)

### Answer

I. 1. D 2. D 3. C 4. C

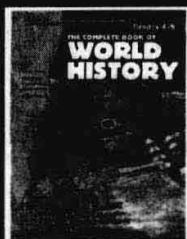
II. 1. advanced 2. survived 3. migrate 4. dominate  
5. enormous 6. isolated



# 6

# Pyramids and Gods

## 金字塔和神灵



埃及金字塔是法老的陵墓，世界八大建筑奇迹之一。法老为什么要建造金字塔？巨大的金字塔是怎样建成的？有人说金字塔是外星人造出来的，事实究竟怎样？

Religion played an important part<sub>1</sub> in Egyptian life. The Egyptians believed in many gods and goddesses. Their chief deities<sup>1</sup> were Ra the sun god, Horus the sky god, Osiris the god of the underworld, and Isis, wife of Osiris, who represented the ideal woman.

### PYRAMIDS AND GODS

This large group of gods was challenged on only one occasion, when the pharaoh<sup>2</sup> Amenhotep tried to introduce worship of one supreme<sup>3</sup> being, the sun god Aton.

Town Gods and Temples

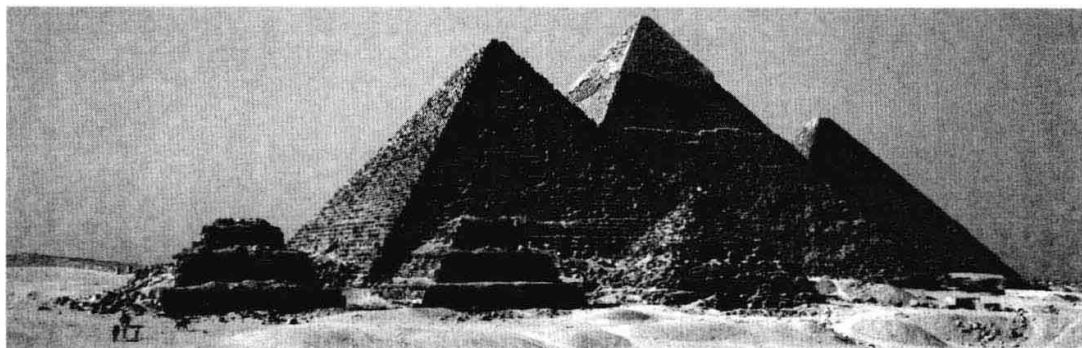
Gods looked after every aspect<sup>4</sup> of life.

Every town and city had its own god, too. Temples were dedicated to<sub>2</sub> a particular god or a dead pharaoh.

The biggest of all these temples was the temple of Amun (a sun god who came to be linked with Ra) at Karnak. The pharaoh was the chief priest as well as a god himself. Priests in each temple cared for<sub>3</sub> the statue<sup>5</sup> of the god that was kept there, washing it and offering it gifts of food. Priests also prayed to the gods. Ordinary people said their prayers in the home.

### THE NEXT WORLD AND MUMMIES

The Egyptians believed in an afterlife, to which human souls journeyed after death. They thought it important that the bodies of the dead



be preserved<sup>6</sup> for life in the next world, so they developed techniques for making “mummies”.

The dead person's organs<sup>7</sup> were removed and the body was embalmed<sup>8</sup> and dried, using salts and chemicals, and wrapped in linen bandages. It was then placed in a coffin<sup>9</sup>. Even animals such as cats and monkeys were sometimes mummified. Many thousands of mummies must have been made, but only about 1,000 survive today.

## PYRAMIDS AND ROCK TOMBS

Pyramids are the oldest stone structures in the world. There are more than 30, but the most famous are the three Great Pyramids

at Giza. The biggest, which was built for the pharaoh Cheops, contains about 2 million blocks of limestone<sup>10</sup> and is 460 feet high.

The pyramids were built as tombs, to keep the body of the dead king safe for eternity<sup>11</sup> and perhaps (through their sky-pointing shape) to ease his passage to the heavens. The work of building such enormous monuments<sup>12</sup> must have taken years, even with as many as 100,000 workers toiling<sup>13</sup> to move the huge stone blocks up sloping<sup>14</sup> ramps<sup>15</sup> of sand.

Mighty<sup>16</sup> as they were, the pyramids could not keep human robbers out. The treasures left inside each burial chamber with the king were invariably<sup>17</sup> stolen.

注：本课选自四年级《世界历史》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. deity ['di:əti] <i>n.</i> 神                         | 10. limestone ['laɪmstəʊn] <i>n.</i> 石灰石, 石灰岩     |
| 2. pharaoh ['feərəʊ] <i>n.</i> 法老(古埃及王的尊称)             | 11. eternity [ɪ'tɜ:nɪti] <i>n.</i> 永远, 不朽         |
| 3. supreme [sju:'pri:m] <i>adj.</i> 至高的, 终极的, 极端的, 最大的 | 12. monument ['mɒnjumənt] <i>n.</i> 纪念碑, 纪念物      |
| 4. aspect ['æspekt] <i>n.</i> 方面                       | 13. toil [tɔɪl] <i>vi.</i> 苦干, 跋涉 <i>n.</i> 苦工    |
| 5. statue ['stætju:] <i>n.</i> 雕像, 铸像, 塑像              | 14. slope [sləʊp] <i>v.</i> 倾斜 <i>n.</i> 倾斜, 斜坡   |
| 6. preserve [prɪ'zɜ:v] <i>v.</i> 保护, 保持, 保存            | 15. ramp [ræmp] <i>n.</i> 斜坡, 坡道                  |
| 7. organ ['ɔ:gən] <i>n.</i> 器官                         | 16. mighty ['maɪti] <i>adj.</i> 有力的; 强大的; 有势力的    |
| 8. embalm [ɪm'ba:m] <i>vt.</i> 涂敷防腐药物(香料等)保存(尸体)       | 17. invariably [ɪn'veəriəbli] <i>adv.</i> 不变地, 总是 |
| 9. coffin ['kɒfɪn] <i>n.</i> 棺材                        |   |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. play a part/role in 扮演……角色；起……作用

e.g. Financial markets naturally play a part in shaping monetary policy.

金融市场理所当然地是形成货币政策的一部分。

Woman used to play a passive role in a marriage.

妇女过去在婚姻中常常扮演顺从被动的角色。

### 2. dedicate... to... 把……献给……

e.g. This book is dedicated to my father and mother.

谨以此书献给我的父母。

I'll dedicate myself to science in the future.

将来我一定投身科学事业。

### 3. care for 喜欢, 照顾, 为……操心, 尊重

e.g. I care for seafood.

我喜欢吃海鲜。

She moved back home to care for her sick mother.

她搬回家住以便照顾生病的母亲。

### 4. Mighty as they were...

此处as引导让步状语从句, 相当于though/although, 用倒装结构。

e.g. Child as he was, he knew a lot.

他虽然是个孩子, 但懂得很多。

Hard as she tried, she failed to pass the exam.

她虽然很努力, 考试还是没及格。

### 5. keep ... out 不让……进来

e.g. Keep that dog out of the living room!

别让狗进客厅!



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. Which of the following is true according to the text?

- A. Egyptians believe in only one god.
- B. Pyramids were dedicated to gods.
- C. The pharaoh was considered a god himself.
- D. There are still thousands of mummies today.

2. Which of the following is NOT the reason why pyramids were built?

- A. They were tombs for the kings.
- B. They could protect the dead body for an afterlife.
- C. They could keep out the robbers.
- D. They could perhaps help the dead kings to get to heaven.

### II. Fill in the blanks with words from the text. The first letters of the words have been given.

- 1. Ice helps to p\_\_\_\_\_ food.
- 2. I have tried to look at that problem from every a\_\_\_\_\_ but I'm still puzzled.
- 3. They built a m\_\_\_\_\_ for those who died in the terrible earthquake.
- 4. The path gently s\_\_\_\_\_ down.
- 5. He struck his enemy with a m\_\_\_\_\_ blow.
- 6. O\_\_\_\_\_ donation is a personal matter.
- 7. He was exhausted by a day of t\_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. My intuition is i\_\_\_\_\_ correct.



## 参考译文

宗教在埃及人的生活中占有十分重要的地位。埃及人信奉许多男神和女神，其中最主要的有太阳神拉，天空神贺鲁斯，冥界神奥西里斯，以及女神伊西斯。伊西斯是奥西里斯的妻子，象征着完美的女人。

### 金字塔和神灵

这么多位神灵的地位只受到过一次挑战，即法老阿蒙霍特普曾试图提倡只崇拜一个超级巨神——太阳神阿顿的新教。

### 城镇的神灵与神庙

人类生活的方方面面都有相应的神灵负责掌管。每个城镇也都有它自己的神灵。神庙则是为祭祀某个神灵或者法老而建造。埃及最大的神庙位于卡纳克，供奉着阿蒙神（一位和拉有关联的太阳神）。法老除了本身是神之外，还是最大的祭司。神庙里的祭司负责照看庙里供奉的神像：清洗塑像，献上供品，还要做祷告。普通人在自己家里祷告。

### 冥界与木乃伊

埃及人相信人死了之后灵魂就会到冥界过上另一种生活。他们认为，遗体的保存对死后的生

活至关重要。因此，他们发明了制作木乃伊的技术。

他们掏出死者的内脏，在躯壳上涂抹盐和其它防腐药物，使其风干，用亚麻布包裹起来，再放进棺木里。有时候甚至猫、猴等动物也被制成木乃伊。据估计，埃及人肯定制作了成千上万个木乃伊，但保存到今天的只有大约1000个。

### 金字塔与石墓

金字塔是世界上最古老的石头建筑，现存有30多座，最著名的当属位于吉萨的三座大金字塔。最大的金字塔是为法老胡夫所建，460英尺高，共用了大约200万块石灰石。

金字塔是埃及国王为了保护自己的遗体免遭破坏以获得永生而修建的陵墓，也许（通过它直指云霄的尖顶）还能够帮助国王上到天堂。建造如此宏伟的纪念工事需要巨大的人力物力，即便有10万名劳工辛苦劳作，把巨大的石灰石块滚上陡峭的沙土斜坡，也需要好多年才能建成。

金字塔尽管十分坚固，还是无法把盗墓者挡在外面。墓室里陪葬的珍宝最终还是免不了遭到偷窃。



## “美”事一桩

### 美国人的迷信

不要以为迷信是中国几千年封建思想遗留下来的特产，许多国家，包括美国，都有自己的一套迷信观念。比如多数基督教国家都不喜欢“13”这个数字，这是因为耶稣被出卖前和他的十二门徒一起吃饭，饭桌上正好13个人。在美国宴会上不能13个人同坐一桌，也不能有13道菜。

黑猫也被人畏惧和讨厌。在古老的民间传说中，女巫常常被描绘为抱着黑猫、骑着扫帚飞行的老女人。由于黑猫总是不离女巫左右，所以也被视为不吉利的象征。迷信的人认为，如果黑猫从面前路过，就会大难临头。

关于镜子也有不少迷信。公元1世纪时，罗马人认为人的健康状况每七年要变化一次，而镜子是人们健康状况的反映，因此打破镜子就意味着会生七年病或死亡。这种说法为后世不少迷信的人所接受。还有一种古老的风俗是，如果人死了，就要把死者房间里的镜子翻过面，因为他们认为凡是照这面镜子的人，自己也要死亡。后来在美国的某些地方，甚至发展到挂在死者房间里的相片也要翻过去。

美国人还认为在人行道上行走时，绝不能踏得啪啪响。如果有人这样做，就等于是咒骂自己的母亲。

除这些忌讳外，美国人对某些东西抱有偏爱。比如，他们把蜗牛视为吉祥的象征，常常用玻璃或其他材料制成精致的蜗牛模型，用来馈赠亲友，表示亲切友好的感情。同样被人们认为能够带来好运气的还有马蹄铁和四叶车轴草。

许多美国人还喜欢在不带字母“R”的月份，即5月到8月里吃牡蛎，认为这样可以避邪。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

The apple doesn't fall far from the tree.

龙生龙，凤生凤。

Don't cry over spilt milk.

覆水难收，后悔无用。

Leave well enough alone.

适可而止。

If you can't beat them, join them.

敌不过，当求和。

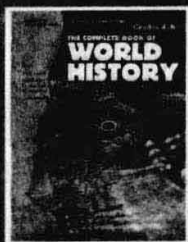
### Answer

I. 1. C 2. C

II. 1. preserve 2. aspect 3. monument 4. slopes/  
sloped 5. mighty 6. Organ 7. toil 8. invariably

# Eastern Religions

## 东方的宗教



不同地区的人们有不同的宗教信仰，世界上几个较大的宗教流派都起源于亚洲。这几个不同的宗教各自又有着怎样的教义呢？

Peoples all over the world formed systems of beliefs in powers greater than their own. The earliest religions were connected with the forces of nature—the sun, the moon, wind, water, rocks and trees—and with animals.

### EASTERN RELIGIONS

The great religions of the world all began in Asia. Three of them—Judaism<sup>1</sup>, Christianity, and Islam—began in the same area of west Asia. Hinduism and Buddhism<sup>2</sup> began in India.

In the civilizations of the ancient world, the king was often seen as the gods' representative. The god-king defended his people. The Egyptians believed in many gods, and in a life after death. One pharaoh, Akhenaton, tried to replace the old gods with a “one-god” faith based on sun worship. The experiment was short-lived.

### INDIA

Hinduism is the oldest of the Asian beliefs. There are many Hindu gods, and many rules that govern foods, behavior, festivals and even which jobs people may do.

Buddhism began in India in the 500s BC and was later spread by missionaries to Burma and China. In its birthplace of India, Buddhism practically died out. It was different from other religions in having no god or gods. Its followers were taught to escape the sufferings of life by desiring nothing. Another Indian religion, Jainism, forbade its followers to kill any living thing, even an insect.

### JUDAISM

The Jews were the first people in Europe and Asia to put their faith in one god. They believed that they were a chosen people,

who owed their escape from slavery in Egypt and Babylon to a supreme God whom they called Yahweh (the Lord). God gave the Ten Commandments<sup>3</sup> (laws) to Moses, and prophets<sup>4</sup> delivered messages from God. Jews believed that God would send a messiah<sup>5</sup>, or saviour, to bring justice and peace. Later, followers of Jesus Christ, a Jew, believed he was the Messiah (the son of God).

## CONFUCIUS

In China, people worshipped their ancestors and nature spirits. In the 500s BC, a scholar named Confucius taught a system of "right behavior" which has influenced Chinese government and society ever since<sub>3</sub>. He taught loyalty<sup>6</sup> to the family, worship of ancestors, and obedience<sup>7</sup> to the laws of society.

注：本课选自四年级《世界历史》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Judaism ['dʒu:deɪzəm] <i>n.</i> 犹太教     | 5. messiah [mɪ'saɪə] <i>n.</i> 弥赛亚（犹太人所期待的救世主） |
| 2. Buddhism ['bʊdɪzəm] <i>n.</i> 佛教；佛法     | 6. loyalty ['lɔɪəltɪ] <i>n.</i> 忠诚，忠贞，忠实       |
| 3. commandment [kə'mɑ:ndmənt] <i>n.</i> 戒律 | 7. obedience [ə'bi:djəns] <i>n.</i> 服从，遵守，顺从   |
| 4. prophet ['prɒfɪt] <i>n.</i> 预言家，先知      |  |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. forbid sb from doing sth/to do sth 禁止某人做某事

e.g. The teacher forbade Tom to leave.

老师不让汤姆离开。

I forbade them from discussing the matter again.

我不准他们再讨论那件事情。

### 2. owe to 欠（债，情）；归功于，归因于

e.g. I owed him 1,000 pounds.



我欠他1000英镑。

I owe everything to my mother.

我所有的一切都归功于我的母亲。

### 3. ever since 从那时到现在

e.g. The negotiation has been continuing ever since.

谈判一直都在进行。

We have kept in touch ever since.

从那时起到现在我们一直保持联系。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Put the correct answer in the blank.

1. Religions are systems of \_\_\_\_\_ in power greater than people's own.
2. The great religions of the world all originated in \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is the oldest of the Asia beliefs.
4. Buddhism taught its followers to escape the \_\_\_\_\_ of life by desiring nothing.
5. The Jews used to be \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt and Babylon.
6. Confucius taught \_\_\_\_\_ to the family, worship of ancestors, and \_\_\_\_\_ to the laws of society.

### II. Write true(T) or false(F) on the blank.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Hinduism and Buddhism began in Asia.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Buddhism appeared earlier than Hinduism.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Yahweh was the messiah of Jews.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Jesus Christ was a Jew himself.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Jesus believed in many gods.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Confucius was an European scholar.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Confucius and his system of "right behavior" has influenced China and Chinese people greatly.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The earliest religions were based on forces of nature.

## 参考译文

全世界的人们对于比他们强大的力量都形成了自己的理论系统，即宗教信仰。最早的宗教跟日、月、风、水、石、树等自然力及动物联系在一起。

### 东方的宗教

世界上几个较大的宗教流派都起源于亚洲。其中的三个宗教——犹太教、基督教和伊斯兰教——都发源于西亚的同一地区。印度教和佛教则诞生于印度。

在古代文化中，国王经常被看成是上帝的代表，代表上帝的国王维护着他们的臣民。埃及人信奉很多神，还相信人有来生。埃及的一个法老——阿肯那顿，决心用太阳崇拜的“一神”信念代替那些古老的神。但是也没能维持多久。

### 印度

印度教是亚洲最古老的宗教信仰。印度教里有很多神灵，还有很多跟食物、行为、节日乃至人们从事的工作相关的教条。

公元前6世纪，佛教诞生，而后被教士传到缅甸和中国。后来，在其诞生地印度，佛教几乎毁灭

殆尽。它和其他宗教的不同之处在于它没有任何神灵，教导信徒要消除欲望，以此来摆脱尘世的劫难。印度的另一个宗教耆那教，禁止教徒杀生，即便是一只昆虫也不可以。

### 犹太教

犹太人是欧洲和亚洲第一个信仰唯一——一个神的民族。他们自己是上帝的选民，正是借助了至高无上的上帝耶和华的力量，他们才得以逃出埃及和巴比伦，摆脱那儿的奴隶生活。上帝给了摩西十戒，先知们到处传播上帝的福音。犹太人相信上帝将派来一个弥赛亚，也就是救世主，为他们带来正义与和平。不久之后，犹太人耶稣基督的追随者认为他就是弥赛亚（上帝的儿子）。

### 孔子

在中国，人们信奉祖先和自然界的神灵。公元前6世纪，一个名叫孔子的学者提出一套以“礼”为中心的理论体系，对后来的统治阶级和社会带来了深远的影响。他教导人们要忠于家人，崇敬祖先，遵纪守法。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国人的宗教信仰

据调查，大部分美国人信仰宗教。美国是个移民国家，教派众多，最主要的有基督新教、天主教和犹太教。宗教渗透到美国人生活的方方面面。

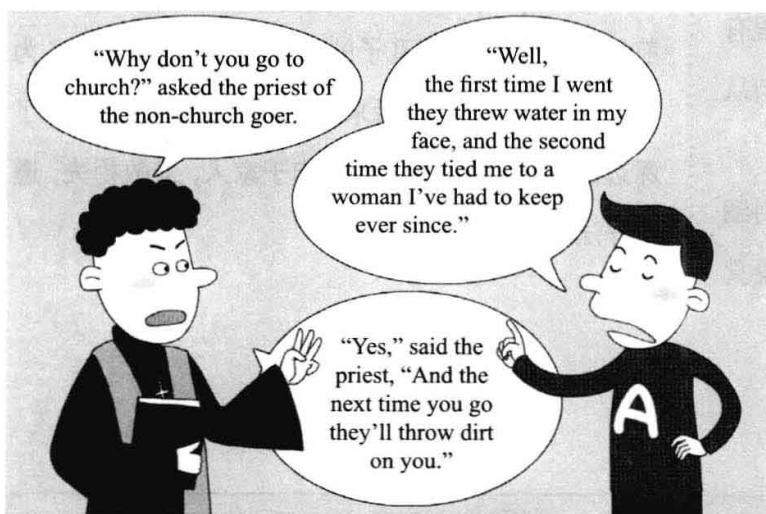
宗教对大多数人之所有重要，主要是因为教堂是美国人互相交流的一个重要场所。教堂不仅是举

行宗教仪式的地方，还是教育、文化和社交中心，常常举行教友餐会、座谈会、舞会、社会活动和青年活动等。不管信仰如何，教会都欢迎他们来参加这些活动。许多教堂在星期日上午做完礼拜后，会有一个“咖啡时刻”，这就是一个不拘礼仪的社交活动，大家一边喝着咖啡或茶一边随意交谈，气氛轻松融洽。因此，一个教徒迁居到一个新的地方之后，通常要把附近的教堂都走一遍，最后才固定下来到其中的一个教堂做礼拜，这并不是出于宗教方面的考虑，而是为了找到兴趣相同的朋友。

美国人的一生跟宗教有着密切的联系，比如出生（基督教的洗礼）、结婚（在教堂举办婚礼）和死亡（葬在教堂的墓地）。美国人参加宗教仪式都采取严肃认真的态度，衣着整齐，不能交头接耳，不能随意进出。如果到美国人家中做客，或许会碰到他们在饭前做祷告，如果客人不信仰他们的宗教，可以不参加祷告，主人不会介意。

美国教会的经费，主要来源于群众募捐和教徒的会费。政府不会直接付给任何教会补偿金，而是采取减免税收的形式。美国人为教会捐钱非常大方，每次去教堂做礼拜都要带些钱以便捐献。在经济繁荣的地区，教会的收入相当可观，不仅神职人员的工资高，还有大笔的资金用于建造教堂和开展其他活动。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



“你为什么不去教堂？”牧师问一位不上教堂的人。

“我第一次去，他们往我脸上泼水；第二次去，我就得从此养着一个女人。”

“是啊，你下次去的时候他们还得往你身上撒土呢。”

注释：这个人以这种不屑的口吻谈论自己的婴儿受洗礼和婚礼，是对教会的不敬。牧师说的“throw dirt on you”指的是他的葬礼。

### Answer

- I. 1. beliefs 2. Asia 3. Hinduism 4. sufferings  
5. slaves 6. loyalty, obedience  
II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. F 7. T 8. T

# A Tulip<sup>1</sup> Festival

8

## 郁金香节



郁金香的本意是一种花卉，在植物分类学上，是一类属于百合科郁金香属的具球茎草本植物，是荷兰的国花。它作为荷兰主要的出口观赏作物，成为荷兰经济命脉之一，和风车并称为荷兰的象征。

“Many visitors travel to Michigan,” said Mother. “We call these visitors tourists.” Tourists like the fine roads and beautiful roadside parks in Michigan. Some roads are laid out<sub>1</sub> along Indian trails<sup>2</sup>.

In spring, tourists like to visit Holland, Michigan. This town is famous for its beautiful tulip festival.

The people who first came to Holland, Michigan, were Dutch<sup>3</sup>. They named this town after<sub>2</sub> the country where they were born. These people brought many of their ways of living with them. There are many canals in Holland. It was not long until these hardworking people had built a canal to bring water from Lake

Michigan to Holland.

In Holland people grow many tulips. In May when the tulips are the most beautiful, they have a tulip festival. It is like the festival they have in the country of Holland.

The tulip festival is beautiful. The people from the town dress in Dutch costumes<sup>4</sup> and wooden shoes. They have parades and programs. Tulips are everywhere. To open the festival, the people of the town scrub<sub>5</sub> the streets like they do in Holland. This festival lasts four days. Great crowds of people always come to Holland, Michigan, for this special event.

注：本课选自三年级《历史和地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。





## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. tulip ['tju:lɪp] <i>n.</i> 郁金香                         | 4. costume ['kɒstju:m] <i>n.</i> 装束, 服装 |
| 2. trail [treɪl] <i>n.</i> 痕迹, 足迹, 小径                     | 5. scrub [skrʌb] <i>v.</i> 摩擦, 用力擦洗     |
| 3. Dutch ['dʌtʃ] <i>n.</i> 荷兰人, 荷兰语 <i>adj.</i> 荷兰的, 荷兰人的 |   |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. lay out 铺开; 布置, 安排

e.g. He laid the table cloth out on the table.

他把桌布在桌子上摊开。

The gardens were laid out with lawns, flower beds and fountains.

花园的布局有草坪、花坛和喷泉。

### 2. name after sb/sth 以……的名字来命名

e.g. She was named after her grandmother.

她的名字跟她祖母一样。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

Choose the right answer to fill in the blank.

1. The first people who came to Holland, Michigan, were \_\_\_\_\_ people.

A. English.      B. Dutch.

2. The hardworking people soon built a \_\_\_\_\_ to join the town with Lake Michigan.

A. canal.      B. candle.

3. These people brought many of their ways of \_\_\_\_\_ with them from Holland.

- A. working      B. living

4. In Holland the people grow many \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. trees      B. tulips

5. The tulip \_\_\_\_\_ lasts four days.

- A. festival      B. feasting

6. The people from the town dress in \_\_\_\_\_ costumes and wooden shoes for the tulip festival.

- A. funny      B. Dutch

7. To open the festival, the people of the town \_\_\_\_\_ the streets like they do in Holland.

- A. scrub      B. sit on

## 参考译文

“很多人到密西根州游览，”妈妈说。“我们把这些人都叫做游客。”游客喜欢这里整洁的道路和路边美丽的公园。有些道路旁边就是通往印地安人保留区的小径。

春天，游客喜欢到密西根的荷兰城玩，这个小城以郁金香节而闻名。

当年首先来到荷兰城的是荷兰人，他们用自己祖国的名字为这个小城命名。他们带来了许多本民族的生活习俗。荷兰有很多运河。因此，过不了多久，这些勤劳的居民也就开凿出一条运

河，把密西根湖的水引到了荷兰城。

荷兰城的人们种了很多郁金香。每年五月，当郁金香盛开的时候，他们就举办一个郁金香节，办得和祖国荷兰的节日一模一样。

郁金香节里处处是风景。城里的居民穿上荷兰的传统服装和木鞋，到街上游行庆祝、表演节目。随处可以见到郁金香。为了迎接这个节日，人们把小城的街道冲洗得干干净净像荷兰人在这个节日中要做的一样。郁金香节持续四天，吸引了大批的游客前来参加这场别开生面的盛会。

## “美”事一桩

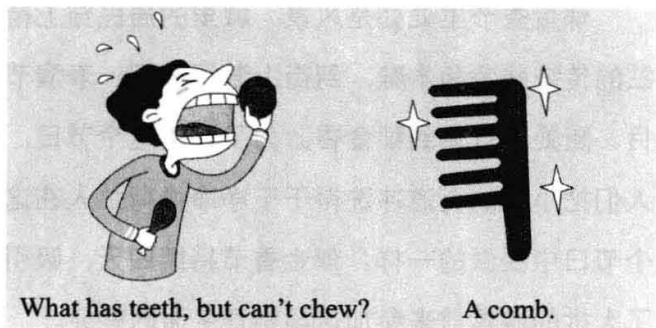
## 荷兰城

在美国密西根州的荷兰城，每年五月中旬举办“郁金香节”，吸引逾50万游客，是全美第三大民俗节日。荷兰城位于密西根的西部，毗临密西根湖，与芝加哥和威斯康星州隔湖相望。荷兰城建于1901年，很多荷兰人的后裔在这里居住，保留着他们的传统文化，城里洋溢着阿姆斯特丹的情调。

郁金香是荷兰的国花。上个世纪初，很多荷兰后裔移居到荷兰城。人们怀念祖国，渴望着与祖国有某种联系。这时，一位高中教师罗杰斯女士建议在荷兰城种植郁金香，以寄托思乡之情。市政府采纳了她的建议，于1928年从荷兰订购了10万株郁金香苗。第二年，郁金香开遍了全城，于是他们邀请各地客人到荷兰城来游览。以后，每年五月都举办盛大的郁金香节。到30年代中期，郁金香节已经闻名全美国，并且长盛不衰。“二战”时，郁金香节被迫停止，直到1946年才重新开始。

70多年来，荷兰城的人们一直在纪念和庆祝他们的传统和文化。每年春天郁金香盛开的时节，人们穿着釉蓝色的裙子，戴白色的围裙，奏起荷兰风琴，跳起欢快的木鞋舞。游客们络绎不绝地到这座小城来领略荷兰风情。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



What has teeth, but can't chew?

A comb.

什么东西有牙齿，但是不能咀嚼？

梳子。

注释：“teeth”除了指嘴里的牙齿之外，也可以指梳子的梳齿。齿轮和拉链也有“teeth”。

## Answer

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. A

# An Inventor —Henry Ford

9

## 一个创造者——亨利·福特



亨利·福特（1863年7月30日—1947年4月8日），美国汽车工程师与企业家，福特汽车公司的创立者。他也是世界上第一位使用流水线大批量生产汽车的人。这种新的生产方式使汽车成为一种大众产品，它不但革命了工业生产方式，而且对现代社会和文化起了巨大的影响。

Henry Ford invented one of the first cars. These early cars were often called “horseless carriages.” People had always ridden in carriages pulled by horses. These new “carriages” didn’t need horses to pull them. They were “horseless carriages.” Henry Ford first made the Model T and later the Model A. People began to call his “horseless carriages” Fords. Henry Ford began the Ford Motor Company and it is still making Fords today near Detroit, Michigan.

Henry Ford was born on a farm near Dearborn, Michigan. As a boy he was more interested in machines than farming. When he was twelve years old, he saw a steam<sup>1</sup> engine<sup>2</sup>, and from that time he became very interested in engines.

In 1903 Ford and some of his friends started the Ford Motor Company. The first car manufactured<sup>3</sup> was the Model T. In 1909 the Model T sold for eight hundred dollars. Ford thought that was too much money, and he wanted to make a cheaper car. In 1927 Model A cars were ready to be sold. Even the most expensive Model A cars sold for under six hundred dollars.

Ford bought factories and made his own parts. He started an assembly<sup>4</sup> line to make cars more quickly. Each worker had one simple job to do over and over again. This way of working saved time. Ford made the working day shorter. People who had worked nine hours only had to work for eight hours. People liked to work for Henry Ford and people liked to drive his cars.

注：本课选自三年级《历史和地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。





## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. steam [sti:m] *n.* 蒸汽

2. engine ['endʒɪn] *n.* 引擎, 发动机

3. manufacture [ˌmænjʊˈfæktʃə] *vt.* 制造

4. assembly [əˈsembli] *n.* 装配; 集合



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**over and over again/again and again** 一次又一次, 反复再三地

e.g. We will consider the problem over and over again.

这个问题我们还需要再三斟酌。

I warned him again and again but he just wouldn't listen.

我警告了他很多次, 他就是不听。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Answer these questions.

1. What did people call Henry Ford's "horseless carriage"? \_\_\_\_\_

2. What did Henry Ford call the first car he made? \_\_\_\_\_

3. What factory did Henry Ford begin? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Where was Henry Ford born? \_\_\_\_\_

5. What was Henry Ford interested in after he was 12? \_\_\_\_\_

### II. Choose the right answer to fill in the blank.

1. In 1903 Henry Ford started \_\_\_\_\_.

a. the Ford Motor Company

b. the Buick Motor Company

2. The Ford Motor Company manufactured \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. cereal      B. cars
3. In 1909, a Ford car cost \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. eight hundred fifty dollars      B. five hundred fifty dollars
4. By 1927, a Ford car could be bought for less than \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. eight hundred fifty dollars      B. six hundred dollars
5. The first car Ford made cost \_\_\_\_\_ money than the second car he made.  
A. more      B. less
6. Ford started \_\_\_\_\_ to make cars faster.  
A. factories      B. an assembly line
7. Ford made the working day \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. longer      B. shorter

## 参考译文

亨利·福特是第一批制造汽车的人之一。早期的汽车被称为“不用马拉的车”。在那之前人们都乘坐马车。这种新型的车不需要用马来拉，是“不用马拉的车”。亨利·福特先后制造出T型车和A型车。人们开始把他的“不用马拉的车”叫做福特汽车。福特在密西根州的底特律创办福特汽车公司，这家公司至今仍在生产福特牌汽车。

亨利·福特出生在密西根州迪尔伯恩附近的一个农场。孩童时代，他对机械的兴趣比他对耕地种田的兴趣大得多。12岁那年，他看到一个蒸汽机，从那之后便对引擎装置产生了浓厚的兴趣。

1903年，福特和几个朋友联合创办了福特汽

车公司。他们制造出的第一辆车是T型车。1909年T型车每辆售价800美元，福特认为这个价格太高，决心要制造出价格更低的汽车。1927年A型车问世。即便是A型车里最昂贵的车型售价也不会超过600美元。

福特买下工厂，自己生产汽车配件。为了提高生产速度，他首创了流水装配线。流水线上的工人只要重复做一项简单的工作即可，这样的工作模式可以节省很多时间。福特还缩短了每日的工作时间，以前人们每天工作九个小时，现在只要八小时。人们喜欢到福特公司工作，也喜欢开他制造的车。

## “美”事一桩

### 亨利·福特生平简介

1863年7月30日生于密歇根州格林费尔德城，自学成为一名蒸汽机技术师。

1887年进入底特律爱迪生电灯公司当技术员，后升为总工程师。潜心设计汽车，1896年试制成一辆二汽缸气冷式四马力汽车。

1898年辞职，成立了第一家汽车公司，只生产了25辆汽车便于1900年破产。

1903年再次成立汽车公司，并一直担任总经理。同年，公司生产出第一辆“福特”牌汽车。

1908年，生产出世界上第一辆T型车，彻底改变了美国人的生活方式。

1911年在密苏里州堪萨斯城建成第一家汽车装配工厂。

1913年，福特创立了全世界第一条汽车流水装配线。这种流水作业法后来被称为“福特制”，并在全世界广泛推广。这种制度是在实行标准化的基础上组织大批量生产，并使一切作业机械化和自动化，成为劳动生产率很高的一种生产组织形式。

1914年，首次向工人支付八小时五美元的最低工资，改变美国工人的工作方式。

1919年亨利买下了公司其他股东的股份，独占了该公司。他还利用花旗银行的资金扩大再生产，使公司成为20世纪世界最大的汽车公司。福特本人也被称为“汽车大王”，其家族成为美国几个主要财阀之一。

1927年，公司停止生产T型福特车，开始制造新式的A型车。1932年又开始制造V-8型车。现在该公司已实现多样经营，既制造、装配、销售轿车(福特、水星、林肯、大陆牌)、卡车、拖拉机及有关零件和附件，还研制、生产消费用和航天工业用(包括通讯和气象卫星)的电子产品和器具。

1936年，亨利·福特与他的儿子埃兹尔一起于在密歇根州创立了美国福特基金会。一开始它是一个地区性的福利机构，其目的是广泛地促进人类福利。该基金会发展极快，到1950年它已经成为一个国家性和国际性组织。

1943年，亨利的独生子埃兹尔死后，他把公司许多企业的指挥权交给其孙子亨利·福特二世。

1947年4月8日，亨利·福特去世。在他的葬礼那天，美国所有的汽车生产线停工一分钟，以纪念这位“汽车界的哥白尼”。

1999年，《财富》杂志将福特评为“20世纪最伟大的企业家”，以表彰他和福特汽车公司对人类发展所作出的贡献。

2005年《福布斯》杂志公布了有史以来最有影响力的20位企业家，亨利·福特名列榜首。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

All that glitters is not gold.

闪光的未必都是金子。

Two heads are better than one.

人多智广，二比一强。

There is no place like home.

千好万好，家里最好。

A man is known by the company he keeps.

近朱者赤，近墨者黑。

### Answer

I. 1. Fords. 2. T model. 3. Ford Motor Company.

4. on a farm near Dearborn, Michigan. 5. Engines.

II. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. B



# 10

# Methods of Coal Mining

## 煤炭开采方式



煤炭是千百万年来植物的枝叶和根茎在地面上堆积而成的一层极厚的黑色腐植质，由于地壳的变动不断地将其埋入地下，长期与空气隔绝，并在高温高压下，经过一系列复杂的物理化学变化形成的黑色可燃沉积岩。煤炭被人们誉为黑色的金子，工业的食粮，它是18世纪以来人类世界使用的主要能源之一。

In the first section of this LIFE PAC, you learned that coal is very useful to people. After people discovered how important coal was, they began mining the coal. In the next section you will learn about coal mining.

### EARLY METHODS

The first mines were only pits<sup>1</sup> dug out of the earth. People climbed down ladders into the narrow pits to get the coal. Next, tunnels<sup>2</sup> were dug to reach more coal. The coal had to be pulled<sup>3</sup> in baskets back to the pit. Then the coal was hoisted<sup>4</sup> to the surface of the ground.

Early mining was very hard work. Miners used picks to cut the coal from the seam<sup>5</sup>. Often the tunnels were not big enough for the miners to stand up straight while they worked. The only light the miners had was from their

candles.

The miners, at that time, faced many dangers. As they chipped<sup>6</sup> away at the coal, gas would be found. The flame of a miner's candle could cause the gas to explode. Often, miners were killed by these explosions. Coal dust was always in the air and hurt the miners' lungs.

Candles, used for light, also used much of the oxygen in the air. The miners needed oxygen to breathe. The poor light also hurt the miner's eyes.

Sometimes the roofs of the mines caved<sup>7</sup> in. The miners working below were killed or trapped<sup>8</sup>. With the shafts<sup>9</sup> blocked, it was hard to rescue the trapped miners.

People began to think of ways to make mining a safer way to earn a living<sup>2</sup>.

## IMPROVING CONDITIONS

Miners no longer<sub>3</sub> have to carry coal to the surface by hand. Machinery scoops<sup>10</sup> up the coal. The big scoops load the coal into railroad cars that bring it out of the mine.

Miners used to<sub>4</sub> use picks and shovels<sup>11</sup> for their mining tools. Today machines are used to bore<sup>12</sup> holes in the mines. Explosives<sup>13</sup> are put in the holes to blast<sup>14</sup> the coal loose.

Now electric lighting is used instead of candles, and fans force fresh air into every part of the mine.

The walls of the mines are held against cave-ins. Props<sup>15</sup> of heavy steel or concrete<sup>16</sup> are built to support the rock above. The safety laws say that a certain amount of coal is to be left in each mile. This coal acts as a natural prop.

A safety lamp was invented that can test for gas in the coal mine. Every mine has a fire boss who goes along all the shafts with the safety lamp to make sure they are safe.

All along the walls of the mines are pipes that carry water to fight fires. Telephones have been put in mines, too. Mining is still hard work, but it is not as dangerous as it once was. Mining is safer today than it was years ago.

## MODERN MINING

The mines that used to be small pits are now large enough to have two or more big

elevators<sup>17</sup> in them. These elevators are called cages. The cages carry the miners and coal cars between the surface of the earth and the coal below.

The coal is taken out of the mine by railroad cars. After the coal is out of the mine, it is taken into a building. The rocks are taken out of the coal, and the coal is washed. At the tippie<sup>18</sup> the coal is loaded on railroad cars or trucks.

Today's mine is often the size of a town. Sometimes, the mine may be a much bigger place than the town where the miners live. The tunnels or streets of the mine may go many miles under the earth. Along the streets of the mine are the spaces from which the coal is being mined. This kind of mining is called shaft mining. Shaft mining is done deep in the ground.

The other kind used today is called strip mining. Strip mining is used to mine the coal that is close to the top of the ground. Very large machines are used to remove the earth on the surface of the land and then to dig out the layers<sup>19</sup> of coal. Large areas of land are strip mined in this way. Because the miners do not go deep into the ground, strip mining is the safest kind of mining. However, strip mining leaves ugly scars across the land. New laws say that strip mining companies must plant trees and grass on the bare<sup>20</sup> land.

Mining has changed since the days when

people first brought coal from the ground. Mining is still a very important way for people to earn their living. Coal is important to people in our country and in the world.

注：本课选自三年级《历史和地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>pit</b> [pɪt] <i>n.</i> 深坑, 矿井  | 11. <b>shovel</b> ['ʃʌvl] <i>n.</i> 铁铲                        |
| 2. <b>tunnel</b> ['tʌnl] <i>n.</i> 隧道, 坑道, 地道                                 | 12. <b>bore</b> [bɔ:] <i>v.</i> 钻孔 <i>n.</i> 令人讨厌的人或事         |
| 3. <b>pile</b> [paɪl] <i>v.</i> 堆起, 堆积, 积累                                    | 13. <b>explosive</b> [ɪks'pləʊsɪv] <i>n.</i> 炸药               |
| 4. <b>hoist</b> [hɔɪst] <i>n./v.</i> 升高, 举起, 吊起                               | 14. <b>blast</b> [bla:st] <i>n.</i> 一阵风, 爆炸 <i>v.</i> 炸; 猛攻   |
| 5. <b>seam</b> [si:m] <i>n.</i> 矿层; 接缝  | 15. <b>prop</b> [prɒp] <i>n./vt.</i> 支撑                       |
| 6. <b>chip</b> [tʃɪp] <i>n.</i> 薄片; 薯片 <i>v.</i> 削, 切, 凿                      | 16. <b>concrete</b> ['kɒkri:t] <i>n.</i> 水泥                   |
| 7. <b>cave</b> [keɪv] <i>n.</i> 洞穴 <i>v.</i> (~ in) 塌陷                        | 17. <b>elevator</b> ['elɪveɪtə] <i>n.</i> 升降梯                 |
| 8. <b>trap</b> [træp] <i>n.</i> 陷阱, 圈套 <i>vt.</i> 诱捕, 困住                      | 18. <b>tipple</b> ['tɪpl] <i>n.</i> 倾卸车 <i>vt.</i> 倾斜, 翻倒, 倒出 |
| 9. <b>shaft</b> [ʃa:ft] <i>n.</i> 升降机井, 立式矿井                                  | 19. <b>layer</b> ['leɪə] <i>n.</i> 层, 地层                      |
| 10. <b>scoop</b> [sku:p] <i>n.</i> 铲子, 挖掘机 <i>v.</i> 铲, 舀<br>an ear scoop 挖耳勺 | 20. <b>bare</b> [beə] <i>adj.</i> 赤裸的, 光秃秃的                   |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. with the shafts blocked...

with + 名词/代词 + 现在分词/过去分词/不定式: 此结构在句中作状语, 表示时间、原因、条件、让步、方式和伴随等情况。本课中的例子表示原因。

e.g. With Christmas coming around, it's time to prepare presents for family members and friends.

(接现在分词, 表时间) 随着圣诞临近, 该是为家人和朋友准备礼物的时候了。

With her shoes stuck in the mud, she could not move.

(接过去分词, 表原因) 她的鞋子陷在泥里, 动弹不了。

With no one to talk to, John felt unhappy.

(接不定式, 表原因) 因为没有人可以和他说话, 约翰觉得很快乐。

## 2. earn/make a living 谋生

e.g. How do people make a living here?

这里的人们靠什么谋生呢?

He earns a living as a film-maker.

他当制片人谋生。

## 3. no longer/no more/not any longer/ not any more 不再

e.g. We are no longer interested.

我们不再感兴趣了。

We could not stand it any more.

我们再也无法忍受了。

## 4. used to do sth 过去常常做……

e.g. I used to take a walk after supper.

过去我吃完晚饭后经常去散步。

Compare: be used to sth/doing sth

习惯做某事

e.g. I have been used to staying up late.

我已经习惯熬夜了。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Write true or false.

1. \_\_\_\_ Early miners used picks to cut coal.
2. \_\_\_\_ Using candles in the mine was not dangerous.
3. \_\_\_\_ Mining used to be very dangerous.

4. \_\_\_\_ Explosions happened when the coal was on fire.
5. \_\_\_\_ People built steel or concrete props to support the walls and ceilings of the mine.
6. \_\_\_\_ Shaft mining is safer than strip mining.
7. \_\_\_\_ Now elevators are used to carry coal up to the surface.
8. \_\_\_\_ Strip mining does no harm to the environment.

## II. Write the words from the word box below.

**salt, melt, belt, felt, wilt, built, quilt, halt**

1. The miners \_\_\_\_\_ there should be safety rules in the mine.
2. A coal mine is often \_\_\_\_\_ like a small city.
3. A flower will \_\_\_\_\_ after it is picked.
4. The miner carries tools on a \_\_\_\_\_ around his waist.
5. The beautiful patchwork \_\_\_\_\_ on the bed shows some of the history of early Pennsylvania.
6. Ice will \_\_\_\_\_ in the hot sun.
7. Two countries should \_\_\_\_\_ their fighting.
8. Give flavor to your foods by adding \_\_\_\_\_.

## III. Write the words under the right time in mining.

candles, electricity, picks and shovels, machines, explosives, safety lamps, fans, steel supports, no supports, telephones, no way to call for help, water lines, many fires, many explosions, many cave-ins, poor health, fire boss

Years Ago

Today



## 参考译文

在本课的第一部分，你们已经知道，煤对人类生活非常重要。在人们发现煤很重要之后，他们开始开发煤矿。在下一部分，你们将会学到煤矿开发的内容。

### 早期的开采方式

最初的矿井只不过是地上挖出来的深坑。人们沿着梯子下到狭窄的坑里，把煤挖出来。为了获得更多的煤，人们又在矿井之下挖了坑道，把煤装在篮子里送到井底，再吊到地面。

早期的采煤工作十分艰苦。矿工用镐把煤从矿层上挖下来。坑道通常很低很窄，矿工在里面无法直立工作。蜡烛是坑道里唯一的光源。

那时的矿工面临着很多危险。当他们把煤一层层铲下来的时候，瓦斯会从矿层中逸出。他们所带蜡烛的火焰就会引燃瓦斯引起爆炸。经常有矿工死于井下瓦斯爆炸。空气中弥漫的煤炭粉尘也对矿工的肺造成伤害。

用来照明的蜡烛还会耗掉大量供矿工呼吸的氧气，极差的光线也会损坏他们的眼睛。

有时候煤矿的顶部垮塌，造成里面的矿工死亡，或者被困地下。塌方堵住了矿井，被困的矿工很难得到营救。

为了有一个更好的谋生方式，人们开始探索新的采煤方法。

### 改进后的开采方式

现在，矿工无需再依靠双手把煤运到地面。我们让机器来做这些事情。巨大的铲土机把煤铲到拖车里，再由它们运出矿区。

过去，矿工使用的挖煤工具是镐和铁铲。现在，我们用机器在矿坑里钻洞，在打出来的洞里

引爆炸药，把煤层炸松。

如今电灯取代了蜡烛作为照明工具，鼓风机把新鲜的空气输送到矿井的每一个角落。

为防止塌方，矿井的墙壁进行了加固，钢铁或水泥支架撑住了坑顶的石块。安全法规定，每个矿井都要留下一部分煤炭不予开采，这些煤炭可以起到天然的支撑作用。

人们还发明了矿用安全灯，用以测试矿井中的瓦斯含量。每个矿区都有一个防火监护员提着安全灯沿各个矿井巡查，以确保安全无恙。

矿井的墙壁都布满了消防用的水管。矿井里还安装了电话。煤炭开采仍然是一项艰苦的工作，但已经没有从前那么危险。现在跟多年前相比，采煤安全得多了。

### 现代的开采方式

过去矿井只是一些小小的深坑，现在则大到可以容纳两部乃至更多的升降机。这些升降机被称为吊笼。吊笼在矿井和地面之间运输矿工和煤炭。

煤炭由拖车运出矿区之后，被送到厂房里。人们把煤炭里的石块清理出来，而后将煤洗净。最后，倾卸车把煤装卸到拖车或者卡车上。

今天的煤矿通常和城镇一般大小，有时候甚至比矿工居住的城镇还要大。井下的坑道，也可称为街道，可能在地下绵延数英里。街道两边就是采煤作业区。这样的开采模式叫做竖井开采法，即在地下深处作业。

另一种开采模式叫做露天开采，用来开采埋藏较浅的煤炭。人们用大型机器挖开地表的泥土，把煤炭矿层开采出来。我们用这种方法开采了大片的土地。因为矿工不必深入地下，露天开采是最安全的采煤方式。然而，露天开采把地表挖得

到处都是疮疤，影响美观。新法律规定采煤公司开采之后必须在光秃秃的土地上补种树木和草皮。

从人们开始挖煤到现在，煤炭开采历经了许

多变化。但采煤仍然是人们重要的谋生手段。煤炭对我国及全世界人民都至关重要。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国煤炭资源与生产

美国是世界上煤炭资源最丰富的国家之一，1800米深度以上的地质资源总量约为3.6万亿吨，1993年探明储量4300亿吨。在探明储量中，烟煤占51%，次烟煤占38%，褐煤占9.47%，无烟煤占1.60%，适于露天开采的占32.70%。煤炭资源赋存广泛，地区分布比较均衡。全美50个州中，有38个州富存煤炭，含煤面积达11810平方千米，占国土面积的13%。1996年可采储量为2405.6亿吨，居世界第一位。

美国按地理位置将煤炭资源分为三大地区，即东部阿巴拉契亚地区，中部地区和西部地区。以上三个地区在探明储量中所占百分比分别为22.60%、28.10%和49.30%。

美国的主要煤田有阿巴拉契煤田、伊利诺依煤田、中西部煤田、尤宁堡煤田、波德河煤田、尤塔固煤田、格林河煤田、圣胡安煤田和科尔维尔高煤田。

作为仅次于中国的世界第二采煤大国，美国目前人均年产煤近万吨。然而，美国煤矿的严重伤亡事故很少，近年来煤矿死亡人数平均每年只有40名左右。这都要归功于近几十年来，尤其是1977年制定《联邦矿业安全与健康法》以来，美国政府不断完善煤矿安全管理法律和提高执法力度的长期努力。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



新娘：我在给你熨西装时把裤子的臀部烧了个大洞。  
丈夫：我那套西装还有一条相配的裤子。  
新娘：对啊，幸亏还有一条，我才能用它把洞补了。

### Answer

I. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. T 8. F

II. 1. felt 2. built 3. wilt 4. belt 5. quilt 6. melt 7. halt 8. salt

III. Year ago: candles, picks and shovels, no supports, no way to call for help, many fires, many explosions, many cave-ins, poor health

Today: electricity, machines, explosives, safety lamps, fans, steel supports, telephones, water lines, fire boss

# Hong Kong, Marketplace of Asia (Part One)

11

## 香港——亚洲的市场（上）



香港是亚洲繁华的大都市及国际金融中心之一，并且是一个条件优越的天然深水港。香港在1842年至1997年期间是英国的殖民地，于1997年7月1日回归中国。其面积约1104平方公里，人口超过700万。其主要产业有地产业、银行及金融服务业、旅游业、工贸服务业、社会和个人服务业。

The ship leaves Sydney's harbor and sails north past great coral reefs. From the Coral Sea, the ship will continue past groups of Pacific islands. For days it will continue northwest, until the archipelago of the Philippine Islands is left behind to the south. One evening a fairyland of moving and twinkling lights comes into view. They risk right out of the South China Sea and sparkle like jewels in a crown. The ship is approaching Hong Kong, a great trading center in China.

### THE TAKING OF HONG KONG

Britain used to own many other countries, called colonies, all over the world (including the United States). Hong Kong became a

British colony in the 1800's. The British took the land after defeating the Chinese in two wars. They were called the Opium<sup>1</sup> Wars, and the British treated the Chinese very badly in those wars.

Britain wanted to trade goods with Chinese for<sub>1</sub> its tea and silk, but the Chinese did not want to trade goods; they wanted to pay in gold or silver for their merchandise<sup>2</sup>. The British did not like paying this way.

The British began trading opium for Chinese goods rather than<sub>2</sub> paying in gold. Opium is a drug that is addictive<sup>3</sup>. People who take it feel good for a little while and then must have more of the drug. It ruins people's lives, because they do not want anything except more

opium. The British knew this, but they made a great deal of money trading opium for valuable Chinese goods.

The Opium Wars were fought when the Chinese tried to stop the opium trade that was hurting their people. The British used their stronger army to force the trade to continue. They took Hong Kong, with its huge harbor, to use as a base for the trade.

The British forced China to give them Hong Kong Island in 1841. The Chinese gave them the peninsula<sup>4</sup> across from the island, Kowloon, in 1860. In 1898 the British leased<sup>5</sup>, or rented, the New Territories<sup>6</sup> north of Kowloon and many nearby islands for 99 years. These three areas are the colony of Hong Kong.

The port of Hong Kong became a busy, wealthy place due to<sub>3</sub> the trade with China. Many Chinese people came there to find jobs. Opium continued to be a major trade item<sup>7</sup> until the early 1900's.

During World War II, Hong Kong was a dangerous place. The city was bombed and then taken over<sub>4</sub> by Japanese soldiers. One of every three people<sub>5</sub> left the city or died. After the war ended, the people returned and rebuilt the city.

In 1949 a communist<sup>8</sup> government was set up<sub>6</sub> in China. Then many Chinese left their country. A flood of refugees<sup>9</sup> swarmed<sup>10</sup> into Hong Kong. The city became unbelievably

crowded. The colony allowed them to stay and built huge apartments<sup>11</sup> with tiny rooms for them to live in. A new one was started every ten days. Hong Kong is now one of the most crowded cities in the world!

Some of these refugees were wealthy people who knew the communists would take everything away from them. They started new businesses in Hong Kong with the money they brought with them.

The refugees who were poor, came with only a willingness<sup>12</sup> to work. They had lost everything and would work hard for very little money. Hong Kong became a place where things could be manufactured very quickly and cheaply. The government allowed the businesses to work however they wanted and kept the taxes very low. As a result, Hong Kong became a busy, hard-working city with many businesses. Today the people of Hong Kong are known for their hard work and for always trying to make more money.

China wanted Hong Kong back, but Britain refused because it knew the communist government would ruin the city. But the communists became more interested in making money in the 1980's, and the 99-year lease of the New Territories was going to run out<sub>7</sub> in 1997 so, in 1984 Britain agreed that the colony would all become a part of China again in 1997. China agreed to not change Hong Kong's way of working for fifty years.



## HONG KONG TODAY

Hong Kong means “fragrant<sup>13</sup> harbor.” That magnificent<sup>14</sup> harbor covers 17 square miles. A whole fleet<sup>15</sup> of ships can come in at one time<sup>8</sup>. When ships were powered by sails, it was important that the harbor be open in two directions, so the ships could sail no matter which way the wind was blowing.

The capital of Hong Kong is the city of Victoria on Hong Kong Island. The island is connected to Kowloon by a subway tunnel, a road tunnel, and many ferries<sup>16</sup>. If you are in a big hurry, you can go across by helicopter!

Almost six million people live in Hong Kong. Most of those people have to live in the cities of Kowloon or Victoria. That is because land on the island of Hong Kong and Kowloon is covered with mountains. There is very little space where buildings can be put, and it is all very expensive. Much of the land in the New Territories is needed for farms. Thus, only the twenty square miles inside the cities are available for homes. That would be like taking all of the people in the state of Indiana and putting them into the city of Newark, New Jersey!

The people of Hong Kong work to create new land to build on. The runway of the main airport extends<sup>17</sup> out into the harbor. Dirt and rocks were brought in to build it there. More land is always being built in the ocean this

way. Houses and apartments are built on the sides of mountains after digging out a place to put them. Old buildings are constantly being torn down<sup>9</sup>, to build bigger new ones. Buildings are very tall, so that a small piece of land can be used to make a large amount of living space. It is very different from spread-out Sydney!

Many people in Hong Kong do not try to find homes on land. They live in boats that float<sup>18</sup> in the harbor. The boat homes have a cover over part of the deck<sup>19</sup>. They are called *sampans*. There are schools, shops, and doctors on boats to serve them. These people used to make their living by fishing, but the water around Hong Kong is too polluted now. There are not many fish anymore, so most of the boat people work in factories or do odd<sup>20</sup> jobs to earn money.

Most of the people in Hong Kong are Chinese. Until 1997, however, the British ran the government. The fair British laws made people trust the government. That trust allowed people to go to Hong Kong and build businesses there.

Beautiful things are made in Hong Kong's many factories and art shops. Shoes, clothes, furniture, carvings<sup>21</sup>, and jade<sup>22</sup> jewelry are made and sold. Hong Kong tailors<sup>23</sup> will make clothes by copying from a picture. The customer chooses the cloth and in one day has a new outfit<sup>24</sup> made just for him.

Hong Kong is a duty-free port. This



means that the government does not charge any taxes on goods that are brought in from other countries. Many people visit Hong Kong just so they can go shopping there. The prices are

low because goods are all duty-free. The same things might cost quite a bit more in the United States because of the taxes paid to bring it into the country.

注：本课选自四年级《历史与地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. opium ['əʊpjəm] <i>n.</i> 鸦片                                  | 12. willingness ['wɪlɪŋnɪs] <i>n.</i> 乐意，心甘情愿         |
| 2. merchandise ['mɜ:tʃəndaɪz] <i>n.</i> 商品，货物                    | 13. fragrant ['freɪgrənt] <i>adj.</i> 芳香的             |
| 3. addictive [ə'dɪktɪv] <i>adj.</i> 沉溺的；使成瘾的，上瘾的                 | 14. magnificent [mæg'nɪfɪsnt] <i>adj.</i> 宏伟的，华丽的，庄严的 |
| 4. peninsula [prɪ'nɪnsjələ] <i>n.</i> 半岛                         | 15. fleet [fli:t] <i>n.</i> 舰队                        |
| 5. lease [li:s] <i>v.</i> 出租                                     | 16. ferry ['ferɪ] <i>n.</i> 渡船                        |
| 6. territory ['terɪtəri] <i>n.</i> 领土，版图                         | 17. extend [ɪks'tend] <i>v.</i> 伸出，延伸，扩展              |
| 7. item ['aɪtem, 'aɪtəm] <i>n.</i> 条款，项目，物品                      | 18. float [fləʊt] <i>v.</i> 漂浮                        |
| 8. communist ['kɒmjunist] <i>n.</i> 共产主义者，共产党员 <i>adj.</i> 共产主义的 | 19. deck [dek] <i>n.</i> 甲板                           |
| 9. refugee [ˌrefʊdʒi:] <i>n.</i> 难民                              | 20. odd [ɒd] <i>adj.</i> 临时的，奇特的                      |
| 10. swarm [swɔ:m] <i>n.</i> 群，大群 <i>vi.</i> 聚集，云集                | 21. carving ['kɑ:vɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 雕刻                    |
| 11. apartment [ə'pɑ:tment] <i>n.</i> 公寓                          | 22. jade [dʒeɪd] <i>n.</i> 玉石                         |
|  | 23. tailor ['teɪlə] <i>n.</i> 裁缝                      |
|  | 24. outfit ['aʊtfɪt] <i>n.</i> 用具，装备                  |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. trade ... for ... 互相交换，以物易物

e.g. I traded my stamps for his postcards.

我用邮票换他的明信片。

## 2. rather than: instead of 而不是

e.g. I would like a cup of tea rather than coffee.

我想要茶，不要咖啡。

He always asks for help, rather than trying to do things by himself.

他总是叫别人帮忙，而不是自己解决。

## 3. due to: because of 由于，因为

e.g. He failed due to carelessness.

他的粗心导致了失败。

Many problems are due to human error.

很多问题都是人为错误造成的。

## 4. take over 接替，接管，控制

e.g. The rebel army had taken over the government.

叛军接管了政府。

He took over the company when his father died.

父亲死后他接管了公司。

## 5. one of every three people/one out of three/one in three 三个人当中有一个，三分之一

e.g. Iron deficiency affects one in three female teenagers.

三分之一的少女缺铁。

## 6. set up 建立，设立

e.g. Mr. Green set up a charity to help the poor.

格林先生创办了一个慈善机构帮助穷人。

## 7. run out 用完，耗尽；过期，失效

e.g. Time is running out for the trapped miners.

被困矿工的时间不多了。

The contract will run out in a month.

合同一个月后失效，

**8. at one/a time** 一次, 每次

e.g. We are allowed to borrow five books from the library at one time.

我们从图书馆一次可以借五本书。

**9. tear sth down** 拆毁, 拆除 (建筑物、墙等)

e.g. They have torn down that dangerous wall.

他们已经拆除了那堵危墙。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Put the correct answer in the blank.

1. The British defeated the Chinese in the \_\_\_\_\_ wars.
2. Hong Kong was a colony owned by \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The three parts of Hong Kong are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The water around Hong Kong is too \_\_\_\_\_ for people to make a living by fishing.
5. Until 1997, the \_\_\_\_\_ ran the government of Hong Kong.

### II. Write true(T) or false(F) on the blank.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Hong Kong was safe during World War II.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Hong Kong is one of the most crowded cities in the world.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Hong Kong became part of China again in 1945.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The people of Hong Kong are known to be very lazy.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Things are made cheaply and quickly in Hong Kong.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The New Territories were leased by Britain for 99 years.

### III. Choose the correct letter to match these items on the left.

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. _____ Hong Kong       | a. needed for farmland                        |
| 2. _____ duty free       | b. boat home                                  |
| 3. _____ sampan          | c. "fragrant harbor"                          |
| 4. _____ New Territories | d. capital of the colony                      |
| 5. _____ Victoria        | e. no taxes for goods coming into the country |

#### IV. List some ways people in Hong Kong find room to build and live.

- A. \_\_\_\_\_
- B. \_\_\_\_\_
- C. \_\_\_\_\_
- D. \_\_\_\_\_

### 参考译文

这艘船离开悉尼的港口，开始向北，经过几个大的珊瑚礁。从珊瑚海出发，船只将继续穿过成群的太平洋岛屿，还将继续向西北方向航行几天，直到菲律宾群岛被甩在南边。一天晚上，一个带有移动的、闪亮的灯光的仙境出现在眼前。它们出现在南海，就像皇冠上面的珠宝一样一闪一闪的。船就要靠近香港了，它是中国一个大贸易中心。

### 香港的被占与回归

过去，英国在世界各地占有许多其他国家的土地（包括美国），并将它们称为殖民地。香港在19世纪初成为英国的殖民地。英国人通过两次鸦片战争从中国人手中夺得香港。在战争中英国人残酷地对待中国人。

英国想用货物跟中国交换茶叶和丝绸，但中国人不想要货物，他们要对方用黄金或白银来支付。英国人不愿意。

于是英国人用鸦片代替黄金来购买中国人的货物。鸦片是一种能让人上瘾的毒品。人吸食鸦片后起初会感受到片刻的舒适，之后却需要吸食

更多的鸦片才能得到满足。一旦成瘾，人除了鸦片之外什么都不想要。鸦片会毁了人们的生活。英国人知道这一点，但他们还是用鸦片换取珍贵的中国货品，以此谋取了巨大的利益。

中国试图终止危害本国人民的鸦片贸易，于是鸦片战争打响。英国依靠其比中国强大的军队，迫使贸易继续进行。他们占领了香港，利用它的大型港口作为鸦片贸易的据点。

1841年，英国强迫中国割让香港岛。1860年，中国割让与香港岛一水之隔的九龙半岛。1898年，英国租借九龙以北的地区及附近岛屿，称之为新界，租期99年。这三个地区合称香港殖民地。

凭借与中国的贸易，香港变得繁华富庶起来。很多中国人到香港找工作。直到20世纪初，鸦片烟仍然是香港的主要商品。

第二次世界大战期间，香港处境十分危险。它遭到日军轰炸，而后被占领。城里三分之一的人口逃离了香港或者在战争中遇难。战争结束后，人们返回香港，重建这座城市。

1949年，一个由共产党领导的政府在中国

成立。很多人出于各种原因，背井离乡，涌进香港，香港变得非常拥挤。殖民地政府允许他们留下，并建了公寓楼来安置他们。为了有足够的空间安置这些人，公寓楼都建得很大，里面的房间则很小；而且，每隔10天就又有一座新大楼拔地而起。如今香港是世界上最拥挤的城市之一。

逃到香港的人中有些是富人，由于不了解新成立的中国政府的性质，误以为政府会没收他们的财产，于是逃离大陆。他们用带来的钱在香港开工厂、做生意。

而那些没钱的，他们到香港只是为了工作挣钱。他们一无所有，肯为微薄的薪水辛苦工作。香港生产东西速度快，成本低。政府允许企业自主经营，税也征得很低。香港因此成为一个繁忙的工商业城市。今天，香港人以能勤劳肯干、一直在拼命挣钱而闻名于外。

中国想要回香港，英国不同意，因为它认为共产党领导的政府会毁掉香港。但是到了20世纪80年代，共产党对发展经济越来越有兴趣，而且，新界的99年租期也即将在1997年到期。所以，1984年，英国同意把整个殖民地于1997年归还中国。中国承诺，香港的经济社会制度50年不变。

## 今日香港

香港意为“芳香的港口”。这个港口十分出色，面积17平方英里，可让一个舰队的所有船只同时进入。在以风帆为动力的年代，港口的两头都要有开口，这点很重要，这样不管风朝哪个方向吹，船只都能够航行。

香港的中心维多利亚城位于香港岛上。香港岛通过一条地铁隧道、一条行车隧道与九龙相连，两地之间也有许多渡轮。如果你赶时间，你还可以乘坐直升飞机！

香港大约有600万居民，大多数住在九龙或维多利亚城。这是因为香港岛和九龙多山，可以用来盖房子的土地很少，也很贵。新界的大部分土地则是农田。因此，市内只有20平方英里大小的土地可作为住宅用地。这就好比把印第安纳州的全部人口都迁到新泽西州的纽瓦克市，其拥挤程度可想而知！

香港人一直致力于开发新的建筑用地。人们往海里填入泥土和石头，把机场的跑道延伸到了港口。这种方式经常被用来创造更多的土地。山被挖掉，腾出平地盖房子和公寓楼。旧楼房不断被拆掉，重建更大的新楼。楼房都盖得很高，这样一块小小的土地就能够提供很大的居住空间。这和横向发展的悉尼很不一样！

还有很多香港人不试图在岸上找房子住，他们住在船上，船停泊在港口。这种船的甲板上方有个遮篷，人们把这种船叫做舢板。专门有设在船上的学校、商店和医生来为他们服务。这些人过去通常以捕鱼为生，但现在香港周围的海域受到严重污染，没有多少鱼可捕，他们中的大多数人只好去工厂工作，或者打打零工。

大部分香港人都是中国人。然而，1997年之前，管理香港的是英国人。英国的法律公正无私，人们十分信任政府。这种信任使得其他地方的人纷纷前往香港投资。

香港的工厂和艺术商店制造并出售很多美丽的物品，如鞋子、衣服、家具、雕刻和玉石首饰。香港的裁缝能够照着图画样式来做衣服。顾客自己挑选布料，一天后就可以拿到一套量身定做的新衣服了。

香港是个免税港。这意味着政府不对从其他国家进口的货物征税。很多人到香港只是为了购



物。由于免税，香港的商品价格很低。同样的商品在美国需要缴纳进口关税，价格就高很多。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国生活与“Made in China”

由于中国制造的商品性价比相对合理，标注有“Made in China”的货物（家具、电器、服装、玩具等）占据了大部分美国人的日常生活。甚至很多标榜“美国制造”的商品，其零件也来自中国。

《今日美国报》曾经这样描述美国人一天的生活，得出的结论是，美国人已经离不开“中国制造”：清晨6时，闹钟铃响，闹钟底部有“中国制造”字样。美国1/3以上的各类型进口钟，几乎都来自中国内地。6:10分，上洗手间，有塑胶遮帘；量体重，有‘健康牌’磅秤；做头发，有卷发器及吹风机，都是中国制造。7时，走进厨房，咖啡壶和茶壶可能来自中国，每个陶瓷餐盘都可能是中国制造。7:30分，着装，美国17%的进口成衣来自中国内地。8时，上班路上，许多人要使用移动电话，美国27%的进口手机来自中国内地。9时，进办公室，台灯有五成可能是中国的，掌中型电脑万用手册、“精工”牌英文拼字校正机、记事本及电话簿、塑料相框、木制书框、拆订书针的小文具、防止跳电的装置等，中国制造产品随处可见……熄灯前：床头灯和台灯一样，有五成可能来自中国，47%的吊灯来自中国。睡前，自然还得先调好那只中国制造的闹钟。

### A Humor 休闲时刻



What kind of cake tastes awful? Key: A cake of soap.

什么样的蛋糕味道糟糕？

一块香皂。

注释：“cake”是蛋糕的意思，但一块肥皂也可以称作“a cake of soap”。

#### Answer

- I. 1. Opium 2. Britain 3. Hong Kong Island, Kowloon, New Territories 4. polluted 5. British
- II. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. T
- III. 1. c 2. e 3. b 4. a 5. d
- IV. A. Dirt and rocks are brought in to the sea to make land.  
B. Mountains are dug out to make place for buildings.  
C. Old buildings are torn down to build bigger new ones.  
D. Very tall buildings are built to create more living space.

## 12

# Hong Kong, Marketplace of Asia (Part Two)

## 香港——亚洲的市场（下）



香港人最早是广东移民。港人身上兼具东方人的含蓄和西方人的直率。他们精明强干、坚韧不拔、脚踏实地。香港虽然接近于西化，然而他们身上还是带有强烈的亚洲人的传统，甚至与很多内地人相比都有过之而无不及。

### CHINESE LIFE

The people of Hong Kong are famous for their hard work. Many of the people were refugees who know what it is like to be starving. They are afraid to have that happen again and work hard to prevent it. Very few people in Hong Kong are Christians. They do not know how to trust God for their needs. They only know how to work and get more money.

People work long hours in the factories, they often get part-time jobs at night. Shopkeepers have their stores open sixteen hours a day, seven days a week. Children often work with their parents at home assembling<sup>1</sup> parts or packing goods to be shipped to other

countries. Most people want to save enough money to start their own business. Thousands of small shops in Hong Kong sell food, clothes, jewelry, shoes, and every other thing that can be bought or sold. That is another reason why so many people like to go shopping there.

The people of Hong Kong are also famous for their food, and visitors come for that as well. Housewives in Hong Kong insist on fresh food. They go to the market every day to buy their groceries, but these groceries are not like your nearby supermarket. The chicken or pig is alive until the cook buys it! Vegetables and fruit are freshly picked. The farmers in the New Territories grow eight crops a year to keep up with the demand for fresh food.

The restaurants in Hong Kong are famous all over the world. No one knows how many there are in the city. Hundreds of small businesses sell meals in little rooms and on street corners, but there are also huge, elegant<sup>2</sup> places that are very expensive. There you can get shark fin or bird's nest soup. You can also get Peking duck, which has been cooked for a whole day. The choices are endless. The people of Hong Kong love to eat out and expect to have many good choices.

The people of Hong Kong enjoy sports. They especially like soccer and cricket<sup>3</sup>, but both of those games require large fields to play, and open land is hard to find in Hong Kong. Basketball has become popular because it can be played on small city courts<sup>4</sup> or even on top of buildings.

In Hong Kong you can see a type of entertainment called Chinese opera. It is very beautiful. The actors dress in bright costumes and vivid makeup. The costumes are decorated with gold thread and feathers. The operas tell ancient Chinese stories using music and carefully planned movements of the hands. It is fun to watch even if you do not understand the words.

Chinese people love to gamble, and that is true in Hong Kong as well. A favorite game is mah-jong, which is similar to<sup>2</sup> poker, but is played with small domino-shaped blocks instead of cards. The Royal Jockey Club

racetrack<sup>5</sup> raises money for<sup>3</sup> worthy causes by giving away<sup>4</sup> most of the gambling money spent at the horse races.

Several important festivals are celebrated in Hong Kong during the year. Often these are based on<sup>5</sup> the Chinese religion which believes in many false gods and spirits. The most important festival is the Chinese New Year in late January or early February. This is the most important celebration in the Chinese culture. Everything is scrubbed clean, people get new clothes, everyone eats all they can, and gifts of money are exchanged<sup>6</sup>. In mid-June there is a Dragon Boat Festival. Beautifully decorated Dragon Boats race each other in the harbor. Another festival honors the Chinese goddess of the sea with a parade of decorated boats.

Even though few people in Hong Kong are farmers, there is a harvest festival in the fall, also.

The island of Cheung Chau in Hong Kong also celebrates the Bun<sup>7</sup> Festival in spring. A four-day holiday is held for the ghosts of people killed by pirates that used to live on the island. The festival is to make them happy. Tall towers of buns are set out<sup>6</sup> to feed the ghosts. Since there are really no ghosts, real people take the buns to eat. The buns are considered lucky. The ones higher up on the tower are the luckiest, so the young men race each other to the top to get the highest buns.

The Chinese religion is very different

from Christianity. It is a mixture of many religions. Confucianism is a belief in the importance of good behavior. Confucius taught people to honor their parents, tell the truth, and work hard. Confucius was the most important person in Chinese history. Most Chinese people try to follow his teachings. But Chinese people also believe in Taoism (dau'iz əm), which teaches that there are many small gods that protect the sea, travelers, kitchens, and everything else. Buddhism is also part of the Chinese religion. It came from India and teaches that when you die you are born again as another person on earth. The people of Hong Kong believe all of these teachings and more.

Most important of all, the Chinese people believe in good and bad luck. They always consult<sup>8</sup> a *feng shui* man, or fortune<sup>9</sup> teller, before they do anything important. This person tells them exactly what to do to have good luck. They may have to make an offering<sup>10</sup> to the gods, wear a certain color, or even rearrange<sup>11</sup> the furniture in their apartment! The *Bible* tells us not to listen to fortune tellers because they do not speak from God. The people of Hong Kong spend much money and time trying to find and keep good luck. Jesus teaches us that we need salvation<sup>12</sup> and to trust him to direct our lives.

注：本课选自四年级《历史与地理》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. assemble [ə'sembl] vt. 收集, 集合, 装配     | 8. consult [kən'sʌlt] vt. 请教, 咨询            |
| 2. elegant ['elɪɡənt] adj. 优雅的, 端庄的, 高雅的 | 9. fortune ['fɔ:tʃən] n. 财富, 运气, 命运         |
| 3. cricket ['kri:kɪt] n. 板球              | 10. offering ['ɒfərɪŋ] n. 贡献; 祭品, (给教会的) 捐款 |
| 4. court [kɔ:t] n. 庭院; 法庭; 球场            | 11. rearrange ['ri:ə'reɪndʒ] vt. 重新整顿, 重新排列 |
| 5. racetrack ['reɪstræk] n. 比赛跑道         | 12. salvation [sæl'veɪʃən] n. 拯救, 救助, 救世    |
| 6. exchange [ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ] v. 交易, 交换      |   |
| 7. bun [bʌn] n. 小面包                      |   |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. insist on sth/insist that...坚持……

可后接名词和从句。若接从句，作“坚持说”时，要用陈述语气；作“坚决主张，坚决要求”讲时，用虚拟语气。

e.g. He insisted that he was innocent. = He insisted on his innocence.

他坚持说自己是无辜的。

They insisted that he (should) be present at the ceremony. = They insisted on his being present at the ceremony.

他们坚决要求他出席这次典礼。

### 2. be similar to 与……相似

e.g. His teaching style is similar to other teachers.

他的教学风格与其他教师类似。

### 3. raise money for 为……筹集资金

e.g. Tonight's performance is to raise money for a charitable cause.

今晚的演出是为慈善事业募捐。

### 4. give away 捐赠，分发

e.g. He gave away most of his money to church.

他把大部分的财产捐给了教会。

The headmaster was giving away prizes to the winners.

校长正在为获胜者颁奖。

### 5. base on 以……为基础，根据……

e.g. What are you basing your judgment on?

你的判断以何为据？

Their criticisms were based on ignorance.

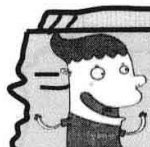
他们的批评基于无知。

### 6. set sth out 摆放，陈列

e.g. We will need to set out some chairs for the meeting.

我们需要为会议摆些椅子。





## Exercise 牛刀小试

### Put the correct answer in the blank.

1. The people of Hong Kong are famous for their \_\_\_\_\_ and their \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The most important celebration in the Chinese culture is the \_\_\_\_\_.
3. In spring, the island of Cheung Chau celebrates the \_\_\_\_\_ to make ghosts happy.
4. A favorite gambling game is \_\_\_\_\_, which uses small blocks like dominoes.
5. Cooks insist that the food they buy should be \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ tells ancient Chinese stories using beautiful costumes, music, and hand movements.
7. People come to Hong Kong for the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It is hard to play soccer and cricket because both require \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Farmers in the New Territories grow \_\_\_\_\_ crops a year.
10. The three religions that are a part of Chinese beliefs are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The people of Hong Kong always ask the advice of a \_\_\_\_\_ before making any important decision.
12. The most important man in Chinese history was \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The people of Hong Kong spend a great deal of effort to find and keep \_\_\_\_\_.

### 参考译文

#### 中国人的生活

香港人以勤劳肯干著称于世。他们中的很多人都曾经是难民，知道挨饿的滋味。他们害怕重新经历那种苦难，为使其不再发生，他们努力工作。很少香港人是基督徒。他们不知道如何仰仗

上帝以获得自己所需的一切。他们只知道怎么去好好工作挣更多的钱。

工人工作很长时间，还经常在晚上做兼职。商店每天营业16个小时，一周营业七天。孩子们在家也总是和父母一起干活，或组装零部件，或

包装出口的货物。很多人都想攒钱自己做生意。香港有上千个小商店，卖食物、衣服、珠宝首饰、鞋子以及其他任何可以买卖的东西。这也是为什么那么多人喜欢到香港购物的原因。

香港菜也很有名，游客到香港也是为了品尝美食。香港的主妇们坚持要选用新鲜的食材。她们每天上市场买菜，但她们买的菜跟我们在附近超市里买的不一样。鸡和猪都是现宰现卖，蔬菜水果也是刚从地里采摘回来的。为了满足人们对新鲜食物的需求，新界的农民一年种植八季。

香港的饭馆在全世界享有盛名。没有人说得清香港到底有多少家饭馆。卖吃食的小店和路边摊就有好几百个。除此之外，在一些宽敞、豪华的高档场所你可以吃到鱼翅、燕窝和精心烹制了一整天的北京烤鸭。各式菜肴应有尽有。香港人喜欢到饭馆吃饭，期待有很多美食可供选择。

香港人热爱体育运动，尤其足球和板球。但足球和板球都需要很大的场地，而这在香港很难办到。所以，篮球因其可以在市内的小球场甚至是大楼楼顶进行而受到大众欢迎。

在香港你可以看到一种叫戏曲表演的娱乐活动。戏曲表演赏心悦目。演员穿着鲜艳的戏服，画着生动的脸谱。戏服上有金线和羽毛做的装饰。戏曲结合音乐和精心设计的动作讲述中国古代的故事。即使你听不明白唱词，看着仍然觉得很有趣。

中国人喜欢博彩，香港人也如此。他们喜欢打麻将，类似于扑克，但使用的不是纸牌，而是类似于多米诺骨牌的方块。香港皇家赛马会把人们赛马的大部分赌注捐出用于公益事业。

香港一年当中有几个重要的节日。这些节日多与中国宗教里的神灵有关。其中最重要的是二月底或二月初的春节。这是中国传统文化里最

重要的庆祝活动。所有东西都要刷洗一新，人们都要穿新衣服，尽情吃喝，给长辈和小孩红包。到了六月中旬的端午节，装饰得五彩斑斓的龙舟在海港里比赛，你追我赶的。尽管香港的农民很少，秋天还是有个丰收节。

香港的长洲岛每年春天有个“包山节”。庆典为期四天，目的是为了祭祀从前被岛上的海盗杀害的人们，令那些亡灵安息。人们用包子搭成高塔，供鬼魂享用。但由于世上并没有鬼，最后包子都是让活人吃了。这些包子被看做是幸运的象征，在塔上的位置越高，就越幸运。为此，年轻人比赛爬上包子塔，抢夺塔顶的包子。

中国的宗教与基督教大不相同，它是多种宗教的混合体。以孔子为代表的儒教思想注重“礼”。孔子教导人们要孝敬父母、诚实和勤奋。孔子是中国历史上最重要的人物，大多数中国人都努力遵循他的教导。然而中国人也笃信道教，道教认为世上有很多神灵保护着海洋、旅人、厨房及其他一切事物。佛教也是中国宗教的一个组成部分。佛教传自印度，宣扬生命轮回。除了佛教，香港人还有别的宗教信仰。

最重要的是，中国人相信吉利和不吉利的说法。在做任何大事之前，他们总要去请教风水先生或者算命先生。这位先生就会告诉他们具体怎么做才能求得吉利。他们可能得向神灵献祭许愿，穿某个颜色的衣服，甚至重新摆放家里的家具！香港人总是花大量的钱财和时间，试图找到并保留好运气。而《圣经》教导我们不要听信算命之人，因其所言绝非上帝之意。耶稣教导我们，我们需要救赎，应该信任他来引导我们的生活方向。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国的中餐

很多美国人喜欢吃中餐。但这些深受美国人欢迎的中国菜并不是我们国内所说各大菜系的菜式，而主要是由早期中国移民带去的、有些已经进入英文词汇的菜式，如炒杂碎、烧卖、春卷、柠檬鸡、糖醋肉、酸辣汤等。这些菜品的特点是油炸，配以浓厚的酱汁，酸甜口味。这一类食物是美式中餐的主流。

美国还有另一类中餐馆，是新一代中国移民带进去的，卖真正中餐，和国内吃到的一模一样。这类餐馆最初多为台湾人或香港人开办，以台湾菜和粤菜为主。这些年随着中国移民的增加，中国各地的代表菜系纷纷登陆美国，国内一些连锁店也在美国开了分店，如小肥羊、毛家菜馆等。也有不少美国人喜欢这类中餐，尤其是川菜和粤菜。

此外，还有一些高档中餐厅把中国菜做得像法国菜那样精致，但价格昂贵，在美国上流社会很受欢迎。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

In unity there is strength.

团结就是力量。

Nothing hurts like the truth.

真相最伤人。

The grass is always greener on the other side of the fence.

这山望着那山高。

The bigger they are, the harder they fall.

爬得高，摔得狠。

### Answer

1. food, restaurants
2. Chinese New Year
3. Bun Festival
4. mah-jong
5. fresh
6. Chinese opera.
7. goods, food
8. large fields
9. eight
10. Confucianism, Taoism, Buddhism
11. feng shui man, or fortune teller
12. Confucius
13. good luck



# Part 3

## Science

### 自然科学

# 1

# Four Seasons

## 四季



在一年之中，由于太阳辐射有规律地变化，导致地球上春夏秋冬的循环周期，对纬度地区来讲是四季变化。四季是地球公转引起的自然现象之一。四季的划分方法主要有两种：我国与一些国家不同，以立春、立夏、立秋、立冬作为春、夏、秋、冬各季节的起点，使春分、夏至、秋分、冬至正好是各季节的中间；一些国家使用另一种划分方法，分别以春分、夏至、秋分、冬至作为各季节的起点。

### WINTER AND SUMMER

Winter and summer happen because the earth is tilted as it *revolves*<sup>1</sup> around the sun. The northern end of the earth's *axis*<sup>2</sup> points toward the sun in summer. You have more hours of light in summer. Your part of the earth is toward the sun for more hours each day. When the part of the earth where you live is toward the sun you have hotter days. In winter, when your part of the earth points away from the sun, you have colder days.

### FOUR SEASONS

When your town has winter, the earth's axis is pointed away from the sun. Your town does not get as much light or heat from the sun. The days are shorter and colder.

### SPRING AND FALL

We have learned about winter and

summer. There are two more seasons in the year. One comes after winter and before summer. The other season comes after summer and before winter. Can you name them? That's right. Spring comes between winter and summer and fall comes after summer but before winter.

The four seasons are spring, summer, fall and winter. Spring and fall are *opposite*<sup>3</sup> seasons. Which one do you like best?

You have thought about the four seasons of the year. Each season is different. The seasons are made by the north end of the axis pointing toward or away from the sun.

Your part of the world gets more heat from the sun when the north end of the axis points to the sun. When the axis points away from the sun, you get less heat. Now you know why winter is colder than summer. The axis is pointing away from the sun in winter. It is pointing toward the sun in summer.

God made the earth and the sun. He



planned that the earth should tilt and revolve to make the seasons change. How do we know? God's Word tells us. In Daniel 2:20 and 21 it says, "... Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are His: And

He changes the times and the seasons..."

Days, years, and seasons are all in God's wonderful plan for the earth. How does God change the seasons? Now you know.

注：本文选自三年级《自然科学——地球的转动》课本，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **revolve** [rɪ'vɒlv] *vi.* 旋转, (天体) 公转
2. **axis** ['æksɪs] *n.* 轴, 中心线
3. **opposite** ['ɒpəzɪt] *adj.* 对面的; 对立的, 相反的



## Sentence 语句荟萃

比较for和because引导的原因状语从句:

① **because**表示直接的原因或理由, 着重点在从句, 用于回答why。分句位置可前可后。

e.g. He is absent from school today because he is ill.

他因为病了, 今天没来上学。

② **for**引导的从句通常并不说明主句行为发生的直接原因, 只是提供一些补充说明。for表示原因时可与because互相替换, 所不同的是for从句只能放在主句之后。

e.g. I didn't go to the library, for something unexpected happened.

我没去图书馆, 因为临时出了点事。

有时, for从句并不表示原因, 而是表示推测或判断, because则没有这种用法。

e.g. Someone in the house must be ill, for a doctor has just come out.

那座房子里肯定有人生病了, 因为刚刚有一个医生从里面走了出来。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### Fill in the blanks with correct words.

1. Winter is \_\_\_\_\_ than fall.
2. The north end of the earth's axis points \_\_\_\_\_ the sun in winter.
3. In winter \_\_\_\_\_ hours have light than in summer.
4. In winter the heat from the sun is \_\_\_\_\_ than in summer.
5. Winter comes \_\_\_\_\_ fall.
6. In summer there are more hours of \_\_\_\_\_ than in other seasons.
7. The northern end of the earth's axis points to the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Fall is \_\_\_\_\_ than winter.

### 参考译文

#### 冬季和夏季

冬夏的形成是由于地球围绕太阳公转时有一个倾斜的角度。夏季，地轴的北端朝向太阳，日照时间较长，你所在的地区每日面向太阳的时间也较长，此时天气比较热。冬季，你所在的地区背离太阳，天气就比较冷。

#### 四季

你所在的城镇处于冬季时，地轴偏离太阳。你所在的城镇从太阳获得的光和热都减少，白天变短，气温降低。

#### 春季和秋季

我们已经学习了冬季和夏季。一年当中还有另外两个季节。一个在冬天之后夏天之前，另一个在夏天之后冬天之前。你能说出是哪两个吗？没错。春天处在冬夏之间，秋天则在夏冬之间。

四个季节分别是春、夏、秋、冬。春与秋相对。四季中你最喜欢哪一个季节？

好好思考一下这四个季节。它们各不相同，由地轴的指向与背离太阳而形成。

当地轴的北端指向太阳，你所在的地区从太阳那儿得到较多的热量。若地轴远离太阳，获得的热量就相应地减少。这样你就明白了冬天比夏天寒冷的原因。地轴在冬季远离太阳，夏季则指向太阳。

上帝创造了地球与太阳。他让地球倾斜着围绕太阳公转，使四季得以轮换。这一点我们从何而知？《圣经》告诉了我们答案。《但以理书》2:20-21写道，“神的名是应当称颂的，从亘古直到永远，因为智慧和力量都属于他。他改变时

间和季节……”

每一天，每一年，四季都是上帝对这个地球的安排。上帝是怎么改变四季的？你们现在已经知道了。

## “美”事一桩

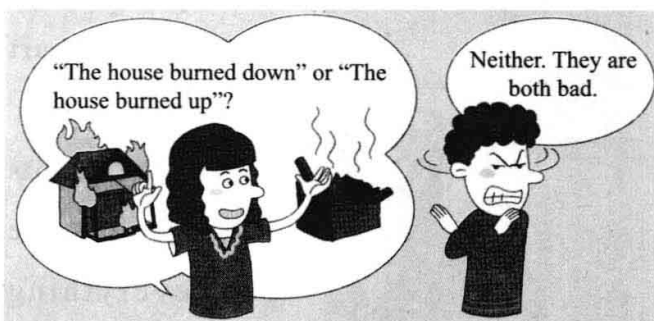
### 美国的气候

美国与中国同处北半球，地理纬度也差不多，因此美国的季节和中国一样。

美国气候有许多不同的类型，有些地区非常炎热，有些地区则非常寒冷；有些地方雨水过于丰沛，有些地区雨水则不足。然而大多数地区的气候都很温和，这种温和的气候推动国家工业的快速发展，也提高美国农业的经济成长。而亚利桑那、南加州、佛罗里达和夏威夷，也因为冬天温和的气候，观光事业兴盛。

降水量(如雨、溶雪、霜与雹)在美国的分布均匀。不过，西部大部分地区较为干燥。内华达州平均年降雨量188.5毫米，而最多雨的路易斯安那州平均一年竟有1432.1毫米的降雨量。美国最潮湿的地方是夏威夷考艾岛的卫阿里拉山，年平均降雨量高达11,700毫米；最干燥的地方是加州的死谷，年平均降雨量甚至不到50毫米；死谷也是美国最热的地方，最高气温曾高达57℃，这是1913年7月10日的纪录。美国最低气温是-62℃，这是1971年1月在阿拉斯加普洛斯派湾所创下的纪录。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



房子是烧毁了还是烧光了啊？

都不是，它们都不好。

注释：“burn down”指建筑物被烧毁，“burn up”指某种东西被烧得一干二净。不管是哪个短语，结果都一样糟糕。

“burn sb up”指使某人很生气。

### Answer

1. colder 2. away from 3. fewer 4. less 5. after 6. light 7. sun 8. warmer

# Leaves

## 叶子



含有叶绿素的植物的叶子，能利用空气中的二氧化碳、阳光、水分及矿物质制造出自己需要的食物；同时还能利用光合作用产生氧气，而且还能起到防风固沙，优化环境，保持生态平衡的作用。

Each *leaf* is a factory that makes something that only a green leaf can make. God put *chlorophyll*<sup>1</sup> into green leaves. This “green stuff” helps make different kinds of food. The food is made *right*<sub>1</sub> in the plant. Some food is stored in the fruit of the plant. Some is stored in the *stems*<sup>2</sup> and some in the roots. The food is useful to the plant. When it is eaten by an animal, the animal gets the food and energy from the plant.

The way by which plants make food is called *photosynthesis*<sup>3</sup> (*photo* sin *thu* sus). *Photo* comes from a word meaning *light*. *Synthesis* means *a putting together*. *Photosynthesis* means *putting something together in sunlight to make food*. When the sun shines, the plant puts certain things together to make food. For this reason, the leaf is like a factory.

When the leaves are working to make food, they are making sugar. The plant then

changes the sugar into other kinds of food such as *starch*<sup>4</sup>, *fats*, *proteins*<sup>5</sup>, and *vitamins*<sup>6</sup>. All these foods are needed to help us grow.



Most leaves have only two parts: the stem and the *blade*<sup>7</sup>. The stem holds the leaf on the plant and the blade is the food maker.

Besides helping to make food, the leaf



of a plant has another very important part to play in the *chain*<sup>8</sup> of life. If no plants or leaves were in the world, everything would die. Also, if the plants which God created became

confused and did the wrong thing, we would live for only a very short time. But God created them just right!

When we breathe, we exhale<sup>9</sup> carbon dioxide<sup>10</sup> into the air. Plants take this gas and separate it into carbon and oxygen. Then the plant combines it with<sub>2</sub> the water in the leaf. While this process is going on, the leaves are sending out<sub>3</sub> oxygen for animals and us to breathe. Isn't God good to us to have made everything work just right?

When a leaf falls from a tree and dies, its work is not over. The wind blows it from the tree. It falls to the ground. The rains come and soak<sup>11</sup> the leaf. During the day, the sun shines

and warms it. What happens? The leaf after many days decays<sup>12</sup>. When it was living it used minerals from the soil to make food. Then, as the leaf decays, the minerals which came from the soil go back to the soil. The plant, the leaf, the wind, the animals, and decay all work together to keep life going. This process is called the decay cycle<sup>13</sup>.

This process is beneficial<sup>14</sup> to the forest and prepares the soil for new plant growth. Man, insects, fire and careless cutting methods can be enemies to the natural process. These enemies can remove the trees from<sub>4</sub> the forest. The decay cycle is interrupted<sup>15</sup> which reduces the ability of the soil to grow new plants.

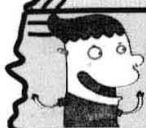
注：本课选自四年级《自然科学——植物》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. chlorophyll ['klɔ:rəfil] <i>n.</i> 叶绿素           | 9. exhale [eks'heil] <i>vt.</i> 呼出                       |
| 2. stem [stem] <i>n.</i> 茎, 干, 花梗, 叶柄               | 10. carbon dioxide ['kɑ:bən] [daɪ'ɒksaɪd] <i>n.</i> 二氧化碳 |
| 3. photosynthesis [ˌfəʊtəʊ'sɪnθəsis] <i>n.</i> 光合作用 | 11. soak [səʊk] <i>vt.</i> 浸泡, 使湿透                       |
| 4. starch [sta:tʃ] <i>n.</i> 淀粉                     | 12. decay [di'keɪ] <i>v./n.</i> 腐烂                       |
| 5. protein ['prəʊti:n] <i>n.</i> 蛋白质                | 13. cycle ['saɪkl] <i>n.</i> 周期, 循环                      |
| 6. vitamin ['vɪtəmin] <i>n.</i> 维生素                 | 14. beneficial [benɪ'fɪʃəl] <i>adj.</i> 有利的, 有益的         |
| 7. blade [bleɪd] <i>n.</i> 叶片; 刀刃                   | 15. interrupt [ˌɪntə'rʌpt] <i>vt.</i> 中断; 截断; 阻碍         |
| 8. chain [tʃeɪn] <i>n.</i> 链, 锁链                    |  |





## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. right *adv.* exactly, directly 正好, 恰好, 直接地

e.g. I turned back and saw my teacher was standing right behind me.

我转过身去, 看见老师就站在我身后。

The train arrived at the station right on time.

火车准时到站。

### 2. combine... with... 与……结合

e.g. We must combine theory with practice.

我们要把理论与实践结合起来。

To make cake, you have to combine eggs with flour, sugar and water.

要做蛋糕, 就要把蛋、面粉、糖和水搅拌均匀。

### 3. send out 分发, 散发; 发出(光、热、信号、声音等)

e.g. I forgot to send out your letter this morning.

今天早上我忘记把你的信发出去了。

The sun sends out light and heat continuously.

太阳源源不断地散发出光和热。

### 4. remove...from... 移开, 拿开, 去掉

e.g. The boy is removed from school.

那个男孩被学校开除了。

This washing powder can remove stubborn stains from clothes easily.

这种洗衣粉能够轻松去除衣物上的顽固污渍。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Reading comprehension.

1. Which part of a plant makes food?

A. The root. B. The stem. C. The flower. D. The leaf.

2. In which part of a plant is food not stored?

A. The fruit. B. The stem. C. The leaf. D. The root.

3. The plants takes in carbon dioxide but gives out \_\_\_\_\_.

A. oxygen B. water C. hydrogen D. protein

## II. Choose the correct words from the word box to fill in the blanks

**leaf, minerals, green, season, decay cycle, rain, paint, deep, together, work, near**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ helped the plants grow by giving them water.

2. The flowers \_\_\_\_\_ the road were growing well.

3. The roots of the tree were \_\_\_\_\_ roots which took up the water and minerals.

4. Everyone wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ a picture of the flowers.

5. Flowers grow in the right \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The grass looked \_\_\_\_\_ after the rain.

7. God wants His creation to \_\_\_\_\_ together.

8. The \_\_\_\_\_ shows how created things work together.

9. When a \_\_\_\_\_ dies, its work is not over.

10. The leaf returns its \_\_\_\_\_ to the soil.

11. People, too, must work \_\_\_\_\_.

### 参考译文

每片叶子都是一个工厂，生产只有绿叶才制造得出来的东西。上帝在绿叶当中放入了叶绿

素。这种绿色的东西能够帮助制造出各种食物。食物就在植物内部制造完成。有些食物储存在果

实之中，有些则储存在根茎。这些食物对植物很有用。植物被动物吃掉时，这些食物和能量就转移到动物体内。

植物制造食物的过程称为光合作用(photosynthesis)。其中“photo”意为“光线”，“synthesis”意为“合成”。光合作用就是指利用阳光将某物合成为食物。有太阳的时候，植物用某些东西来合成食物。因此，叶子就像是一个工厂。

叶子制造的食物实际上是糖，然后植物把这些糖转化成其他食物，如淀粉、脂肪、蛋白质和维生素等。我们的生长需要这些食物。

大多数叶子都只有两个组成部分：叶柄和叶片。叶柄将叶子与植物连在一起，叶片制造食物。

除了帮助制造食物之外，叶子在自然界的生命链之中还有另一个极其重要的作用——制造氧气。假如世界上没有植物或叶子，就没有任何东西能够存活；又或者上帝创造的这些植物出了差错，不制造氧气了，我们也无法继续生存。但是

上帝把它们安排得刚刚好！

呼吸时我们把二氧化碳排入到空气中。植物吸入二氧化碳，分离出碳和氧气，然后与叶子中的水结合。随着这个化学反应过程的进行，叶片不断释放出供人和动物呼吸的氧气。上帝真是对我们太好了，他什么事情都为我们安排好了。

叶片从树上凋落之后，它的使命还未完成。风把它吹落到地上，然后又经雨淋日晒，许多天之后，叶子腐烂了。活着时它用从土壤里吸收的矿物质来制造食物，腐烂之后那些矿物质又回到土壤里。植物、叶子、动物和腐烂机制共同作用，使生命不断延续下去。这称为腐烂循环过程。

这个过程对森林意义重大，它能使土壤重新变得肥沃，适合新的植物生长。人类、昆虫、火灾和随意砍伐等因素都会对这个过程造成破坏。因为这些因素会使森林里的树木减少从而扰乱腐烂循环，降低土壤的肥沃程度，以致最终影响新植物的再生。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国的牛仔文化

牛仔(cowboy)是指在美洲牧场上照顾牛和马的人。“cowboy”这个词实际上来源于西班牙语，由西班牙语“vaquero”直译而来。“vaquero”发展于词根“vaca”，意思是“牛”，因此“vaquero”翻译成英语就是“cowboy”。最早的牛仔是那些来美洲居住的欧洲人后裔。在美国东海岸登陆的英国和法国殖民者根本不熟悉西班牙人的畜牧方式，他们开始只会采用圈养的方式养牛。当围栏里的草被牛吃完后，牛群就被赶到一个新的有草的地方继续放养。这样的牧牛人在英语中被称为“driver”。而西班牙人不像其他殖民地的殖民者一样因躲避政治、宗教迫害而来，他们是贵族、冒险家，他们严谨、聪明，有绅士风度，有胆识，富于野心，爱冒险，喜欢表现自己。他们养牛的方式

是真正的放牧，把牛放到没有边际的草原中，牛仔们骑马随牛群驰骋。这些西班牙人的精神代表了传统的牛仔精神。在新墨西哥州的乡下居住着这样一些传统牛仔，他们就是遍布美国的西班牙人后裔，他们的血统和文化一直被很好地保存了下来。

在牛仔聚集的草原地区，如得克萨斯州和俄勒冈州，各县镇每年都会举行牛仔竞技活动( rodeo)。比赛项目大概有七八种，分为裸骑(bareback riding)，鞍骑(saddle bronc riding)，套牛捆绑(tie down roping)，团队套牛(team roping)，越障碍马术(barrel racing)，骑牛(bull riding)等等。其中驯马、斗牛、捆牛这种比较狂野的项目都是男孩子们(cowboys)完成，而套牛，越障碍这种轻灵的动作则由女孩子(cowgirls)们来完成。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

The best things in life are free.

最好的东西不花钱。

Bad news travels fast.

坏事传千里。

Love makes the world go round.

爱推动世界。

Better safe than sorry.

稳妥第一。

### Answer

I. 1. D 2. C 3. A

II. 1. rain 2. near 3. deep 4. paint 5. season 6. green

7. work 8. decay cycle 9. leaf 10. minerals

11. together

# Rocks

## 岩石



地球形成之初，地核的引力把宇宙中的尘埃吸过来，凝聚的尘埃就变成了山石，经过风化，变成了岩石。岩石分为火成岩、水成岩和变质岩三大类。

Have you ever walked in a lake or ocean and stepped on something big and said, "Ouch!" Your friend asked you what it was and you might have said, "It was just a rock." Just a rock. Just a plain old rock. Now that, you have studied about rocks, you know that rocks can look different.

Rocks look different because they have been formed in different ways and have different minerals in them. Minerals are elements<sup>1</sup> and compounds that are part of the earth's crust. How a rock looks depends on, the way its minerals and other materials have been combined<sup>2</sup>.

When magma<sup>3</sup> flows out of a volcano, it is called lava. Most magma though does not reach the earth's surface. It cools and hardens very slowly below the surface and forms igneous<sup>4</sup> rock. Igneous rocks include granite<sup>5</sup>,

basalt<sup>6</sup>, obsidian<sup>7</sup>, and pumice<sup>8</sup>, a rock so light it will float on water.

Sedimentary<sup>9</sup> rocks are formed from sediment carried by streams, rivers and floods. Probably many sedimentary rocks were formed during the world-wide flood. Grains of matter and minerals settled to the bottom of the ocean and slowly hardened into rock. Sometimes the





shells of tiny sea animals became mixed into the rock. Limestone<sup>10</sup>, chalk and sandstone are types of sedimentary rock.

Another type of rock is metamorphic<sup>11</sup> rock. The word metamorphic means, “changed in form.” Metamorphic rock occurs when an igneous or sedimentary rock is changed by the heat and pressure of magma near it.

The minerals in this type of rock are changed. Marble and hard coal are metamorphic rocks, so is slate<sup>12</sup>.

While heat and pressure form rocks, some

other things can change them. Water is one thing that changes rocks because it gradually erodes<sup>13</sup> them. Hot and cold weather can cause rocks to change. The sun heats up the rocks so they are very warm. At night they often cool down so fast that they crack<sup>14</sup> in places. Then they begin to break apart. Plants also help change rocks. Lichens<sup>15</sup> are good at breaking down rocks. The roots of some plants can also help crack and crumble<sup>16</sup> rocks. In some parts of the world, ice and wind help erode and change rock.

注：本文选自三年级《自然科学——物理变化》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. element ['elɪmənt] *n.* 要素, 因素; 成分, 组成部分

2. combine [kəm'baɪn] *v.* 联合, 结合, 融合

3. magma ['mægmə] *n.* 【地质】岩浆, 浮悬液

4. igneous ['ɪɡniəs] *adj.* 火的, 含有火的, 引发出火的

5. granite ['grænaɪt] *n.* 花岗岩

6. basalt ['bæso:lt] *n.* 玄武岩

7. obsidian [ɒb'sɪdɪən] *n.* 黑曜石

8. pumice ['pʌmɪs] *n.* 浮石

9. sedimentary [sedɪ'mentəri] *adj.* 沉淀物的,

由沉淀物所生成的

sediment ['sedɪmənt] *n.* 沉淀物, 沉积

10. limestone ['laɪmstəʊn] *n.* 石灰石

11. metamorphic [,metə'mɔ:fɪk] *adj.* 变态的, 变化的, 改变结构的

12. slate [sleɪt] *n.* 页岩

13. erode [ɪ'rəʊd] *vt.* 侵蚀, 腐蚀

14. crack [kræk] *v.* 断裂, 裂开

15. lichen ['laɪkən] *n.* 地衣, 苔藓

16. crumble ['krʌmbəl] *vt.* 弄碎, 粉碎



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. now (that)... 既然, 由于

e.g. Now that the children have all left home, we have a lot of extra space in the house.

孩子们都离开家了, 我们的房子宽敞多了。

Now that you have heard something about it, I will tell you all the details.

既然你已经听说了, 我就把详情告诉你吧。

### 2. depend on/upon 依靠, 依赖

e.g. People have always depended on rituals.

一直以来, 人们都按照老规矩行事。

She is a woman who can be depended upon.

她是个可以信赖的人

### 3. break apart 破裂, 裂开

e.g. Yugoslavia broke apart after 1989.

1989年后南斯拉夫分裂了。

The airplane suddenly broke apart in midair over east California.

飞机在加州东部的上空爆炸了。

### 4. break down 分解, 破坏; 出故障, 坏掉

e.g. Sugar and starch are broken down in the stomach.

糖和淀粉在胃里被分解。

At last, the peace talk broke down.

最后, 和谈以失败告终。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Classify the types of rock. Using I for igneous, S for sedimentary, and M for metamorphic.

A. basalt \_\_\_\_\_ B. marble \_\_\_\_\_ C. limestone \_\_\_\_\_ D. slate \_\_\_\_\_  
 E. chalk \_\_\_\_\_ F. granite \_\_\_\_\_ G. obsidian \_\_\_\_\_ H. sandstone \_\_\_\_\_

## II. Answer this question:

What are the six forces that change and break down rocks?

## III. Complete these sentences.

1. Rocks look different because they have different \_\_\_\_\_ in them.
2. Minerals are part of the earth's \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When \_\_\_\_\_ cools and hardens below the earth's surface, it forms igneous rock.
4. Grains of materials and minerals settled to the bottom of the ocean and slowly hardened into \_\_\_\_\_ rock.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ can change an igneous or sedimentary rock into metamorphic rock.

## 参考译文

你是否曾经在湖水或者海水里走着，然后一脚踩到个大大的东西，你一下子叫出声来，“哎哟！”朋友问你踩到了什么，你回答道，“没什么，不过是块石头。”不过是块石头，一块普普通通毫不起眼的石头。学习了跟岩石有关的知识之后，你就会知道岩石看上去是不一样的。

岩石之所以看上去不一样，是因为它们的形成方式和含有的矿物质不同。矿物质是构成地壳的化学元素和化合物。岩石的相貌特征取决于其所含的矿物质与其他成分的结合方式。

岩浆从火山喷发出来之后称为熔岩。但大部分岩浆都不能够到达地表，而是在地下慢慢冷却、变硬，形成火成岩。火成岩包括花岗岩、玄武岩、黑曜石和浮石（一种很轻可以浮在水面上的石头）。

沉积岩由小溪、河流及洪水所携带的沉积物

沉淀而成。很多沉积岩可能是在大洪水时期形成的。各种物质和矿物颗粒沉到海底，逐渐变硬成为岩石。有时候一些海洋小动物的壳也会掺和进来，成为沉积岩的一部分。石灰石、白垩和砂岩都属于沉积岩。

还有一类岩石叫变质(metamorphic)岩。metamorphic意为“改变了形状的”。热力和岩浆的压力作用都能使火成岩或沉积岩的矿物质发生改变，成为变质岩。大理石、无烟煤和页岩都是变质岩。

热力和压力造就岩石，其他因素却能够改变岩石。水就是其中之一，因为水流的冲刷会逐渐侵蚀岩石。气温的冷热对岩石也有改变作用。白天，太阳把岩石晒热；到了夜晚，温度的骤然下降使岩石先是出现裂痕，而后分崩离析。植物也是改变岩石的因素之一，地衣就是分裂岩石的高

手。某些植物的根系也能做到这一点。在某些地区，腐蚀岩石的则是冰和风的作用力。

## “美”事一桩

### 夏威夷群岛

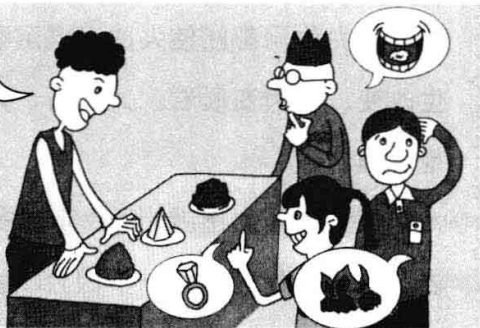
夏威夷是美国的第50个州，位于太平洋中部，战略位置十分重要。夏威夷主要有8个大岛和120多个小岛，是美国唯一白种人不过半数的州。白种人约占1/3，其余为日本人、玻利尼西亚人、菲律宾人、中国人、朝鲜人。其首府和最大城市是火奴鲁鲁（檀香山）。约5世纪时，玻利尼西亚人从南太平洋移至此。1795年大部岛屿被卡麦哈麦哈一世所征服，1810年建夏威夷王国。1893年王国被推翻，次年建共和国，1898年被美国吞并，1959年成为美国的一州。

夏威夷群岛是火山岛，也是太平洋上有名的火山活动区。因为这些岛屿正位于太平洋底地壳断裂带上，夏威夷群岛都是由地壳断裂处喷发出的岩浆形成的。直至现在，一些岛上的火山口还经常发生火山喷发活动。如夏威夷岛上的基拉韦厄火山、冒纳罗亚火山，毛伊岛上的哈里阿卡拉火山，都是经常喷发的现代活火山。火山地貌使得夏威夷各个岛屿都是地势起伏的山地和丘陵，平原很少。这也形成了夏威夷群岛美丽独特的自然景色。

夏威夷群岛尽管位于热带太平洋上，但气温并不很高，也不太潮湿，一年四季气温都在14~32℃之间，变化很小，很适合人们生活。如果居住在山区，气候更加凉爽宜人。

### A Humor 休闲时刻

1. What kind of rock do we eat?
  2. What kind of rock cuts all other rocks?
  3. What kind of rock do we burn?
- Key: 1. salt  
2. diamond  
3. coal



1. 我们吃哪种岩石?
2. 哪种岩石可以划开其他岩石?
3. 我们烧哪种岩石?

答案: 1. 盐 2. 钻石 3. 煤

#### Answer

- I. a. I b. M c. S d. M e. S f. I g. I h. S
- II. Heat, cold, wind, plants, ice and water.
- III. 1. minerals 2. crust 3. magma 4. sedimentary  
5. heat, pressure

# Shape of the Earth

4

## 地球的形状



地球是太阳系从内到外的第三颗行星，也是太阳系中直径、质量和密度最大的类地行星。科学家经过长期的精密测量，发现地球并不是一个规则球体，而是一个两极稍扁、赤道略鼓的不规则球体。

The shape of Earth was a mystery to people for many years. Many sailors traveling on ships worried about falling off the edge of the earth. Even the crew<sup>1</sup> of Christopher Columbus worried about falling off the edge of the earth. They thought the earth was flat like a book.

Some people were careful enough to observe<sup>2</sup> certain things while they were out on the ocean. They noticed that the bottoms of other ships disappeared first and the tops of the sails last. They knew that the bottoms of ships would disappear first and the sails last only if the earth were round. As the ships followed the curve<sup>3</sup> of the earth, they moved out of sight over the horizon. The horizon is the line where the earth and the sky seem to meet. People also began to notice the earth's shadow on the moon during an eclipse<sup>4</sup>. The round shadow

suggested that the earth was round, like a sphere. They could not see, however, that the earth was also solid<sup>5</sup>, like a ball or an orange. From the space the earth looks round but still, one cannot tell whether or not it is a solid sphere. Many years passed before scientists were convinced<sup>6</sup> that the earth really was a sphere, and that it was solid. When ships began to sail around the earth and return to their original spots, people began to believe that the earth was like a globe or a sphere. Magellan (muh jel'un), a famous explorer, set out to sail around the world. One of his ships completed the first trip around the world and came back to the place from which it started. This trip proved the earth was a sphere. It also proved that the oceans were connected to each other.

注：本课选自四年级《自然科学——地球》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。





## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>crew</b> [kru:] <i>n.</i> (全体)船员; (全体)乘务员; 空勤人员     | 4. <b>eclipse</b> [ɪ'klɪps] <i>n.</i> (日、月)食 (蚀)                    |
| 2. <b>observe</b> [əb'ɜ:v] <i>vt.</i> 注意到, 监视, 观察; 遵守; 评说 | 5. <b>solid</b> ['sɒlɪd] <i>n.</i> 固体, 立体 <i>adj.</i> 固体的, 立体的, 实心的 |
| 3. <b>curve</b> [kɜ:v] <i>n.</i> 弧线, 曲线                   | 6. <b>convince</b> [kən'vɪns] <i>vt.</i> 使相信, 说服                    |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**set out** 出发, 启程

e.g. I will set out for Shanghai tomorrow.

我明天出发去上海。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

- Many years ago people used to think that the earth was as \_\_\_\_\_ as a book.
- When a ship is sailing in the ocean, its \_\_\_\_\_ disappears first and its \_\_\_\_\_ last over the horizon.
- People could see the round \_\_\_\_\_ of the earth on the moon during an eclipse.
- From the space the earth looks round but still, we can not tell whether it is \_\_\_\_\_ or not.
- It took many years for the scientists to be \_\_\_\_\_ that the earth is really a globe.
- If a ship sets out to sail around the world, it will surely return to its \_\_\_\_\_ place.

## 参考译文

多年来地球的形状对人们来说是个谜。很多出海航行的水手担心船会从地球的边缘掉下去。即便是克里斯托弗·哥伦布的船员也曾有这样的忧虑。他们以为地球像一本书那样，是个平面。

有些人很细心，在海上航行时注意观察某些特别的现象。他们发现，远处其他船只的底部先消失，最后不见的是帆的顶部。他们知道，只有地球是圆的这种情况才可能发生。船只沿着地表的弧线向前进，消失在地平线。地平线是天和地看似相交的地方。人们也开始注意到发生月食时地球在月球上的投影。投影是圆形，这说明了地

球是圆的，像个球形。然而人们无法看见地球是立体的，跟一个球或者桔子一样。从太空中看，地球是个圆形但静止不动，无法判断它是不是一个球体。多年之后科学家才确信地球确实是个球体。当船只绕地球航行并且回到当初的出发点，人们开始相信地球是个球体了。著名的探险家麦哲伦开始了他的环球之旅。他船队中的一艘船最终回到了出发地，完成了世界上第一次环球航行。这次航行证实了地球是一个球体，也证明了各大洋之间相互连通这一事实。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国学校科学课程的特点

美国人认为，科学教育的重点不在于教给孩子多少科学知识，而在于培养学生对科学的兴趣并教给他们获取科学知识的方法和手段，使他们从小就受到良好的科学熏陶。

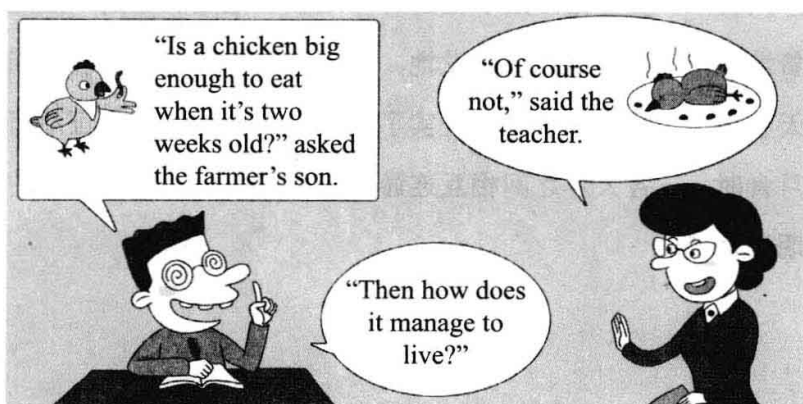
美国从幼儿园阶段就开始注重培养幼儿对自然和社会的初步认识，培养幼儿对自然和社会的兴趣及求知欲。幼儿的科学课程一般有三个部分组成：自然科学、生物科学和综合科技。这种针对幼儿的科学启蒙重在发展幼儿的好奇心，激发他们去探索去发现，为今后的进一步学习打下基础。

到了小学和中学，课堂教学是科学教育的主阵地。在课堂上，教学活动以学生为中心，老师鼓励引导学生从日常生活、周遭的事物以及自己的兴趣和需要中发现问题、提出问题并思考如何解决问题，从而学习科学。

美国的科学教育强调学生在学习科学的过程中，动脑和动手要紧密结合。在探究某一事物或现象时，学生要能描述事物或现象，提出问题，作出解释，根据现有的科学知识对所作的解释加以检验，

并能把自己的看法传达给别人。此外，科学课程的教学还包括很多特设的情境，用丰富多彩的亲身经历培养学生的动脑和动手能力。比如，老师常常带领学生走出课堂，到野外、公园、动物园、水族馆、博物馆和科技馆等地进行学习观察、收集资料。高年级学生还要制作模型、做实验，利用计算机对实验数据进行分析，等等。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



“两周大的小鸡能吃东西吗？”农夫的儿子问。

“当然不能。”老师说。

“那它们怎么活呢？”

注释：老师把“big enough to eat”中的不定式理解成被动的意思，即“被杀了吃”。有些动词不定式的主动态可以表示被动，这是造成歧义的根本。

### Answer

1. flat 2. bottom, sail 3. shadow 4. solid 5. convinced
6. original

# Gravity

5

## 万有引力



万有引力定律是物体间相互作用的一条定律，1687年为牛顿所发现。任何物体之间都有相互吸引力，这个力的大小与各个物体的质量成正比例，而与它们之间距离的平方成反比。万有引力的发现，是17世纪自然科学最伟大的成果之一。它第一次揭示了自然界中一种基本相互作用的规律，在人类认识自然的历史上树立了一座里程碑。

Gravity<sup>1</sup> is the pull or force that holds us to the earth. The sun has gravity the same as the earth. The pull of the sun is greater than the pull of the earth because the sun is so much bigger. The diameter<sup>2</sup> of the sun is about 865,000 miles (1,391,785 kilo meters). This distance is 109 times the diameter of the earth. The diameter of the earth is about 8,000 miles (12,872 kilometers).

The gravity of the sun keeps the planets going around the sun. If there were no gravity pulling them toward the sun, the planets, including the earth, would move out into space in a straight line. Because scientists have learned about the laws that govern the sun and planets, scientists know where each planet is at any one time.

Not much was known about gravity until the year 1687. In this year Sir Isaac Newton, an English astronomer and scientist, discovered

some of the secrets of light and color. He also discovered how the universe is held together by gravity. The idea of gravity came to him while he was in the garden drinking tea. An apple fell to the ground at his feet. He realized that the same force that drew the apple to the ground keeps the moon in its orbit<sup>3</sup> round the earth. He later wrote a book explaining the laws of motion and gravity. Newton's book became one of the most important books in the history of science.

While scientists know the laws of gravity and the results of it, they still do not know its cause. It is a mystery<sup>4</sup> why one body in the universe attracts another. The sun and the planets move according to mysterious laws. The universe is like a huge, well planned machine which could not have happened by chance. The Creator made the laws that regulate<sup>5</sup> the universe, and keep the sun, the

planets, and the billions of galaxies<sup>6</sup> moving in perfect order. In spite of<sub>4</sub> all man's efforts, he still has much to learn about the sun. Even

after years of observation<sup>7</sup> and study, man will not be able to understand all of the mysteries of God's creation.

注：本文选自四年级《自然科学——太空天体》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. gravity ['grævɪtɪ] *n.* 重力, 万有引力
2. diameter [daɪ'æmɪtə] *n.* 直径
3. orbit ['ɔ:bɪt] *n.* 轨道
4. mystery ['mɪstəri] *n.* 秘密, 神秘

5. regulate ['regjuleɪt] *vt.* 管理, 控制, 调节
6. galaxy ['gæləksi] *n.* 银河, 银河系
7. observation [ˌɒbzə:'veɪʃən] *n.* 观察, 注意, 监视



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. 用times表示倍数有三个比较基本的表达:

- ① ...times + as + *adj./adv.* + as...
- ② ...times + 形/副比较级 + than...
- ③ ...times + *n.* + the + of...

因此, 要表示“地球的体积是月球的49倍”, 对应就有三种不同的表达方式:

- a) The earth is 49 times as large as the moon.
- b) The earth is 48 times larger than the moon.
- c) The earth is 49 times the size of the moon.



**2. at any one time** 在任何一次, 在某个时候

e.g. A dealer doing a large amount of business, and turning over his capital rapidly, has but a small portion of it in ready money at any one time.

一个做大量生意的商人迅速地周转其资本, 在某个时候手头上只有很少的现钱。

**3. by chance** 偶然, 侥幸

e.g. I won purely by chance.

我获胜完全是出于侥幸。

They met each other by chance after ten years.

10年之后他们偶然相遇了。

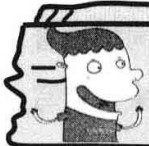
**4. in spite of / despite** 尽管, 不管, 虽然

e.g. He forced a smile in spite of / despite the pain.

尽管很疼, 他还是挤出一个笑容。

In spite of / Despite starting late, he arrived in good time.

虽然他动身得晚, 却按时到了。

**Exercise 牛刀小试****I. Reading comprehension.**

1. Sir Isaac Newton discovered the secret of \_\_\_\_\_.

A. apples      B. tea      C. gravity      D. sea

2. Newton was an English astronomer and \_\_\_\_\_.

A. minister      B. bookkeeper      C. librarian      D. scientist

3. In addition to discovering how the universe was held together, Newton discovered some of the secrets of color and \_\_\_\_\_.

A. light      B. tea      C. apples      D. gardens

**II. Complete these statements.**

1. Gravity is the pull or \_\_\_\_\_ that holds us to the earth.

2. The \_\_\_\_\_ has gravity as well as the earth.

3. The gravity of the sun is \_\_\_\_\_ than that of the earth.
4. The gravity of the sun keeps the \_\_\_\_\_ going around it.
5. The scientist and the astronomer who discovered the law of gravity was Sir Isaac \_\_\_\_\_.
6. In \_\_\_\_\_, Newton discovered some of the secrets of light and color.

### III. Write true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Gravity is the force that keeps the planets around the earth.
2. \_\_\_\_ The diameter of the sun is 109 times that of the earth.
3. \_\_\_\_ If there were no gravity, the moon would still circle the earth.
4. \_\_\_\_ The force of gravity from the earth is greater than that of the sun.
5. \_\_\_\_ The diameter of the sun is about 865,000 miles.
6. \_\_\_\_ Scientists can map the paths of the planets because of the laws of the universe.

## 参考译文

万有引力是地球上存在的一股把物体拉回地面的力。和地球一样，太阳也具有万有引力。太阳的体积比地球大，因此太阳的引力也就比地球引力大得多。太阳直径约为865,000英里（1,391,785公里），是地球直径的109倍。地球直径为8,000英里（12,872公里）。

太阳引力使行星围绕太阳旋转。太阳引力一旦消失，包括地球在内的所有行星都将直线飞出，分散到太空各处。由于掌握了太阳和行星的运动规律，科学家在任何时候都知道每颗行星的具体位置。

1687年之前人们对重力原理知之甚少。到了1687年，艾萨克·牛顿爵士发现了光和颜色的几个秘密，以及万有引力与宇宙的关系原理。他是这么发现万有引力的：有一天他正在花园里喝

茶，一颗苹果掉下来落在他的脚边。他意识到这种来自地球的拉着苹果下落的引力，也同样拉着月球，使其按固定轨道绕地球旋转。后来牛顿写了本书介绍运动与万有引力的定律，这本书成为科学史上最重要的著作之一。

尽管科学家掌握了万有引力的定律及其作用，他们还是不知道万有引力的根源。宇宙中的天体为何会互相吸引，这是个谜。太阳和行星的运动皆遵照神秘的定律。宇宙就像一个精心设计好的巨大机器，它的产生绝非偶然。造物主制定出宇宙运转的规律，使太阳、行星和数以亿计的星系都井然有序地运转。人类虽然花费了很多精力，他们对太阳的了解仍然只是皮毛。即使再经过很多年的观察和研究，人类还是很难把上帝的神秘创造全部弄明白。

## “美”事一桩

### 美国学校作业和考试的评分等级

几年前，国内兴起给中小學生（尤其是小学生）减负的运动，各地减负的措施和力度各不相同，笔者所在地区采取的一项措施就是向国外学习，取消百分制，改成界限相对模糊的“优、良、及格、不及格”。当然，大家都知道，国外的分数等级是用字母加上加号或减号来表示的。加号读为“plus”，减号读为“minus”。

以美国为例，各个学校采取的评分制不同，也有两者兼用的。百分制和等级制的转换关系如下：  
98 ~ 100为A<sup>+</sup>，93 ~ 97为A，90 ~ 92为A<sup>-</sup>，88 ~ 89为B<sup>+</sup>，83 ~ 87为B，80 ~ 82为B<sup>-</sup>，78 ~ 79为C<sup>+</sup>，73 ~ 77为C，70 ~ 72为C<sup>-</sup>，依此类推。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

A friend who shares is a friend who cares.

肯于分享，方为挚友。

Variety is the spice of life.

变化是生活的调味剂。

One man's gravy is another man's poison.

萝卜白菜，各有所爱。

Better a live coward than a dead hero.

好死不如赖活。

### Answer

I. 1. C 2. D 3. A

II. 1. force 2. sun 3. greater 4. planets 5. Newton 6. 1687

III. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. T

# Fresh Water

## 淡水



地球上的水很多，淡水储量却很少，分布在难以利用的高山和南、北两极地区，还有一部分淡水埋藏于地下很深的地方，很难进行开采。到目前为止，人类淡水消费量已占全世界可用淡水量的54%。但淡水的污染问题却未完全消除。因此，保护水质、合理利用淡水资源，已成为当代人类普遍关心的重大问题。

When we talk about water, we must remember something important. All water is not the same. For example, ocean water is different from lake, or, fresh water. In this section of the LIFE PAC, you will learn about fresh water and where it is found. Fresh water is called fresh because it comes from rain and snow.

### LAKES AND PONDS

Ice covers about 10 per cent of our world (10 parts of 100). Some parts of the world have giant<sup>1</sup> packs of ice that stay the same size from year to year. These giant ice packs are called glaciers<sup>2</sup>. Glaciers are found only where it is very cold. The glaciers melt a little each year to add water to, the mountain streams and lakes. Since more snow is added to the glaciers each year, they do not get smaller. Snow and ice also are a great source of water for rivers, streams, and ponds. Ponds have water that does not regularly<sup>3</sup> flow in one direction. They

are smaller than lakes and usually are very shallow<sup>4</sup>. Ponds are warmer than lakes because a small body of water is heated more quickly than a large body of water.

### RIVERS

Rivers are different from lakes in many ways. Water in a river flows in a current<sup>5</sup>, or constantly<sup>6</sup> in one direction. Water in a river also flows horizontally<sup>7</sup>, or parallel<sup>8</sup> to the horizon. In other ways, it flows along the direction of the ground. Rivers and streams are formed when rain or ground water overflows<sup>9</sup>. When ground water overflows, it starts going downhill and a river is formed. Rivers have always been very important to people. Like the ocean, they serve as, highways for boats to carry goods from place to place. River water also is used for watering crops on farms and for electric power. Since river water is always mixing, rivers have no layers of water

like lakes. The bottoms of rivers are always changing, while lake bottoms often stay the same. Rivers are a source of drinking water. About 75 per cent of all American cities tap

rivers and lakes for their water supplies. Thus, rivers are very important to all of us. Without rain or snow, the earth would have no rivers.

注：本课选自四年级《自然科学——地球》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **giant** ['dʒaɪənt] *adj.* 巨大的, 庞大的 *n.*

巨人

2. **glacier** ['glæsjə] *n.* 冰河, 冰川

3. **regularly** ['regjʊləli] *adv.* 定期地, 有规则地

4. **shallow** ['ʃæləʊ] *adj.* 浅的, 肤浅的

5. **current** ['kʌrənt] *n.* (水、气、电) 流; 思潮, 趋势 *adj.* 当前的, 流行的, 流通的

6. **constantly** ['kɒnstəntli] *adv.* 经常地, 不断地, 不变地

7. **horizontally** [ˌhɒrɪ'zɒntli] *adv.* 地平地, 水平地

8. **parallel** ['pærəlel] *v.* 与……平行

9. **overflow** ['əʊvə'fləʊ] *v.* 泛滥, 溢出



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. **or** (用于引出解释性词语) 即, 或者说

e.g. It weighs one kilo, or just over two pounds.

这东西重1000克, 即两磅多一点儿。

2. **add to** 添加, 增加

e.g. Please add it to my account.

把它记在我的账户上。

This added difficulties to our task.

这给我们的任务增添了困难。



**3. in other ways** 在其他方面, 以其他方式

e.g. He was equally unscrupulous in other ways.

在其他方面他同样无耻。

Evolution could be disproved in other ways, too.

进化论也可以用别的方法驳倒。

**4. serve as** 作为, 用做

e.g. The flesh of swordfish usually serve as steaks.

剑鱼的肉常用来做鱼排。

A flat stone could serve as a table.

一块平坦的石头可以充当桌子。



**Exercise** 牛刀小试

**I. Reading comprehension.**

1. Ponds are smaller than \_\_\_\_\_.

A. lakes      B. puddles      C. pools

2. Bodies of water that flow regularly in one direction are called \_\_\_\_\_.

A. oceans      B. lakes      C. rivers

3. On a hot day the warmest body of water would be \_\_\_\_\_.

A. ocean      B. pond      C. lake

4. The bottoms of \_\_\_\_\_ are always changing.

A. oceans      B. lakes      C. rivers

5. Giant packs of ice are called \_\_\_\_\_.

A. ice cubes      B. glaciers      C. ice packs

**II. Complete the following sentences.**

1. Ponds are smaller than lakes and usually are very \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Water in a river flows \_\_\_\_\_ and along the direction of the ground as well.

3. Rivers \_\_\_\_\_ as highways for boats to carry goods from place to place.

4. River water can be used for watering crops and for \_\_\_\_\_ power.
5. Many American cities tap rivers and lakes for their water \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Rain, snow and \_\_\_\_\_ are all important sources of water for rivers, streams and lakes.

## 参考译文

谈到水，我们一定要记住，水不是都一模一样的。这一点很重要。例如，海水和湖水（即淡水）就不同。在本书的这一课中，你将学习淡水及其储存地点。淡水之所以“淡”，是因为它来源于雨雪，不含盐分。

### 湖泊与池塘

地球表面的10%为冰川所覆盖。某些地区的巨大冰块长年保持原样，这些巨大的冰块叫做冰山。冰山只存在于极其寒冷的地方。它们每年融化一点点，融化的冰水汇入山间的小溪和湖泊。但由于每年都有新的降雪加在冰山上，它们的体积都不会变小。冰雪是河流、小溪和池塘的重要水源。池塘比湖泊小，通常都很浅，池塘里的水没有固定流向。池水的温度比湖水高，因为受热时小水体比大水体升温升得快。

### 河流

河流与湖泊有很多不同之处。河水以水流的方式流动，或者说，河水有固定的流向。河水一般是水平流动，即沿着与地平线平行的方向流动。此外，它的流向也受地势的影响。当雨水和地下水聚集过多时，就会溢出形成河流或小溪。地下水溢出地面，从山上流下形成河流。河流一直以来对人类来说非常重要。跟海洋一样，河流是利用船只运送货物的通道。河流还可用来灌溉农作物和发电。由于水流的作用，河水总是掺和在一起，因而河流没有像湖泊那样的水层。河流的底层总在不断变化，而湖泊的底层通常保持不变。河流是饮用水的一个来源。大约75%的美国城市都依靠河流和湖泊供水。因此，河流对所有的人来说都很重要。如果没有雨雪，地球上就没有河流。

## “美”事一桩

### 五大湖

北美大陆的五大湖区是世界最大的淡水湖群，位于加拿大与美国的交界处，按面积从大到小分别为苏必利尔湖（Lake Superior）、休伦湖（Lake Huron）、密歇根湖（Lake Michigan）、伊利湖

(Lake Erie) 和安大略湖 (Lake Ontario)。除密歇根湖属于美国之外, 其他四湖为加拿大和美国共有。这五个湖泊所组成的淡水水域, 总面积达245,660平方公里, 有“北美洲地中海”之称。

五大湖原来是谷地构造, 四周为终碛丘, 原为第四纪冰河所挟带的大量泥沙和石块堆积作用, 构成巨大的湖盆。天气转暖后, 冰河融化, 积水于石碛内, 最后成为湖泊。五大湖是世界上最大的淡水湖群, 湖面海拔西高而东低。由于五大湖附近土壤多为冰碛土, 利于农业耕作, 适宜栽种牧草, 成为北美都会区的鲜乳主要供应地。

2006年11月30日, 加拿大环保组织提出的报告说, 美国和加拿大的城市每年将数十亿加仑未经处理过的污水倒入五大湖, 造成了部分湖岸必须关闭, 并造成生物多样性的损失。其中, 由于美国在前期工业化进程中的不重视, 水体富营养化导致了水生动物大量死亡和河道的淤塞。现在, 美加两国携手治理五大湖, 力图恢复其生态原貌, 已取得了一定的成效。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



就餐者: 有野鸭吗?

侍者: 没有, 先生, 但我们可以抓只家养的鸭子并为你惹怒它。

注释: “wild” 有“野生的”和“发怒的”两种意思。

### Answer

I. 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B

II. 1. shallow 2. horizontally 3. serve 4. electric 5. supplies 6. glaciers

# Instinct<sup>1</sup> of Animals

## 动物的本能

7



为了能在大自然中生存，每种动物都有自己的生存技能。因为“物竞天择”，如果没有足够的能力来保护自己，就只能被自然界淘汰。

### GOD GAVE INSTINCT TO ANIMALS

Are bats mammals<sup>2</sup> or birds? Bats fly like birds. Bats have wings, but they also have babies and feed them with milk from their own bodies. They are also covered with hair.

Yes, you are right. Bats are mammals. They live in caves or dark places during the day. Just before the sun goes down at night and early in the morning, the bats come out in large numbers. There are so many of them at times, that the sun is darkened.

Bats are able to fly long distances. They catch small insects in the dark and keep from bumping into objects as they fly at high speed. How do they do that?

Many, many years ago, an Italian scientist studied bats. He wanted to find out things about them. He caught a number of bats and covered

their eyes with wax<sup>3</sup> so they could not see. He let them loose in a room full of bells hanging on wires. If they touched a bell, it would ring. The bats flew all around the room without touching one bell even though they had their eyes covered. The scientist was puzzled. He could not find out how they were able to keep from hitting the wires. He knew, though, that the bats had some special sense that kept them from flying into objects.

Just within the last few years a great discovery was made about the bat. Scientists found that bats fly by a special kind of sense that was built into them by God.

Their eyes are very weak and small, but their ears are the most powerful among any of God's creatures. As they fly, they squeak<sup>4</sup>. The squeak that they send out as they fly is so high-pitched that we can hardly hear it with our ears. These sounds that are sent out bounce<sup>5</sup> against

something and are picked up as an echo<sup>6</sup> by the sharp ears of the bat. They can detect the faintest<sup>7</sup> echo. We understand now why the bat can fly so fast, yet not hit an object. We also know that this little mammal was created by God with a kind of radar long, long before one was invented by man.

Do you know how a homesick green turtle finds its way home to the Ascension Island in the Atlantic Ocean? Write your answer (yes or no) in this blank. \_\_\_\_\_.

If you answered the question with a “yes” you should think some more about it. If you answered “no”, you are like the scientists. Scientists have not discovered many secrets about animal instincts.

The United States Navy, too, is trying to find the answer to the secret of the homesick turtle. They think that if the answer is found, they can use the information to help them control the course of ships better.

For hundreds of years, men have tried to find what powerful forces guide animals in traveling long distances. These animals seem to have some built-in way that helps them travel across great stretches<sup>8</sup> of land or water to some place where they have never been before.

Our story begins on a little island in the Atlantic Ocean. The name of the island is Ascension. A huge, green turtle, weighing about 300 pounds, crawls<sup>9</sup> out of the ocean onto the beach. She looks around for some

sign that she has reached the right place. She drags her huge body up on the beach and starts scratching<sup>10</sup> a hole in the sand.

As soon as the nest is ready, she begins to fill it with eggs. After laying about one hundred of them, she covers them with sand. Then she crawls back to the ocean and disappears.

Hundreds of other green turtles did similar nests and bury thousands of eggs on the shore of this little island. The island is only five miles wide (8 km). Ascension Island is about 500 miles (800 km) south of the equator. It is only a dot on the map.

At last the eggs hatch<sup>11</sup>. In each nest 100 tiny baby turtles break out of<sub>3</sub> their shells and push up through the soft sand. Already many animals that like to eat little turtles have gathered on the beach waiting. It is probably in the middle of the night. The moon may not be shining. It is dark, but the babies must go fast and straight toward the ocean even though<sub>4</sub> they have never seen it. They must hurry to avoid the animals waiting to eat them. The mother of the baby turtles is no longer around to help them. Nothing on the beach can guide them to safety. They are on their own<sub>5</sub>.

Just like a toy that has been wound up<sub>6</sub> and starts out straight ahead, the little turtles turn toward the ocean, which they cannot see. They flip-flop<sup>12</sup> across the beach. Many do not make it<sub>7</sub>, but those that do soon disappear into the salty ocean.



Nobody knows what guides them. Whatever does guide them, their lives depend upon that instinct that God has given them. As they raced toward the water for safety, if they had stopped to wonder which way to go or if they had gone in the wrong direction, they would have been picked up and eaten.

What becomes of them or what they do for the next few months is not known. Many of them swim or drift<sup>13</sup> hundreds of miles away

from their breeding<sup>14</sup> grounds.

After a few years when they become adults, the turtles swim back to the very same beach where they were born. Just like their parents, they lay their eggs in the sand; and new green turtles are born.

If you were a turtle, do you think you could find your way back to that little speck<sup>15</sup> of an island in the ocean?

注：本课选自四年级《自然科学——动物》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. instinct ['ɪnstɪŋkt] *n.* 本能，天性，直觉
2. mammal ['mæməl] *n.* 哺乳动物
3. wax [wæks] *n.* 蜡
4. squeak [skwik] *v.* 短促地尖叫，吱吱叫
5. bounce [baʊns] *v.* 弹回
6. echo [ekəʊ] *n.* 回声
7. faint [feɪnt] *adj.* 微弱的，模糊的
8. stretch [stretʃ] *n.* 一段时间（路程、水域）

- v.* 伸展，延伸
9. crawl [krol] *v.* 爬行
10. scratch [skrætʃ] *v.* 抓，搔
11. hatch [hætʃ] *v.* 孵化
12. flip-flop ['flɪpflop] *v.* 翻筋斗
13. drift [drɪft] *v.* 漂，漂流
14. breed [bri:d] *v.* 生育，繁殖；饲养，培养
15. speck [spek] *n.* 小点



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. at times/sometimes 有时，间或

e.g. Business competition can be cruel at times.

有时候，商业竞争是残酷的。

I go to visit my aunt in that small village at times.

我不时地去探望住在那个村里的姑妈。

## 2. keep from sth/doing 阻止，使免于

e.g. How could anyone keep from liking him?

谁不喜欢他呢？

We could not keep from laughing.

我们忍不住笑了。

## 3. break out of 摆脱（束缚等）

e.g. They attempted to break out of jail.

他们企图越狱。

I'm eager to break out of this boring way of life.

我渴望摆脱这种无聊的生活。

## Compare: break out (战争、火灾等不愉快事件)突然开始、爆发

e.g. A fight broke out between rival groups of fans.

双方球迷之间发生了打斗。

## 4. even though/even if 虽然，尽管

e.g. Even though air is invisible, it takes up space.

空气虽然看不见，它仍占据着空间。

Don't utter hard words even if you feel angry.

即使生气也不要骂人。

## 5. on one's own 独自地，独立地

e.g. She lives on her own.

她独自生活。

He depended on his own strength to finish the project.

他完全依靠自己的力量完成那个项目。

## 6. wind sth up 给（钟表等）上发条

e.g. The clock in the living room stopped for I forgot to wind it up last night.

客厅的钟停了，因为我昨晚忘了给它上发条。

**7. make it** 获得成功; 准时到达; 渡过难关

e.g. Can we make it somehow?

我们能不能想想办法把事情办到?

He always made it to the office even though the weather was bad.

即使天气十分不好, 他也总是准时到达办公室。

**8. become of sb/sth** (遭遇) 如何, (结果) 怎么样

e.g. What became of your brother?

你弟弟后来怎么样了?

I can hardly imagine what will become of me if I lose you.

我无法想像如果失去你我变成什么样。

**Exercise** 牛刀小试**I. In the sentences below, circle the letter that makes the sentence complete and correct.**

1. The bat is a \_\_\_\_\_.

A. bird                      B. fish                      C. mammal

2. The bat has very sharp \_\_\_\_\_.

A. ears                      B. eyes                      C. smell

3. Bats live in \_\_\_\_\_.

A. dark caves              B. sunlight              C. trees

4. Bats fly mostly at early dawn and \_\_\_\_\_.

A. at midnight              B. in late afternoon              C. noon

5. God created the bat with a kind of \_\_\_\_\_.

A. radar                      B. clothing                      C. speech

6. The bat's eyes are very \_\_\_\_\_.

A. large                      B. strong                      C. weak

7. Bats can hear the faintest \_\_\_\_\_.

A. bird song              B. echo              C. bell

## II. Write true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ For many years scientists have tried to discover more about the instinct that animals have.

2. \_\_\_\_ They have finally found the answers to all their questions.

3. \_\_\_\_ Birds are the only animals that migrate.

4. \_\_\_\_ Green turtles travel hundreds of miles to return to their home island.

5. \_\_\_\_ Ascension Island is in the Pacific Ocean.

6. \_\_\_\_ Ascension Island is north of the equator.

7. \_\_\_\_ Instinct is something that God has given to many animals to guide them.

## 参考译文

### 上帝赋予了动物的本能

蝙蝠是哺乳动物还是鸟类？蝙蝠有翅膀，像鸟一样飞翔，但它们是胎生，并用乳汁喂养幼崽。它们的体表还覆盖着毛发。

是的，没错，蝙蝠属于哺乳动物。它们白天待在洞穴里或者阴暗的地方，黄昏及凌晨成群外出活动。有时候，黑压压的一大群蝙蝠甚至把太阳都给遮住了。

蝙蝠能够长距离地飞行。它们在夜间捕捉小昆虫，飞行速度很快，却不会撞上其他物体。它们是如何做到这一点的？

许多年前，一位研究蝙蝠的意大利科学家想要探究出蝙蝠的秘密。他捉了很多蝙蝠，用蜡封住它们的眼睛，使它们看不见东西，再把它们放进一间挂满铃铛的房间里。如果蝙蝠撞上铃铛，

铃铛就会发出响声。然而，尽管它们的眼睛被遮住了，它们仍然可以在房间里到处飞翔而不撞上任何一个铃铛。这位科学家大惑不解，他想不出蝙蝠为何不会跟铃铛相撞，但他意识到蝙蝠肯定具有某种能使它们在飞行当中不撞上其他物体的特殊感官能力。

几年前，人们在蝙蝠身上有了重大发现。科学家发现蝙蝠依靠天生的一种特殊感官能力来指引飞行。

蝙蝠的眼睛很小，视力极差，但它们的耳朵却是上帝创造的所有动物中最灵敏的。蝙蝠飞行时发出声音。这些声音频率很高，人的耳朵无法听见。它们发出的这些超声波碰到障碍物就反射回来，被它们灵敏的耳朵所接收。反射回来的声波再微弱它们也能辨别出来。现在我们知道为什

么蝙蝠可以飞那么快却不会撞上障碍物了。我们也认识到，这种小小的哺乳动物在被上帝创造出来之时就带有一种天然的雷达系统，而人类却在很多年之后才发明出雷达。

你知道一只思乡的绿海龟怎样从大西洋回到位于阿森松岛的家乡吗？把你的答案（知道或不知道）写在横线上。

如果你回答“知道”，你应该再好好思考思考这个问题。如果你回答“不知道”，你和科学家们一样。有很多关于动物本能的秘密科学家们还不能解决。

美国海军也想找到海龟回家的秘密。他们认为，如果知道了答案，他们将可以利用这一信息更好地掌控轮船的航道。

几百年来，人类一直致力于研究是什么力量在引导动物作长途迁徙。这些动物身上似乎有一股内在的力量，这股力量帮助它们跋山涉水，千里迢迢前往某个它们从未去过的地方。

我们的故事开始于大西洋上的一个名叫阿森松的小岛。一只体型庞大、重达300磅的绿海龟从海里爬上沙滩，朝四周看看，判断自己是否来到了地方。它拖着巨大的身躯来到沙滩上，开始在沙里挖洞。

洞一挖好它就往里面下蛋。下好差不多100枚蛋之后，它用沙子把蛋盖起来，而后则爬回海里，消失不见了。

还有其他几百只绿海龟在这个小岛的海滩上挖洞，下了成千上万只蛋。而阿森松岛不过5英里（8公里）宽，位于赤道以南500英里（800公

里）处，在地图上只是一个点。

蛋最后孵化出来了。每个窝里都有100只小海龟破壳而出，从松软的沙子里拱出来。此时已经有很多喜欢以小海龟为食的动物等候在海滩上了。这时候可能正是深夜，可能没有月光，周围一片漆黑，然而小海龟必须立即迅速朝大海前进，即便它们从来没见过海。为了躲开那些等着吃它们的动物，小海龟动作要快。它们的妈妈已经没有在旁边帮助它们了。海滩上没有任何东西可以引导它们通向安全的地方，它们只能依靠自己。

它们就像上了发条后笔直前进的玩具一样，径直朝看不见的海洋爬去。它们在沙滩上翻滚着前进。有不少小海龟没能到达海边，但那些成功了的，很快就消失在咸咸的海水之中了。

没有人知道是什么在引导它们。然而无论那是什么，它们的生活都有赖于上帝赋予的本能。在前往水域这一安全地带的途中，如果它们中途停下来思考该走哪条路或者走错了方向，它们就会被天敌吃掉。

接下来它们会遇到什么事情或者后来的几个月它们做了些什么，我们就不得而知了。很多小海龟在海里游或漂到离出生地几百英里的地方。

几年后它们发育成熟，返回当年出生的海滩，像父母那样在沙滩上下蛋，又孵化出新一代绿海龟。

如果你是一只海龟，你能够找到回茫茫海洋中那个弹丸小岛的路吗？



## “美”事一桩

## 黄石国家公园

黄石国家公园 (Yellowstone National Park), 简称黄石公园, 是世界上第一座国家公园, 成立于1872年。黄石公园位于美国中西部怀俄明州的西北角, 并向西北方向延伸到爱达荷州和蒙大拿州, 面积达7988平方公里。这片地区原本是印地安人的圣地, 因美国探险家路易斯与克拉克的发掘而成为世界上最早的国家公园。它在1978年被列为世界自然遗产。

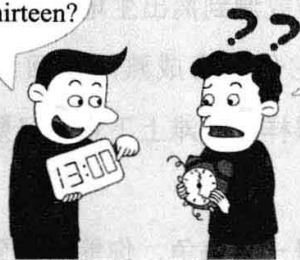
在黄石公园广博的天然森林中有世界上最大的间歇泉集中地带, 全球一半以上的间歇泉都在这里。这些地热奇观是世界上最大的活火山存在的证据。此外, 黄石河、黄石湖纵贯其中, 景色秀丽, 引人入胜。

黄石公园还是世界上最成功的野生动物保护区, 有时在公园的深处或道路上会发现灰熊或黑熊的踪迹。这里还有数千只麋鹿、长耳鹿、羚羊、美洲大角鹿、大角羊及大约 2,200 只美洲野牛, 这些动物在道路旁或偏远的地区都可以看到。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

What time is it if the clock strikes thirteen?

Key: Time to get a new clock.



问: 如果时钟敲13下, 那是什么时候?

答: 是该换只新时钟的时候了。

注释: 除了在军队, 美国人几乎从来不使用24小时计时法。他们通常在时间后加上A.M.或 in the morning 表示上午时间, 用P.M.或in the evening或at night 表示下午和晚上的时间。如果你说某事发生在“13点”, 美国人可能感到费解。

## Answer

I. 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. B

II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. F 7. F

# From Electrons to Electric Current

8

## 从电子到电流



电流由电子形成。电流方向规定是以正电子流动的方向，即实际电子流动的反方向为准，因为电子都是负的。

Atoms<sup>1</sup>, electrons<sup>2</sup>, and electricity are all related to<sub>1</sub> each other. Many hundreds of years were needed for man to understand how they are related. One of the keys to<sub>2</sub> understanding this relationship was learning to understand lightning. Another key was learning about the atom.

### LIGHTNING

When you look at the sky and see the clouds piling<sup>3</sup> up in heaps<sup>4</sup>, what do you expect to happen? You know that it will probably rain. If the clouds are really dark and heavy, you may expect thunder and lightning.

Lightning is one of God's wonders of nature. Lightning has both frightened and puzzled men from the very beginning of time.

In the book of Job, lightning is mentioned at least six times. Job always described lightning with great respect. He knew it came from God, but he did not understand it.

Many times, Bible writers used the example of lightning to describe the power of God. God used thunder and lightning—with hail<sup>5</sup>—as one of the troubles He sent to Egypt. You can read that story in Exodus, Chapter 9.

Men have tried for thousands of years to discover the secret of the power of lightning.

Within the storm clouds are stored strong electrical charges<sup>6</sup>. When some of these electrical charges move from cloud to cloud or from a cloud to the ground, we see a spark<sup>7</sup>. We call the spark lightning.

Benjamin Franklin did a famous

experiment with lightning. He attached a key to the end of a kite string<sup>8</sup> and succeeded in getting his kite to fly in the rain. The kite soon became charged with electricity. An electrical charge moved down the string to the key. When Franklin held his finger near the key, a spark jumped from the key to his finger.

Do not try Franklin's experiment. It was very dangerous. He was fortunate<sup>9</sup> that he was not killed. If you have ever seen a tree that has been struck by lightning you can imagine what could have happened to Benjamin Franklin.

You must be sure that lightning will go into the ground instead of damaging people or objects.

## PROTONS<sup>10</sup> AND ELECTRONS

All objects are made of atoms. Each atom has three kinds of particles<sup>11</sup>. The particles are called protons, electrons, and neutrons<sup>12</sup>.

Protons are found in the center of the atom. In chemical reactions the protons never move out of the center of the atom.

Only electrons can travel out of the object. What happens when some of the electrons are moved from object to object? When electrons are either removed from or added to an object, that object becomes electrically charged.

If one object loses electrons, that object has more protons than electrons. The object is positively charged. The object that received the electrons is negatively charged.

When an object has an equal number of positive and negative particles, the object is neutral<sup>13</sup>.

As you learn about positive and negative charges remember, charges that are alike push each other away. Unlike charges attract each other.

注：本课选自四年级《自然科学——电和磁》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. atom ['ætəm] <i>n.</i> 原子                   | 6. charge [tʃɑ:dʒ] <i>n.</i> 电荷 <i>v.</i> 充电 |
| 2. electron [ɪ'lektrɒn] <i>n.</i> 电子           | 7. spark [spa:k] <i>n.</i> 火花, 电火花           |
| 3. pile [paɪl] <i>v.</i> 堆起, 堆叠 <i>n.</i> 堆, 叠 | 8. string [strɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 细绳; 琴弦; 一串       |
| 4. heap [hi:p] <i>n.</i> 一堆                    | 9. fortunate ['fɔ:tʃənɪt] <i>adj.</i> 幸运的    |
| 5. hail [heɪl] <i>n.</i> 冰雹                    | 10. proton ['prəʊtɒn] <i>n.</i> 质子           |

11. **particle** ['pɑ:tɪkl] *n.* 微粒, 颗粒, 粒子

12. **neutron** ['nju:trɒn] *n.* 中子

13. **neutral** ['nju:trəl] *adj.* 中立的, 中性的, 不带电的



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. **relate A (to B)/be related to** 联系, 与……有关

e.g. It's difficult to relate the two things in my mind.

我很难把这两样事物联系起来。

This document is related to drug abuse.

这份文件与滥用毒品有关。

### 2. **key to sth** 某物的关键/答案

有些名词后面要加to而不是of来表示所属关系。例如:

answer to the question 问题的答案

entrance to the building 大楼的入口

solution to the problem 问题的解决办法

这一类词还有access, attention, attitude, contribution, damage, devotion, end, exit, guide, introduction, invitation, limit, objection, reaction, respect, reply, response, threat等等。

### 3. **attach A to B** 把……固定/附在……上

e.g. I attached a note to the present.

我在礼物上附了一张字条。

They attached some extra provisions to the contract.

他们在合同上附加了一些额外的条款。

### 4. **succeed in sth/doing** 在……方面成功

e.g. I have succeeded in convincing my father.

我成功地说服了父亲。

She succeeded in obtaining a position in that company.

她成功地在那家公司谋得一个职位。





## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Answer true(T) or false(F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Atoms are made of objects.
2. \_\_\_\_ In chemical reactions, protons do not move out of the center of the atom.
3. \_\_\_\_ Only electrons can travel out of an object.
4. \_\_\_\_ When an object has more protons than neutrons, the object is neutral.
5. \_\_\_\_ Charges that are alike push each other away.

### II. Answer these questions.

1. What happens when an object becomes charged?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. When an atom has an equal number of negative and positive particles, it is

\_\_\_\_\_.

3. What happens between two objects with like electrical charges when they are brought close together?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What happens between two objects with unlike electrical charges when they are brought close together?

\_\_\_\_\_

### III. Match these items.

1. \_\_\_\_ Benjamin Franklin

a. made electric

2. \_\_\_\_ Job

b. book of *Bible* that mentions lightning

3. \_\_\_\_ lightning

c. kite experiment

4. \_\_\_\_ charged

d. do not leave center of the atom

5. \_\_\_\_ protons

e. one of God's wonders

6. \_\_\_\_ electrons

f. travel out of an atom



## 参考译文

原子、电子和电流三者之间相互联系。人类用了好几百年的时间才弄明白它们之间的联系。解决这个问题的方法之一是研究闪电，之二是原子。

### 闪电

如果你看见天空中堆满了云朵，你认为将会发生什么事情？你知道可能会下雨。如果是乌云，而且压得很低，那就很可能会有雷电。

闪电是上帝创造的自然界的杰作。自从人类诞生以来，人们就一直对闪电疑惑不解，心怀畏惧。在《圣经·约伯记》中，闪电至少被提到六次。约伯提到闪电时总是满怀敬畏。他知道闪电来自上天，却不知道闪电的成因。

《圣经》多次写到闪电，用以描述上帝的强大力量。上帝用雷、电和冰雹来惩罚埃及。这你可以在《出埃及记》第九章读到。

几千年来人们一直试图解开闪电的秘密。

雷雨云带有很强的电荷，当这些电荷在云与云或云与地之间传递时，我们会看见电光，这就是闪电。

本杰明·富兰克林做过一个著名的雷电实验。他将一把钥匙系在风筝线的末端，在雷雨中将风筝放上天空。很快风筝就带上了电，电荷沿

着风筝线传到钥匙上。富兰克林将手指靠近钥匙，钥匙和手指之间发生了放电现象。

不要去尝试富兰克林的这个实验，这很危险。他很幸运没有被电死。如果你见过被闪电击中的树，你就想象得到富兰克林可能会是什么样的结果。

你必须确定闪电会落到地上而不会伤害到人或是物。

### 质子和电子

所有物体都由原子构成。原子当中有三种粒子，即质子、电子和中子。

质子位于原子核内。在化学反应中，质子不会离开原子核。

只有电子可以离开物体。电子在物体之间移动会如何？当物体失去或者得到电子，物体就会带电。

如果物体失去电子，物体内的质子就多于电子，物体带正电。得到电子的物体则带负电。

如果物体所带的正电荷与负电荷数量相等，物体不带电。

现在你已经学习了正电荷和负电荷，记住，同性电荷相互排斥，异性电荷相互吸引。

## “美”事一桩

### 富兰克林与风筝实验

1752年6月的一天，阴云密布，电闪雷鸣，一场暴风雨就要来临了。富兰克林和他的儿子威廉一道，带着上面装有一个金属杆的风筝来到一个空旷地带。富兰克林高举起风筝，他的儿子则拉着风筝线飞跑。由于风大，风筝很快就被放上高空。顷刻间，雷电交加，大雨倾盆。富兰克林和他的儿子一道拉着风筝线，父子俩焦急地期待着，此时，刚好一道闪电从风筝上掠过，富兰克林用手靠近风筝上的铁丝，身上立即掠过一种恐怖的麻木感。他抑制不住内心的激动，大声呼喊：“威廉，我被电击了！”随后，他又将风筝线上的电引入莱顿瓶中。回到家里以后，富兰克林用雷电进行了各种电学实验，证明了天上的雷电与人工摩擦产生的电具有完全相同的性质。富兰克林关于天上和人间的电是同一种东西的假说，在他自己的这次实验中得到了光辉的证实。

风筝实验的成功使富兰克林在全世界科学界名声大振。英国皇家学会给他送来了金质奖章，聘请他担任皇家学会的会员。他的科学著作也被译成了多种语言。他的电学研究取得了初步的胜利。然而，在荣誉和胜利面前，富兰克林没有停止对电学的进一步研究。1753年，俄国著名电学家利赫曼为了验证富兰克林的实验，不幸被雷电击死，这是做电实验的第一个牺牲者。血的代价，使许多人对雷电试验产生了戒心和恐惧。但富兰克林在死亡的威胁面前没有退缩，经过多次试验，他制成了一根实用的避雷针。他把几米长的铁杆，用绝缘材料固定在屋顶，杆上紧拴着一根粗导线，一直通到地里。当雷电袭击房子的时候，电流就沿着金属杆通过导线直达大地，房屋建筑完好无损。1754年，避雷针开始应用，但有些人认为这是个不祥的东西，违反天意会带来旱灾，就在夜里偷偷地把避雷针拆了。然而，科学终将战胜愚昧。一场挟有雷电的暴雨过后，大教堂着火了；而装有避雷针的高层房屋却平安无事。事实教育了人们，使人们相信了科学。避雷针相继传到英国、德国、法国，最后在世界各地普及。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

A foreign diplomat came in upon Lincoln while he was blacking his shoes. "What, Mr. President, you black your own shoes?"



一个外国大使来拜访林肯，正好看见他在擦皮鞋。

“啊，总统先生，您擦自己的皮鞋吗？”

“是的，”林肯答道，“不然你擦谁的皮鞋？”

注释：“擦鞋”一语双关。

## Answer

I. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T

II. 1. Electrons are either removed from or added to the object.

2. neutral

3. They move away from each other.

4. They move together or are attracted to each other.

III. 1. c 2. b 3. e 4. a 5. d 6. f

# Forces of Weather

9

## 破坏性天气



在全球变暖和环境污染的影响下，全球破坏性天气频发。暴风、洪水、雪灾，面对这些极端天气，我们该如何应对呢？

### RAINSTORMS, THUNDER, AND LIGHTNING

Strong winds are starting to blow. The sun is retreating behind a cloud ——or so it seems. The huge, dark cloud is getting bigger and bigger until it seems to be covering the whole sky. Suddenly a bright flash of light darts<sup>1</sup> across the darkened sky. A few seconds pass. Then it happens! A loud clap of thunder crashes through the clouds. The thunderstorm is getting nearer.



You wonder how far away the storm is. You can find out if you remember that light travels faster than sound. Light travels at 186,000 miles (300,000 kilometers) per second. Sound travels more slowly, at about 1,000 feet (330 meters) per second. Because of this difference in the speed of light and the speed of sound, you can count the number of seconds between the flash of light and the time when you hear the thunder.

Count the number of seconds between the time you see the flash and the time you hear the thunder. Divide the number by five. The answer will be the distance in miles between you and the flash. Count the seconds slowly: one-one-hundred, two-one-hundred, three-one-hundred, and so forth. This table shows how far away lightning is when you count the seconds.

As you already guessed, the thunder is

Numbers of seconds from the time you see the flash to the time you hear the thunder	Number of miles the lightning is away from you
5	1
10	2
15	3
20	4
25	5
30	6

caused by the lightning. The flash of lightning heats the air in its path to about 27,000 degrees Fahrenheit<sup>2</sup> (15,000 degrees Celsius<sup>3</sup>) in a tiny part of a second. The air expands and rushes in all directions and causes the sound of thunder.

If you are in a car during a thunderstorm, stay there. Lightning does not usually strike a closed car. If you are out-of-doors, take shelter from the storm in a building. If you cannot do that, crouch<sup>4</sup> in a low place. Since lightning often strikes high trees, you should not stand under a tree. If you are in a boat or swimming, get to land as soon as possible. The electricity of lightning travels through the water. If you are inside a building, do not touch electrical equipment. Stay away from open windows and doors.

Even though thunderstorms can cause damage, they do more good than harm. They

bring refreshing<sup>5</sup> rain that provides water for all living things. They help the soil. Lightning causes gases to blend<sup>6</sup> in the air. Millions of tons of fertilizer<sup>7</sup> are formed as these gases become part of the rain. These gases fall to the ground and help make our soil richer.

## HURRICANES

Strong winds blowing at seventy-five miles per hour or more are called hurricanes<sup>8</sup>. Hurricanes form over the ocean in hot, wet regions.

When hurricanes blow, they do much damage. The dangerous winds may whirl<sup>9</sup> in a circle twenty-five miles across. Bigger hurricanes may be as much as five hundred miles across. In the very center of the hurricane, is a calm area where the sun shines and the winds do not blow. This center, called

the eye of the storm, is usually about twenty miles across.

During the months of June to November, the National Weather Service watches the North Atlantic Ocean very carefully. Although hurricanes can happen at anytime, they happen most often during these months.

The National Weather Service studies pictures of the clouds that have been taken by satellites. When it finds out that a hurricane is beginning to form far out in the ocean, planes are sent out. The pilots of the planes find out where the storm is located. They take pictures of it and follow it to see which way it is going. They also want to know how strong it is. All these reports are sent back to the National Weather Service.

The National Weather Service has already given the storm a name. For many years hurricanes have been named after women. Now they are being given the names of men as well. The first hurricane of the season might be named Aleta, the second Bud, the third Carlotta, and the fourth Daniel in alphabetical order. Hurricanes are given these names a year or more ahead of the storm. When a storm begins, the next name on the list is used. Be on the watch, by looking in the newspaper or magazines to see if you can discover the name of the next hurricane!

## TORNADOES

Tornadoes<sup>10</sup> are storms in which the wind spins and whirls about objects in its path. A funnel<sup>11</sup>-shaped cloud of twisting, whirling, buzzing air moves across the earth. Suddenly it dips<sup>12</sup> down and touches the earth. Traveling about two hundred miles (322 kilometers) per hour, this frightening wind blows down buildings and destroys nearly everything in its path.

Tornadoes have been known to do some strange things. They have picked up cars and thrown them about as if they were little toys. Farm animals have been lifted into the air and put down again hundreds of feet away unharmed.

Tornadoes are usually no more than a mile across. Tornadoes last only a few minutes. They are different from hurricanes, which are many miles across and last for days.

The National Weather Service gives tornado warnings over radio and television stations. For protection many persons run to underground cellars<sup>13</sup> or use caves in areas where tornadoes are expected.

Tornadoes that move across water are called waterspouts<sup>14</sup>. If they happen to cross the path of a ship they often blow the sails to bits and cause much damage. Ships can usually sail around the waterspout.

注：本课选自四年级《自然科学——气候》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。





## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>dart</b> [da:t] <i>v.</i> 投掷, 投射; 向前冲, 飞奔                   | 8. <b>hurricane</b> ['hʌrɪkən] <i>n.</i> 飓风            |
| 2. <b>Fahrenheit</b> ['færən,haɪt] <i>n.</i> 华氏温标                 | 9. <b>whirl</b> [wɜ:l] <i>v.</i> 飞快移动, 旋转              |
| 3. <b>Celsius</b> ['selsi:əs] <i>n.</i> 摄氏温标                      | 10. <b>tornado</b> [tɔ:'neɪdəʊ] <i>n.</i> 龙卷风          |
| 4. <b>crouch</b> ['kraʊtʃ] <i>v.</i> 蜷, 缩, 蹲下                     | 11. <b>funnel</b> ['fʌnəl] <i>n.</i> 漏斗                |
| 5. <b>refreshing</b> [rɪ'freʃɪŋ] <i>adj.</i> 爽快的, 使人精神振作的, 给人以力量的 | 12. <b>dip</b> [dɪp] <i>v.</i> 浸, 蘸; 下沉                |
| 6. <b>blend</b> [blend] <i>v.</i> 混合, 混杂                          | 13. <b>cellar</b> ['selə] <i>n.</i> 地下室, 地窖            |
| 7. <b>fertilizer</b> ['fɜ:tɪlaɪzə] <i>n.</i> 化肥                   | 14. <b>waterspout</b> ['wɔ:təspaut] <i>n.</i> 水龙卷, 海龙卷 |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. and so forth (用于列举) 等等

e.g. The grocery store deals in tea, coffee, spices and so forth.

该杂货店经销茶叶、咖啡、作料等商品。

They discuss investment, the state of the economy and so forth.

他们讨论了投资和经济状况等问题。

### 2. take/give/provide shelter from sth 遮蔽、庇护、避难 (避雨, 躲避危险或攻击)

e.g. The hut provided shelter from the pouring rain.

小屋成了人们躲避大雨的地方。

They have to leave their motherland and go overseas to seek shelter from political prosecution.

他们不得不离开祖国, 到海外寻求政治庇护。

### 3. be on the watch (for sb/sth) 小心提防, 留心

e.g. Be on the watch for thieves in this crowd.

要提防人群中的小偷。

The customs inspector was on the watch for diamond smugglers.

海关检查员警惕地监视着，看看有没有人走私钻石。

**4. no more than** 只是，不过

e.g. I have no more than \$100 on me.

我身上只有100美元。

She asked no more than her due.

她没有提出非分的要求。

**5. happen to do sth** 恰巧，凑巧

e.g. I happened to see him in the street the other day.

那天我刚好在街上碰见他。

She happened to know the place.

她恰巧知道那地方。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Write true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_ Thunder is caused by lightning.
2. \_\_\_ Lightning heats the air when it passes through it.
3. \_\_\_ A car is usually a safe place to stay during a thunderstorm.
4. \_\_\_ Around water is a safe place to be during a bad storm.
5. \_\_\_ Thunderstorms do more damage than good.
6. \_\_\_ Lightning helps make our soil richer.
7. \_\_\_ Electricity does not travel through water.

### II. Match these words and phrases.

- |                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ___ eye                           | a. November                     |
| 2. ___ start of the hurricane season | b. name for a hurricane         |
| 3. ___ end of the hurricane season   | c. calm area of a hurricane     |
| 4. ___ hurricane warnings            | d. June                         |
| 5. ___ Betsy                         | e. United States Weather Bureau |

### III. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. A tornado is a swirling, twisting column of \_\_\_\_ moving across the land.

A. water B. gas C. air D. smoke

2. Tornadoes moving across water are called \_\_\_\_.

A. hurricanes B. spinners C. twisters D. waterspouts

3. Tornadoes are usually no more than \_\_\_\_ mile(s) across.

A. fifty B. one C. one hundred D. ten

### 参考译文

#### 暴风雨、雷及闪电

刮大风了，太阳躲到云后面去了。大块大块的乌云越积越厚，遮住了整个天空。忽然，一道闪电迅速滑过漆黑的天幕。几秒钟之后，雷声在云层上炸响开来。暴风雨就要来了！

你想知道这个暴风雨离你有多远吗？如果你还记得光的传播速度比声音快的话，你就能计算出来。光速每秒186,000英里（30万公里）。

声音的传播速度要慢得多，每秒1,000英尺（330米）。正因为光速和音速有这个差距，我们就能数数从看见闪电到听见雷声需要几秒钟。

把这个数字除以5，得出的就是闪电距离你所在位置的英里数。数得慢点儿：1—100，2—200，3—300，等等。下面这个表格列出了所数的秒数所对应的闪电的距离。

看见闪电与听见雷声的时间差（秒）	闪电与你的距离（英里）
5	1
10	2
15	3
20	4
25	5
30	6

你可能已经猜到，雷声是由闪电引起的。闪电在瞬间把它周围的空气加热至华氏27,000度（摄氏15,000度），空气受热膨胀，发出雷鸣声。

电闪雷鸣的时候，如果你正在汽车里，呆在那儿别出来。闪电通常不会击中一辆密闭的汽车。如果你在户外，赶快躲进建筑物里。如果找不到建筑物，弯腰蹲下来。闪电常常击中大树，所以不要站在树下。如果你在船上或者正在游泳，尽快上岸，因为水也能导电。如果你正在某座建筑物内，不要触碰任何电器，不要站在开着的门窗附近。

尽管雷雨天气会造成破坏，它们还是利大于弊的。它们带来的雨水为万物补充水源，它们还能够增加土壤的肥力。闪电使空气中的气体混合发生反应，生成的新气体溶解在雨水中流进地里，变成了上百万吨的肥料，使土壤更肥沃。

## 风

时速达到或超过75英里的强风称为飓风。飓风形成于湿热的海洋地区。

飓风破坏力很强。飓风通常是一个直径25英里的气旋，强飓风直径可以长达500英里。飓风的中心地区阳光明媚，风平浪静。这个中心称做风眼，直径通常为20英里。

每年6月至11月间，美国国家气象局都要密切关注北大西洋上的天气变化。一年当中的任何时候都可能发生飓风，但这几个月是飓风高发期。

国家气象局的工作人员仔细研究卫星云图，一旦发现某个飓风正在形成，便立即派飞机前往追踪。飞行员要找出飓风的所在位置，拍摄照片

并密切跟踪其动向。他们还需要判断出飓风的强弱。

国家气象局已经事先为飓风取好了名字。过去许多年，飓风一直以女性的名字来命名，现在也有了男性的名字。按照英文字母表的顺序来取名，当季的第一个飓风可能叫作阿勒特，第二个叫巴德，第三个叫夏洛特，第四个叫丹尼尔。这些名字都是在一年前或者更早的时候就取好了。一旦一个飓风开始形成，事先取好的名字就派上了用场。读报纸杂志的时候留意一下，看看你是否能找到下一个飓风叫什么名字。

## 龙卷风

龙卷风是一种风暴，旋转着前进，将所经之地的物体都卷离地面。龙卷风是由雷雨云伸展至地面的漏斗状云产生的强烈旋风，其时速高达200英里（322公里），能吹倒楼房，摧毁沿途的一切。

龙卷风有时候很古怪。它们卷起汽车，将之抛上天，轻松得就像扔的是小玩具。但是农场里的牲畜被卷上高空之后却又能够安然落地。

龙卷风的直径通常不超过一英里，前后不过持续几分钟。这不同于直径数十英里，持续几天的飓风。

国家气象局通过广播和电视发出龙卷风的警报。人们躲进地下室或洞穴以躲避龙卷风。

发生在水上的龙卷风叫水龙卷。船只若不巧遇上它们，船帆往往被撕成碎片，损失极大。一般来说，只要在水龙卷的外围，船只就能够避开危险。

## “美”事一桩

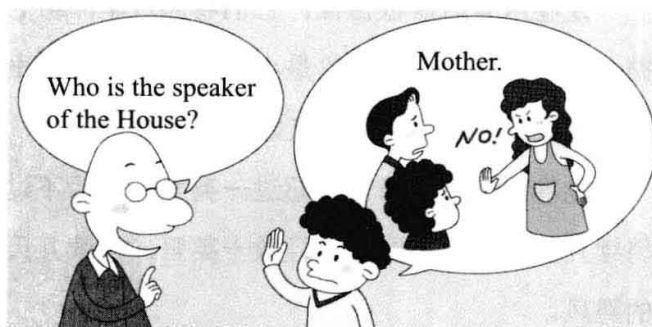
## 为何美国多龙卷风

美国被称为“龙卷风之乡”，每年大约有1000到2000个龙卷风，而且强度一般很大。这主要和美国的地理位置、气候条件以及大气环流特征有关。

美国处在中纬度，春夏季常受副热带高压控制；此外，它东临大西洋，西靠太平洋，南面还有墨西哥湾，在副热带高压的控制下，大量的水气从东、西、南面流向美国大陆。水气多就容易导致雷雨天，当雷雨云积聚到一定强度后，龙卷风就产生了。

美国龙卷风最多的地区是中西部，其中一半都发生在春季。国家风暴预测中心说，美国中部地区11月发生如此严重的龙卷风很罕见，龙卷风高发期一般是每年的4至6月。从6月份开始，大量暖湿空气北移至堪萨斯州、内布拉斯加州和衣阿华州，7月份移到加拿大，此后，美国的龙卷风数量就大大减少，但仍会有龙卷风出现。统计数据显示，美国每年约有70人在龙卷风中丧生。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



公民学老师：谁是下院的发言人？

聪明学生：妈妈。

注释：“house”的第一个字母大写变成“the House”时，指议会的下院，而不是家庭、房子的意思。

## Answer

I. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. F

II. 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. e 5. b

III. 1. C 2. D 3. B



**Part 4**

**Math**

**数学**

# 4-Digit<sup>1</sup> Numbers 四位数



数学是研究数量、结构、变化以及空间模型等概念的一门学科，是透过抽象化和逻辑推理的使用，由计数、计算、量度和对物体形状及运动的观察中产生。

1

*no zeros*

*one*

10

*one zero*

*ten*

100

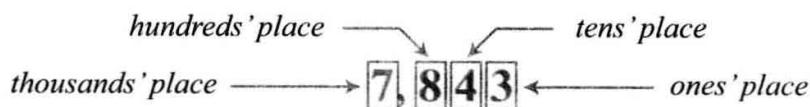
*two zeros*

one hundred

1000

*three zeros*

*one thousand*



A comma<sup>2</sup> separates thousands' place from hundreds' place. The comma makes the number easier to read.

We count thousands by following the number pattern we have learned.

1,001 1,002 1,003 ... 1,483 1,484 1,485 ...

We say one thousand, one; one thousand, two; one thousand, three.

We say one thousand, four hundred eighty-three;  
one thousand, four hundred eighty-four;  
one thousand, four hundred eighty-five.

注：本课选自三年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. digit ['dɪdʒɪt] *n.* (从0到9的任何一个) 数字, 数位
2. comma ['kɒmə] *n.* 逗号



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Write the place of each underlined digit.

1. 1,479 \_\_\_\_\_
2. 8,832 \_\_\_\_\_
3. 2,836 \_\_\_\_\_
4. 4,773 \_\_\_\_\_

### II. Write a number with the following instructions.

1. 1 in ones' place, 3 in tens' place, 6 in hundreds' place, and 9 in thousands' place.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. 4 in thousands' place, 2 in hundreds' place, 8 in tens' place, and 0 in ones' place.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. 6 in tens' place, 9 in thousands' place, 4 in ones' place, and 0 in hundreds' place.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. 7 in the tens' place, 8 in the thousands' place, 2 in the ones' place, and 0 in the hundreds' place.

\_\_\_\_\_

## 参考译文

我们数数时从0数到9，这10个数字都用完之后又从1开始，但每次重新回到1，后面都会补出一个0。

**1**

“1” 位于 “个位”

没有0

一位数

—

**10**

“1” 位于 “十位”

1个0

两位数

十

**100**

“1” 位于 “百位”

2个0

三位数

百

我们数到999时又得重新从1开始。个位、十位、百位之后是千位。

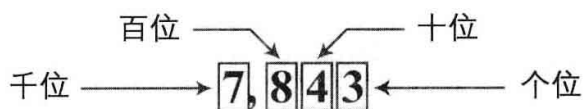
**1000**

“1” 位于 “千位”

3个0

四位数

千



千位和百位之间用逗号隔开。逗号可以方便人们辨认数位。

一千以上的数的数法跟以前学过的数的数法相同。

1,001 1,002 1,003 ...      1,483 1,484 1,485 ...

第一组分别读成

one thousand, one; one thousand, two; one thousand, three.

第二组分别读成

one thousand, four hundred eighty-three;

one thousand, four hundred eighty-four;

one thousand, four hundred eighty-five.

## “美”事一桩

对打喷嚏的人说 “Bless you”

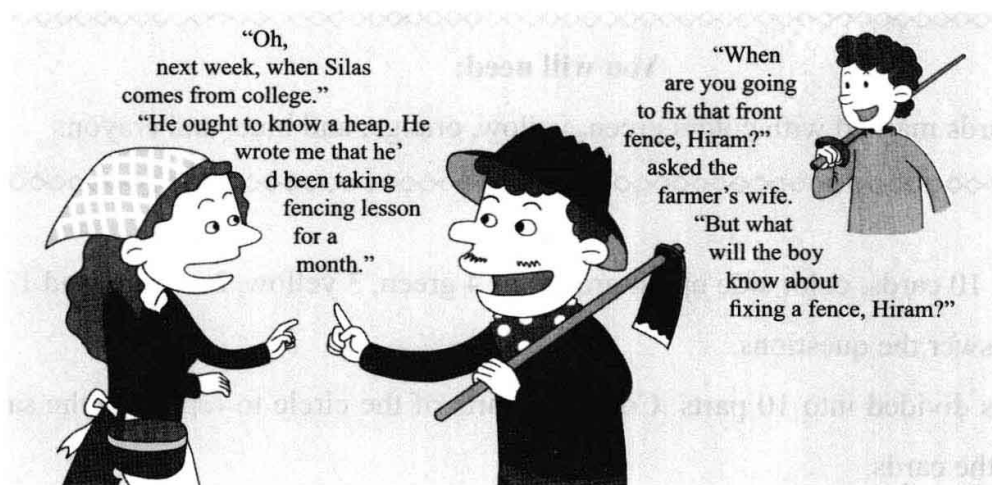


在欧美，有人打喷嚏(sneeze)时，旁边的人会对他说一句“Bless you (上帝保佑你)”。打喷嚏为何会跟宗教联系在一起？关于其起源有两种说法。

第一种说法是，公元590年，格里高利一世成为了教皇。当时罗马城爆发了一场淋巴腺瘟疫。为了与病魔作斗争，教皇下令祈祷者沿街游行吟唱。那时打喷嚏恰是这种瘟疫的早期症状之一。于是“上帝保佑你”便成了治病的常规方法之一。

另一种说法认为人们曾经相信喷嚏会打开人的身体，从而使身体受到魔鬼或者其他邪灵的入侵；或者把喷嚏说成是身体把入侵的邪灵逼出的一种反应。由此，“上帝保佑你”被用来防御魔鬼的入侵。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



“你什么时候修前面的篱笆，西拉穆？”农夫的妻子问。

“噢，下周吧，塞拉斯从大学回来了再说。”

“但那孩子会修篱笆吗，西拉穆？”

“他应该非常在行。他写信告诉我他在学校里学了一个月修篱笆。”

注释：“fencing”意为击剑，跟“fence(篱笆)”无关。

### Answer

I. 1. ones' place 2. hundreds' place 3. thousands' place  
 4. tens' place

II. 1. 9,631 2. 4,280 3. 9,064 4. 8,072



# 2

# Probabilities

## 概率



概率，又称或然率、机会率或几率、可能性，是数学概率论的基本概念，是一个在0到1之间的实数，是对随机事件发生的可能性的度量。人们常说某人有百分之多少的把握做成什么事，某件事发生的可能性是多少，这都是概率的实例。

### You will need:

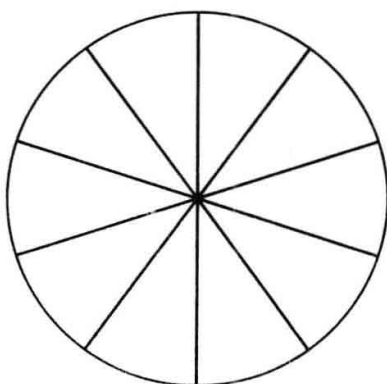
10 cards marked with colors green, yellow, orange, and blue, and crayons

Arrange the 10 cards, color side up, in groups of 4 green, 3 yellow, 2 orange, and 1 blue.

1. Read. Answer the questions.

The circle is divided into 10 parts. Color the parts of the circle to represent the same colors that you have on the cards.

The circle represents the whole.



The circle is divided into \_\_\_\_\_ parts. Count the number of parts for each color.

2. Write a fraction<sup>1</sup> to describe each part of the circle.

green \_\_\_\_\_ yellow \_\_\_\_\_ orange \_\_\_\_\_ blue \_\_\_\_\_

Probability tells us the likelihood that something will happen.

Turn the 10 cards color side down and mix them. Look at the circle. If you turned one card over, what color would it probably be?

3. Write the colors in order from most to least probable.

\_\_\_\_\_

We can describe probability by using the graph<sup>2</sup> and the fractions. If we have 10 cards, the probability of selecting a green card is 4 out of 10.

4. Write the probabilities of these colors.

The probability of selecting a yellow card is \_\_\_\_\_ out of 10.

The probability of selecting an orange card is \_\_\_\_\_ out of 10.

The probability of selecting a blue card is \_\_\_\_\_ out of 10.

5. Place the 10 cards face down. Turn 1 card face up so that the color is showing.

6. Write the color on the line. Turn the card face down and mix. Turn a card face up. Write the color. Do this ten times.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Write the number of times that you turned up each color.

green \_\_\_\_\_ yellow \_\_\_\_\_ orange \_\_\_\_\_ blue \_\_\_\_\_

Write the colors in order from greatest to least.

\_\_\_\_\_

Look at the probability order you wrote on previously. Were the colors that you turned up in the order of probability?

**Try it again.** Turn the 10 cards face down. Follow the same steps.

Probabilities tell us what will likely happen. Probabilities cannot tell us what will happen.

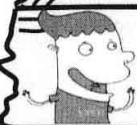
Were the colors you turned up close to the probabilities?

注：本课选自三年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **fraction** ['frækʃən] *n.* 小部分, 一点儿; 分数
2. **graph** [gra:f] *n.* 图表, 曲线图



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**turn...over** 翻转, 翻开; 把……移交 (给他人管理)

e.g. Turn over the page.

把这一页翻过去。

He turned his company over to his son and retired.

他把公司交给儿子管理, 自己退休了。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**Write the probabilities.**

You have 10 cards, 1 brown, 2 purple, 3 green, and 4 orange.

1. The probability of selecting a purple card is \_\_\_\_\_ out of 10.
2. The probability of selecting an orange card is \_\_\_\_\_ out of 10.
3. The probability of selecting a brown card is \_\_\_\_\_ out of 10.
4. The probability of selecting a green card is \_\_\_\_\_ out of 10.

## 参考译文

### 所需物品

10张分别涂有绿色、黄色、橙色和蓝色的卡片；蜡笔

将10张卡片有颜色的一面朝上，按4张绿色，3张黄色，2张橙色和1张蓝色的顺序排好。

1. 回答下列问题。

下面这个圆被分为10等份。根据卡片的颜色和数目，在这个圆里涂上相对应的颜色。

这个圆代表所有的10张卡片。

这个圆被分为\_\_\_\_\_等份。数数每个颜色各占几份。

2. 用分数表示每个颜色各占的份额。

绿\_\_\_\_\_ 黄\_\_\_\_\_ 橙\_\_\_\_\_ 蓝\_\_\_\_\_

概率指的是某事发生的几率。

将10张卡片有颜色的一面朝下，打乱顺序。看着上面的圆，如果现在掀开一张卡片，它可能是什么颜色的？

3. 把4个颜色按可能性从大到小排列。

\_\_\_\_\_

我们使用图形或分数来表示概率。如果是上述的10张卡片，那么选中一张绿色卡片的几率是4/10。

4. 写出各个颜色的概率。

选中一张黄色卡片的概率是\_\_\_\_\_。

选中一张橙色卡片的概率是\_\_\_\_\_。

选中一张蓝色卡片的概率是\_\_\_\_\_。

5. 把10张卡片有颜色的一面朝下放好。翻开一张。

6. 记录下它的颜色。把它放回去，重新打乱顺序。再翻开一张，记下颜色。如此反复做10次。

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

写下各个颜色出现的次数。

绿\_\_\_\_\_ 黄\_\_\_\_\_ 橙\_\_\_\_\_ 蓝\_\_\_\_\_

把它们按照次数从多到少排列。

与你之前写下的概率顺序相对照，两者是否一致？

再重复做一次这个实验。

概率能够说明事物发生的几率，却不能说明它是否一定发生。

你翻开某一颜色的卡片的次数和之前写下的概率接近吗？

## “美”事一桩

### 美国人喜欢的体育运动

体育运动是美国人业余时间最喜欢做的事情之一。在美国，人们把体育运动分成两大类，一类是观看性项目，如棒球、篮球、足球等；另一类是群众性项目，如登山、滑雪、游泳等。美国人对运动的热衷可用下列一组数字来说明：据统计，每年冬季约有720万人参加滑雪运动；到现场观看棒球比赛的观众有4000万人；大学足球比赛能吸引3000万人；在各种场合下观看篮球比赛的达到1.4亿人！

美国人对体育运动的兴趣是从小培养起来的，儿童不单单玩捉迷藏、荡秋千、翘翘板，也爱玩棒球、足球和篮球。高年级学生一般都会加入某个体育项目的协会或球队，经常组织比赛。

最受美国人欢迎的球类项目有棒球、橄榄球、篮球、高尔夫和网球，其中棒球被称作美国的“国球”。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

Absence makes the heart grow fonder.

离别情更切。

You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make him drink.

只可引导，切勿强求。

To know everything is to know nothing.

什么都知道，一如什么都不知道。

Fire and water have no mercy.

水火无情。

### Answer

课内练习

1. 10

2. 4/10, 3/10, 2/10, 1/10

3. green, yellow, orange, blue

4. 3, 2, 1

5. (略)

课后练习

1. 2 2. 4 3. 1 4. 3



# Fractions

3

## 分数



一个物体、一些物体等都可以被看做一个整体，把这个整体平均分成若干等分，这样的一份或几份都可以用分数来表示。

Fractions are numbers that stand for parts of things. They are made of two numbers separated by a line called a fraction bar. The top number is called the *numerator*<sup>1</sup> and the bottom number is called the *denominator*<sup>2</sup>.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{fraction bar} \quad \frac{1}{4} \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{numerator} \\ \text{denominator} \end{array}$$

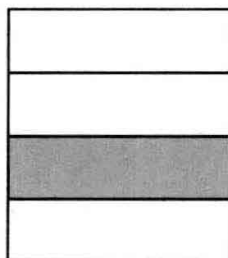
The denominator or bottom number represents the whole.

In Figure<sup>3</sup> A, the whole is made up of 4 parts.

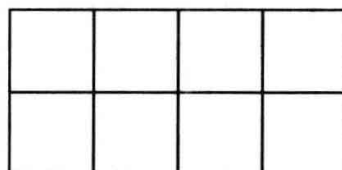
The denominator that describes Figure A is 4.

The top number or numerator tells us how many parts of the whole that we are talking about.

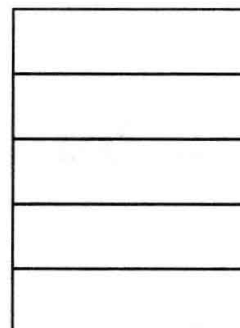
Look at the shaded part of Figure A. The numerator that expresses Figure A is 1.



A



B



C

1. How many parts make up the whole in Figure B? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Write the denominator that describes Figure B. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Shade four parts of Figure B.

Express the part that you have shaded as a fraction. \_\_\_\_\_

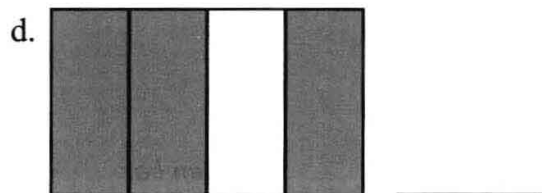
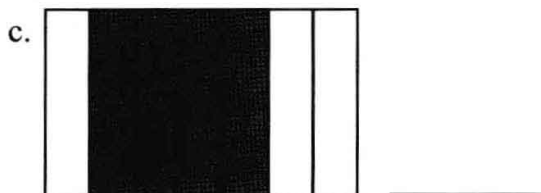
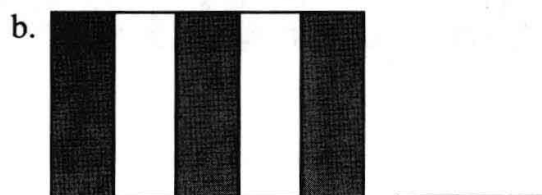
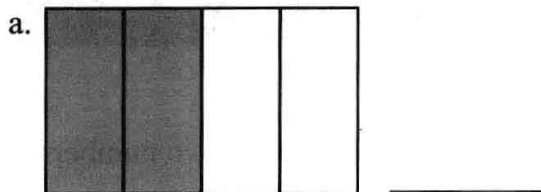
4. How many parts make up the whole of Figure C? \_\_\_\_\_

5. Write the denominator that describes Figure C. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Shade three parts of Figure C. Write the part that you have shaded as a fraction.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Write the fraction for the shaded part of each drawing.



When we say the name of a fraction, the numerator sounds like a **cardinal**<sup>4</sup> number and the denominator sounds like an **ordinal**<sup>5</sup> number.

$\frac{1}{3}$  *one*  
*third*    one-third

$\frac{4}{5}$  *four*  
*fifths*    four-fifths

注：本课选自四年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **numerator** ['nju:məreɪtə] *n.* (分数的) 分子

2. **denominator** [di'nɒmɪneɪtə] *n.* 分母

3. **figure** ['fɪgə] *n.* 数字; 图表; 轮廓

4. **cardinal** ['kɑ:dɪnəl] *adj.* 主要的, 基本的

5. **ordinal** ['ɔ:dɪnəl] *adj.* 顺序的, 依次的



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**A is made up of B** A (整体) 由B (部分) 组成

**B makes up A** B (部分) 构成了A (整体)

e.g. This team is made up of amateurs.

这个队是由业余选手组成的。

Cells make up human tissues.

细胞构成人体组织。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**Match each fraction with its number word.**

1.  $\frac{5}{6}$  2.  $\frac{1}{2}$  3.  $\frac{1}{9}$  4.  $\frac{5}{7}$  5.  $\frac{8}{10}$

6.  $\frac{3}{5}$  7.  $\frac{2}{3}$  8.  $\frac{4}{6}$  9.  $\frac{10}{12}$  10.  $\frac{3}{4}$

a. one-ninth b. three-fourths c. two-thirds d. five-sixths

e. five-sevenths f. one-half g. three-fifths h. ten-twelfths

i. eight-tenths j. four-sixths

## 参考译文

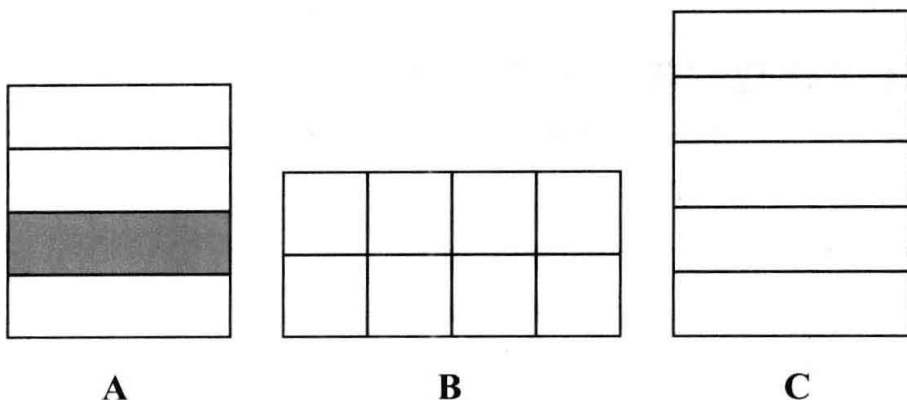
分数是用来表示事物的一部分的数。分数由中间被一根横线隔开的两个数字构成，这根横线叫做分数线。分数线上方的数字称为分子，下方的数字称为分母。

分母代表整体。

图A中，整体由4部分组成。

代表整体的分母就是4。分子表示我们所要研究的占了整体中的几份。

看图A中的阴影部分, 这说明分子为1。



1. 图B的整体共有几份? \_\_\_\_\_
2. 写出代表图B的分母。 \_\_\_\_\_
3. 取图B中的4份涂上阴影。  
写出代表阴影部分的分数。 \_\_\_\_\_
4. 图C的整体共有几份? \_\_\_\_\_
5. 写出代表图C的分母。 \_\_\_\_\_
6. 取图C中的3份涂上阴影。写出代表阴影部分的分数。 \_\_\_\_\_
7. 写出代表阴影部分的分数。 \_\_\_\_\_

读分数时我们将分子读成基数词, 分母读成序数词。例如,  $1/3$ 读成one-third,  $4/5$ 读成four-fifths。

## “美”事一桩

### 出生习俗

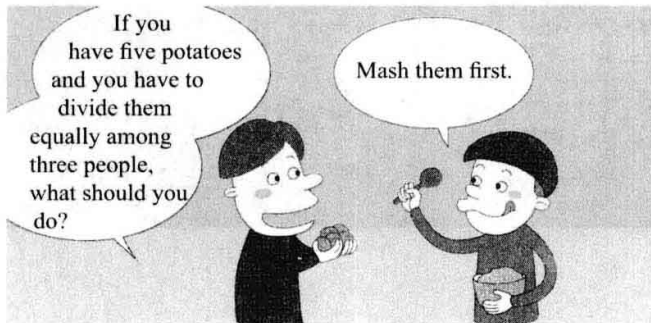
美国家庭的小孩出生之后, 当父亲的会给亲朋好友分发雪茄以示庆贺。传统上, 为了区分婴儿的性别, 人们通常给男婴穿蓝色的衣服, 给女婴穿粉红色的衣服。

基督教的家庭会为小孩举行洗礼仪式, 洗礼时孩子要么被浸泡在洗礼盆中, 要么被洒上圣水。仪式还包括给孩子取名。孩子还会有教父或教母。教父教母的职责是, 在新生儿受洗时为其做保, 代其申明信仰。在其父母无力或疏忽职责而不向孩子进行宗教教育时, 教父教母有责任根据自己在洗礼上所发的誓言代行其父母职责。

美国人很看重个人的生日, 一般举行家庭晚餐或邀请朋友聚会来庆祝生日。受到邀请的人都要带

点礼物送给寿星。孩子过生日时，不只是吃蛋糕收礼物，大人还会打打孩子的屁股以示他/她的特殊性，并表示对孩子的祝福。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



问：如果你有5只土豆，要在3个人中平均分配，你会怎样做？

答：先将其做成土豆泥。

## Answer

### 课内练习

1. 6 2. 6 3.  $\frac{4}{6}$  4. 5 5. 5 6.  $\frac{3}{5}$  7. a.  $\frac{1}{2}$  b.  $\frac{3}{5}$  c.  $\frac{4}{7}$  d.  $\frac{3}{4}$

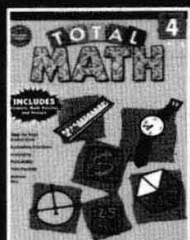
### 课后练习

1. d 2. f 3. a 4. e 5. i 6. g 7. c 8. j 9. h 10. b



# Decimals<sup>1</sup>

## 小数

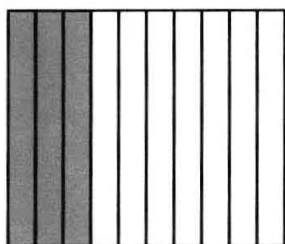


小数由整数部分、小数部分和小数点组成。测量物体时得到的往往不是整数，古人就发明了用小数来补充整数。小数是十进制分数的一种特殊表现形式。

### FRACTIONS TO DECIMALS

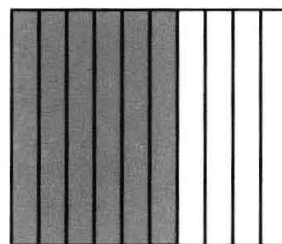
When a figure is divided into 10 equal parts, the parts are called tenths. Tenths can be written two ways—as a fraction or a decimal. A decimal is a number with one or more places to the right of a decimal point, such as 6.5 or 2.25. A decimal point is the dot between the ones place and the tenths place.

example:



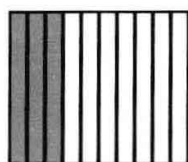
$\frac{3}{10}$  or 0.3 of the square is shaded

one	tenths
0	3

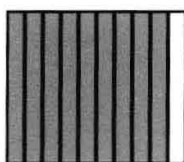


$\frac{6}{10}$       0.6

Directions: Write the decimal and fraction for the shaded parts of the following figures.



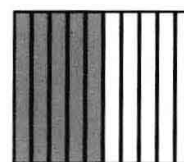
\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_



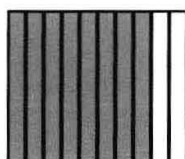
\_\_\_\_\_



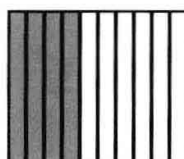
\_\_\_\_\_



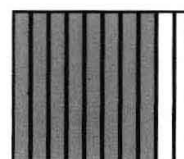
\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_



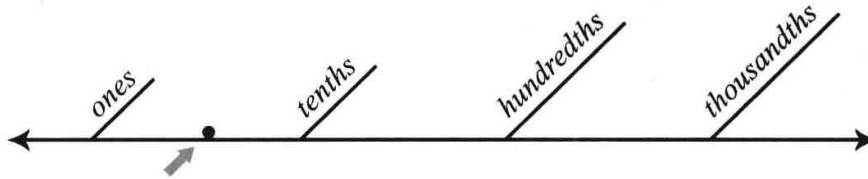
\_\_\_\_\_



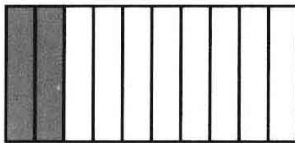
\_\_\_\_\_

## DOING DECIMALS

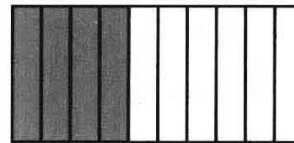
Just as a fraction stands for part of a whole number, a decimal also shows part of a whole number. And with decimals, the number is always broken into ten or a power of ten (hundred, thousand, etc.) parts. These place values are named tenths, hundredths, thousandths, etc.



A decimal point is a dot placed between the ones place and the tenths place.

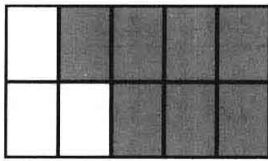


0.2 is read as  
"two tenths."

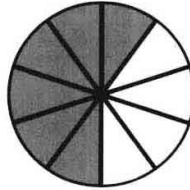


0.4 is  
four tenths

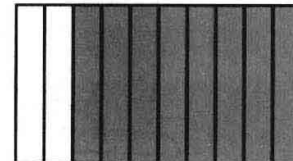
**Directions:** Write the answer as a decimal for the shaded parts.



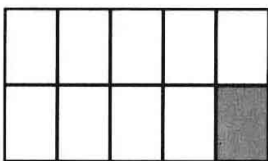
\_\_\_\_\_



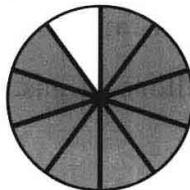
\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_

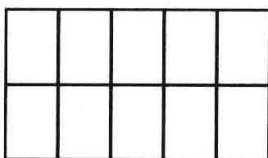


\_\_\_\_\_

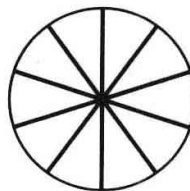


\_\_\_\_\_

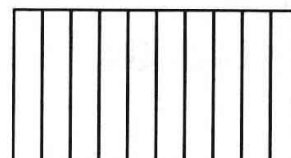
**Directions:** Color the parts that match the decimal numbers.



0.4



0.3

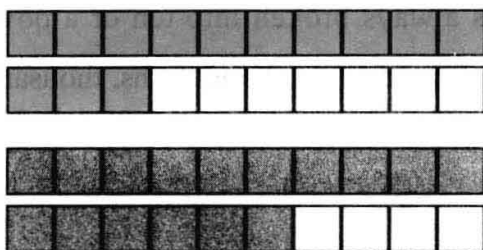


0.2

## DECIMALS

**Directions:** Add or subtract. Remember to include the decimal point in your answers.

**example:**

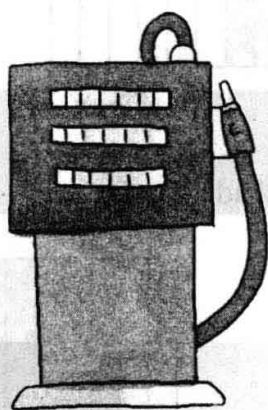


$$1\frac{3}{10} = 1.3$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 1.3 \\ + 1.6 \\ \hline 2.9 \end{array}$$

$$1\frac{6}{10} = 1.6$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 8.1 \\ + 1.7 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 4.1 \\ + 6.2 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 0.5 \\ + 1.6 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 7.6 \\ - 6.5 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 7.2 \\ - 2.6 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 1.2 \\ + 5.0 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 8.7 \\ - 3.9 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 6.8 \\ - 3.7 \\ \hline \end{array}$$



$$\begin{array}{r} 7.8 \\ - 6.8 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 16.5 \\ - 7.8 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 6.4 \\ + 5.3 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 10.0 \\ + 3.5 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.42 \\ + 0.35 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 0.98 \\ - 0.87 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 0.78 \\ - 0.13 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 0.83 \\ + 0.12 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.95 \\ - 0.14 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 3.23 \\ + 2.48 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 4.68 \\ - 2.65 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 5.86 \\ - 2.73 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 6.98 \\ + 1.40 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 3.27 \\ + 1.82 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 4.65 \\ - 1.32 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 5.97 \\ + 2.77 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Mr. Martin went on a car trip with his family. Mr. Martin purchased<sup>2</sup> gas 3 times. He bought 6.7 gallons<sup>3</sup>, 7.3 gallons, then 5.8 gallons of gas. How much gas did he purchase in all?

注：本课选自四年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. decimal ['desɪməl] *n.* 小数

2. purchase ['pɜ:tʃəs] *v./n.* 购买

3. gallon ['gælən] *n.* 加仑 (液量单位)



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. divide into 分成

e.g. We are divided into four groups.

我们分成4个小组。

Are lifters divided into body weight categories?

举重运动员按体重分级吗?

### 2. in all 总共

e.g. The groceries cost me 15 pounds in all.

这些菜总共花了我15英镑。

The class numbered 56 in all.

这个班总共56个人。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Decimal riddles.

Directions: Read the clues to write the numbers.

1. Numbers: 4, 8, 2, 2

Clues:

The numbers in the tens place and the tenths place are the same.

The greatest number is in the hundredths place.

2. Numbers: 1, 2, 3, 8

Clues:

The number in the tens place is 5 less than the number in the hundredths place.

The number in the tenths place is twice the number in the ones place.

3. Numbers: 3, 5, 8, 9

Clues:

The greatest number is in the hundredths place.

The number in the tenths place is 2 less than the number in the tens place .

4. Numbers: 2, 3, 4, 6

Clues:

The 3 is in the tenths place.

The number in the hundreds place is half the number in the tens place.

The number in the ones place is the sum of the numbers in the hundreds place and the tens place.

5. Numbers: 0, 5, 6, 7, 8

Clues:

The number in the hundredths place is 8 more than the number in the tenths place.

The 6 is in the tens place.

The number in the hundreds place is greater than the number in the ones place.

6. Numbers: 2, 4, 6, 7, 8

Clues:

The number in the hundredths place is twice the number in the tenths place.

The 7 is in the ones place.

The number in the hundreds place is three times the number in the tens place.

## II. Problem solving.

1. A porcupine has a tail 30.0 cm long. An opossum has a tail 53.5 cm long. How much longer is the opossum's tail?

2. A wood rat has a tail which is 23.6 cm long. A deer mouse has a tail 12.2 cm long. What is the difference between the two?

3. A cottontail rabbit has ears which are 6.8 cm long. A jackrabbit has ears 12.9 cm long. How much shorter is the cottontail's ear?

4. The hind foot of a river otter is 14.6 cm long. The hind foot of a hog-nosed skunk is 9.0 cm long. What is the difference?

5. A rock mouse is 26.1 cm long. His tail adds another 14.4 cm. What is his total length from his nose to the tip of his tail?

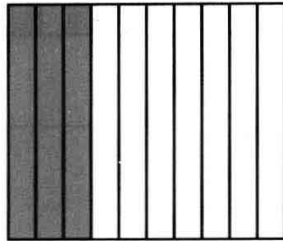


## 参考译文

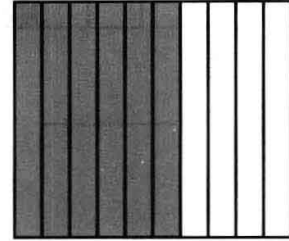
### 从分数到小数

把一个整体平均分为10等份，每一份叫作 $1/10$ 。 $1/10$ 一可以用两种形式表示——分数和小数。小数是含有小数点且小数点右边带有几个数字的数，如6.5和2.25。小数点指的是把个位和十分位隔开的小点。

例如：



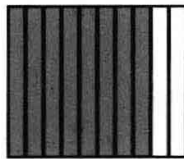
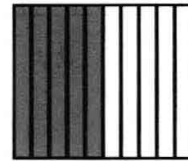
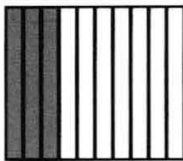
one	tenths
0	3



$\frac{3}{10}$  or 0.3 of the square is shaded

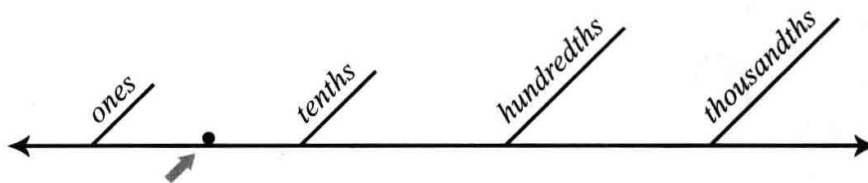
$\frac{6}{10}$       0.6

用分数和小数分别表示下列图形的阴影部分。

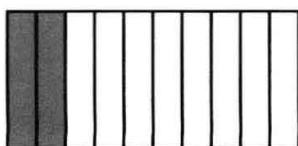


### 小数的计算

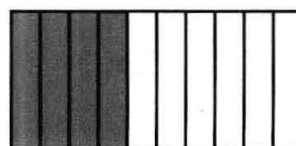
小数和分数同样都表示整体的一部分。就小数而言，整体通常被分为10等份（或者10的倍数如100，1000份等）。这些数位相应地称为十分位、百分位、千分位等。



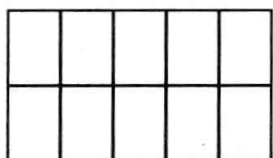
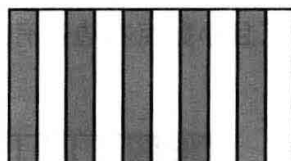
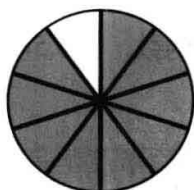
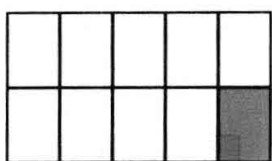
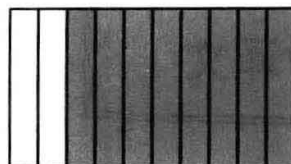
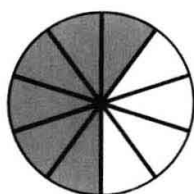
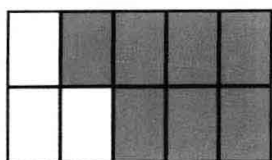
A decimal point is a dot placed between the ones place and the tenths place.



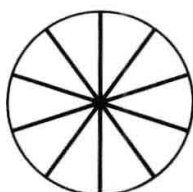
0.2 is read as  
"two tenths."



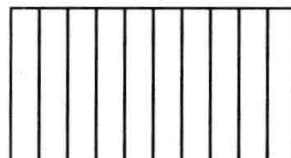
0.4 is  
"four tenths"



0.4

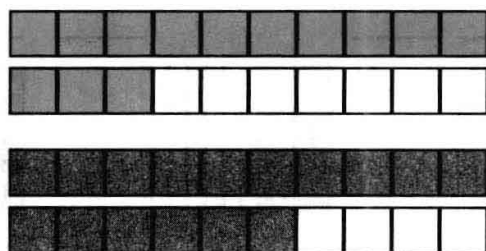


0.3



0.2

## 小数



$$1 \frac{3}{10} = 1.3$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 1.3 \\ + 1.6 \\ \hline 2.9 \end{array}$$

$$1 \frac{6}{10} = 1.6$$

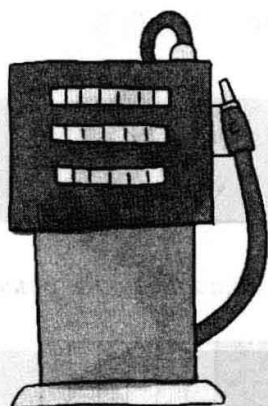
$\begin{array}{r} 8.1 \\ + 1.7 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 4.1 \\ + 6.2 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 0.5 \\ + 1.6 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 7.6 \\ - 6.5 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 7.2 \\ - 2.6 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 1.2 \\ + 5.0 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 8.7 \\ - 3.9 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 6.8 \\ - 3.7 \\ \hline \end{array}$
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

$\begin{array}{r} 7.8 \\ - 6.8 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 16.5 \\ - 7.8 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 6.4 \\ + 5.3 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 10.0 \\ + 3.5 \\ \hline \end{array}$
---	--	---	--

$\begin{array}{r} 0.42 \\ + 0.35 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 0.98 \\ - 0.87 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 0.78 \\ - 0.13 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 0.83 \\ + 0.12 \\ \hline \end{array}$
---	---	---	---

$\begin{array}{r} 0.95 \\ - 0.14 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 3.23 \\ + 2.48 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 4.68 \\ - 2.65 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 5.86 \\ - 2.73 \\ \hline \end{array}$
---	---	---	---

$\begin{array}{r} 6.98 \\ + 1.40 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 3.27 \\ + 1.82 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 4.65 \\ - 1.32 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 5.97 \\ + 2.77 \\ \hline \end{array}$
---	---	---	---



马丁先生和家人开车去旅行，路上加了3次油。第一次加6.7加仑，第二次7.3加仑，第三次5.8加仑。马丁先生共购买了多少汽油？ \_\_\_\_\_

## “美”事一桩

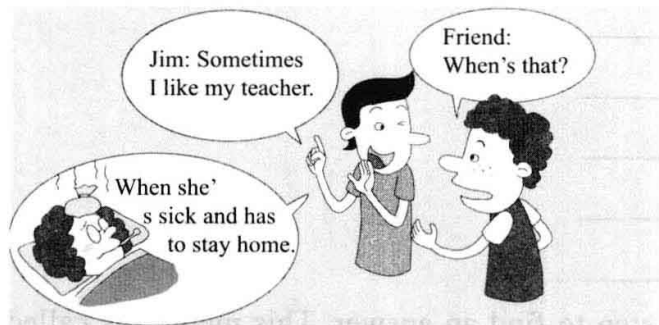
### 婚嫁习俗

在美国，男女结婚之前分别举行聚会。为新娘举行的称“bridal shower”，即“新娘送礼会”，所送的礼品多与新娘即将成为妻子这一角色有关，如咖啡壶、炒锅等厨房用具。为新郎举行的称“bachelor party”，即“单身汉聚会”，只有单身的男青年可以参加，他们借这个聚会向即将结束单身的朋友“告别”，举杯碰盏，一醉方休。

如果严格按照习俗办理，正式婚礼之前先要订婚，男女双方交换订婚戒指。之后就开始为婚礼做准备。根据传统，婚礼之日，在走上圣坛之前，新郎新娘不能会面，新郎也不能看新娘的礼服。新娘的父亲把女儿引上圣坛，等在那儿的新郎接过新娘的手。接下来，新郎新娘面对牧师站好，牧师为其举行仪式。仪式结束后，新郎新娘手挽手走出教堂，参加婚礼的人们朝他们抛撒米粒、玫瑰花瓣和五彩纸屑。

一般来说，婚礼和婚宴的费用由女方家里承担，其隆重和丰盛程度取决于女方家庭的经济能力。据说，美国父母嫁女儿花的钱比为其支付的教育费用还多。美国有些青年人不愿意让父母为自己结婚花费那么大的开销，因而放弃隆重的传统婚礼，按他们自己设计的独特仪式举行婚礼。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



吉姆：有时候我喜欢我们老师。

朋友：什么时候？

吉姆：她生病请假的时候。

### Answer

#### 课内练习

1、2（略）

3. 19.8 gallons

#### 课后练习

I. 1. 24.28 2. 31.28 3. 58.39 4. 246.3 5. 765.08

6. 627.48

II. 1. 23.5 cm 2. 11.4 cm 3. 6.1 cm 4. 5.6 cm 5. 40.5 cm

# 5

# Equation<sup>1</sup>

## 方程式



方程式是指含有未知数的等式。如： $x - 2 = 5$ ， $x + 8 = y - 3$ 。使等式成立的未知数的值称为方程的“解”或“根”。求方程的解的过程称为“解方程”。

An equation is a number sentence that contains an equal sign. The equal sign tells us that the numbers on both sides of the equation are equal to each other. To solve a missing number problem, we add, subtract<sup>2</sup>, or multiply<sup>3</sup> numbers *on both sides* of the equation. If we complete the operations with the *same number*, both sides will remain equal.

$$N - 27 = 95$$

N must stand alone.

$$N - 27 + 27 = 95 + 27$$

We add 27 to the left side.

$$N = 122$$

That means we must add 27 to the right side.

$$122 - 27 = 95$$

Substitute for N and prove.

Look at the following missing number problems. Write the mathematics operation you would use to solve the problem.

Write the number that you would need to add or subtract.

	add or subtract	number
a. $87 + N = 132$	_____	_____
b. $N - 46 = 95$	_____	_____
c. $267 = N - 42$	_____	_____
d. $N + 67 = 143$	_____	_____
e. $429 = N + 256$	_____	_____

Some problems may require more than one step to find an answer. This method is called grouping. Parentheses are used to group the numbers. We always begin by solving the part of the problem that is in parentheses.

Look at the following missing number problems.

Write the mathematics operation you would use to solve the problem. Write the number that you would need to add or subtract.

	add or subtract	number
a. $236+542+N=863$	_____	_____
b. $N-(26+34)=73$	_____	_____
c. $N+(93+42)=168$	_____	_____
d. $720=N+(315+240)$	_____	_____
e. $360=N-(127+32)$	_____	_____

注：本课选自四年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **equation** [ɪ'kweɪʃən] *n.* 等式，方程式
2. **subtract** [səb'trækt] *v.* 减，扣除
3. **multiply** ['mʌltɪplaɪ] *v.* (数) 乘，相乘；增加，繁殖



## Exercise 牛刀小试

Each of these problems should be set up as an equation with **N** representing the missing number. (*Problem can be set up in more than one way.*) Follow each step to solve the problem. Check the answer.

1. Joe collected 94 stamps altogether. He collected 27 in April and 34 in May. How many stamps did he collect in June?
2. James decided to share his rock collection with his friends. He gave 13 to George, 18 to Sharon, and 15 to Mark. He had 32 left. How many rocks did he have to start with?



3. There are 576 books in the library. There are 232 story books, 124 science books, and 92 hobby books. The rest of the books are history books. How many history books are there in the library?

## 参考译文

方程式就是含有未知数的数学等式。算式中的等号说明算式两边的数值相等。要解决一个含有未知数的数学题，我们可在算式两边同时加上、减去或者乘以一个数字。只要算式两边加上、减去或者乘以的是同一个数字，等式两边将保持相等。

$$N - 27 = 95$$

N必须单独存在。

$$N - 27 + 27 = 95 + 27$$

我们在等式左边加上27。

$$N = 122$$

这意味着等式右边也要加上27。

$$122 - 27 = 95$$

求出N之后将数值代回方程式中进行检验。

看下列含有未知数的方程式。写出你解题的运算公式。

写出你将加上还是减去某个数值。

	加或减	数值
a. $87 + N = 132$	_____	_____
b. $N - 46 = 95$	_____	_____
c. $267 = N - 42$	_____	_____
d. $N + 67 = 143$	_____	_____
e. $429 = N + 256$	_____	_____

有些方程式的求解不仅仅需要一个步骤。我们必须用括号先对数字进行分组。通常先计算括号内的部分。

看下列含有未知数的方程式。

写出你解题的运算公式。

写出你将加上还是减去某个数值。

	加或减	数值
a. $236+542+N=863$	_____	_____
b. $N-(26+34)=73$	_____	_____
c. $N+(93+42)=168$	_____	_____
d. $720=N+(315+240)$	_____	_____
e. $360=N-(127+32)$	_____	_____

## “美”事一桩

### 丧葬习俗

和其他国家的人们一样，美国人也很重视“身后之事”，死者的安葬同样有一套程序和仪式。

首先是购买墓穴。墓穴和房屋、汽车一样，是财产的一部分，可自由买卖。美国人通常在生前购买墓穴，各个公墓都设有经纪人，负责帮助顾客介绍挑选合意的墓穴。墓穴分为葬棺的和葬骨灰的，公墓里还有供寄存骨灰的龛。

美国的公墓同时也出售棺材。棺材的样式有几十种之多，材料、形状、颜色各不相同，但棺内都铺有锦缎被褥。

除了墓穴和棺材，还要挑选墓碑。墓碑的颜色和材质不同，但大小一致，这能使整片墓地看上去整齐有序。

公墓里往往盖有教堂似的建筑，但里面没有神像，宗教式和非宗教式的葬礼都可以在那里举行。宗教式的葬礼程序包括祷告、唱赞美诗和牧师致颂词。仪式毕，人们向遗体告别，用车窗遮有黑纱的黑色灵车将遗体运至墓地。送葬亲属依照同死者关系的远近依次往墓穴里撒土，随后推土机把墓穴填平，铺上草皮。

美国葬礼与中国传统葬礼的不同之处主要有两点：一是美国前往送葬的人不论亲朋好友，一律穿着黑色或其他深色的正式服装，男士打黑色领带。二是美国人把葬礼称作“a celebration of life”，即“庆祝生命的仪式”，亲友们在葬礼上回顾死者的一生，感激死者曾经和大家一起生活，感激生命的宝贵。因此，在美国葬礼上，人们并不捶胸顿足嚎啕大哭，而是怀着一种庄重肃穆的悲哀和感激，回顾到死者生平的某些趣闻轶事时，人们甚至会发出笑声。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

A fair death honors the whole life.

死得其所，流芳百世。

Custom is a second nature.

习惯成自然。

Far from eye, far from heart.

眼不见，心不烦。

God helps those who help themselves.

自助者，天助之。

### Answer

1. 33      2. 78      3. 128

# Measurement

# 6

## 几何图形测量



点、线、面、体可帮助人们有效地刻画错综复杂的世界，它们都称为几何图形。几何图形一般分为立体图形和平面图形。

You will need

a ruler, table knife, fork, spoon, a square inch made from paper,  
and a piece of construction paper 6 inches by 4 inches.

Length tells us 'how long'. We use a ruler or yardstick<sup>1</sup> to measure length.

**Measure these items.** Use your ruler.

knife = \_\_\_\_\_ inches   fork = \_\_\_\_\_ inches   spoon = \_\_\_\_\_ inches

The inches you have measured are linear<sup>2</sup> inches.

Linear inches measure things in lines.

————— *linear inch*

Square inches measure surface.

Your square inch should look like this.



*square inch*

**Read.** Follow directions.

Use your blue crayon. Draw a line along the linear inch.

Use your green crayon. Color the square inch.

Use the piece of construction paper that you have for this exercise.

Start at A and measure each side of the paper.

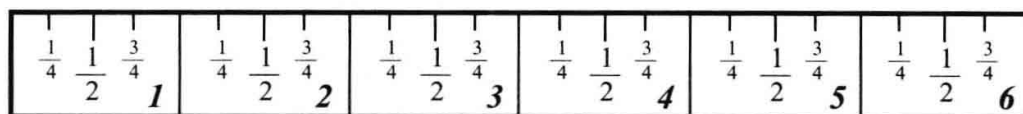
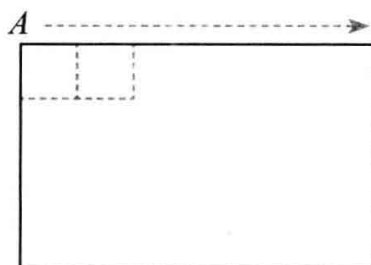
Write the measurements on the line and add.

\_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_ linear inches.

Put your square inch in the corner of the construction paper and draw around it. Move it over and draw around it again. Continue until you have filled the paper with square inches.

Write the number of square inches that you drew.

\_\_\_\_\_ square inches.



Measure the linear inches.

\_\_\_\_\_ linear inches

\_\_\_\_\_ linear inches

\_\_\_\_\_ linear inches

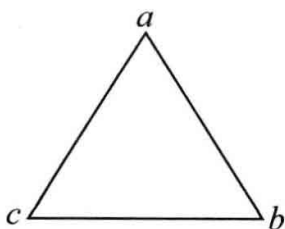
Perimeter is the distance around the outside of a plane shape.

Perimeter is measured in linear inches.

**Measure the sides of each shape.** Use your ruler.

Use the ruler at the top of the page as a number line.

Add the inches. Find the **perimeter**<sup>3</sup> of each shape.



Measure from a to b. \_\_\_\_\_

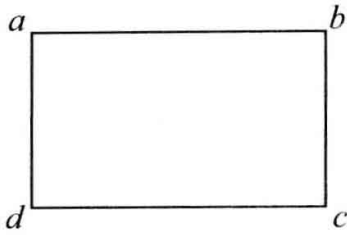
Measure from b to c. \_\_\_\_\_

Measure from c to a. \_\_\_\_\_

Add. \_\_\_\_\_ linear inches

The perimeter is \_\_\_\_\_ linear inches.





Measure from a to b. \_\_\_\_\_

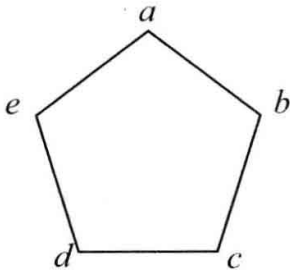
Measure from b to c. \_\_\_\_\_

Measure from c to d. \_\_\_\_\_

Measure from d to a. \_\_\_\_\_

Add. \_\_\_\_\_ linear inches

The perimeter is \_\_\_\_\_ linear inches.



Measure from a to b. \_\_\_\_\_

Measure from b to c. \_\_\_\_\_

Measure from c to d. \_\_\_\_\_

Measure from d to a. \_\_\_\_\_

Add. \_\_\_\_\_ linear inches

The perimeter is \_\_\_\_\_ linear inches.

注：本课选自三年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



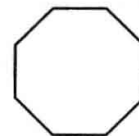
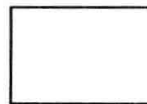
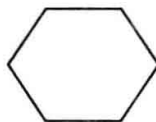
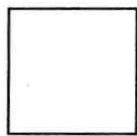
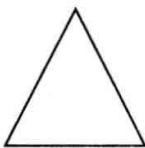
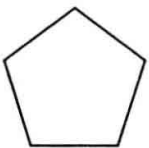
## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. yardstick ['jɑ:dstɪk] *n.* 码尺2. linear ['lɪniə] *adj.* 直线的, 长度的3. perimeter [pə'rɪmɪtə] *n.* 周长

## Exercise 牛刀小试

Match the names with the plane shapes.

a. octagon b. square c. pentagon d. rectangle e. triangle f. hexagon



1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_ 5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_

## 参考译文

所需物品

一把直尺，一把餐刀，一把叉子，一把汤匙，一张1平方英寸大小的纸片，一张4×6英寸大小的图画纸。

长度表示物体的长短。我们用直尺或码尺来测量长度。

使用直尺测量以下物体。

餐刀 = \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸      叉子 = \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸      汤匙 = \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

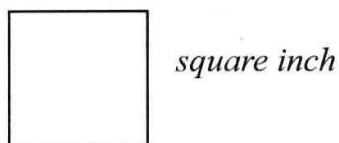
此时我们使用的单位是线性英寸。

线性英寸表示直线的长短。



平方英寸则表示面积的大小。

你的1平方英寸大小的纸片应是下图这样。



按步骤做下列练习：

用蓝色蜡笔沿着上面的1英寸长的线条画一根线。

用绿色蜡笔给你的1平方英寸大小的纸片上色。

使用那张图画纸来做这个练习。如下图所示。

从A端开始，测量纸片的每一条边的长度。

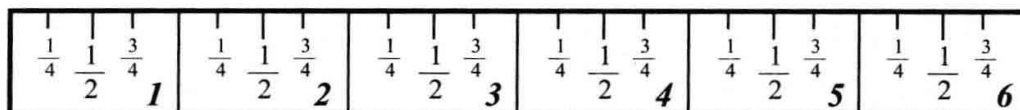
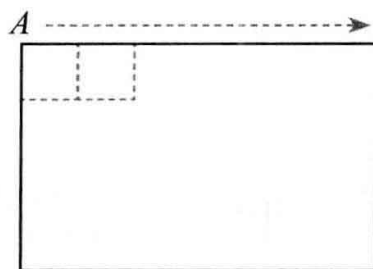
记下测量的结果，把边长相加。

\_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

将1平方英寸的纸片放在图画纸的一角，并将其边线描出。朝图示方向移动同样将其边线描出。

重复这个动作直至它“跑”完整张图画纸。

写下你移动1平方英寸纸片的次数。\_\_\_\_\_平方英寸。



计算直线的长度。

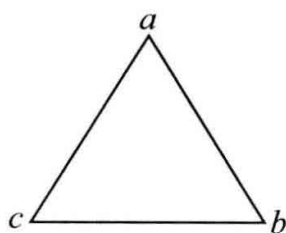
\_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

\_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

\_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

周长是平面图形围线的长度。周长是线性的数量单位。

使用直尺测量下列图形的边长，用这一页顶部的尺子作为数轴，并将长度相加，计算出周长。



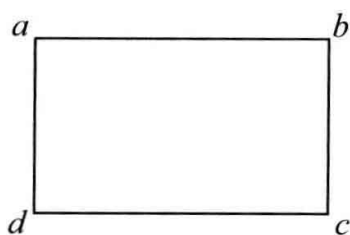
测量ab边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量bc边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量ac边. \_\_\_\_\_

三边相加 \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

周长 \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸



测量ab边. \_\_\_\_\_

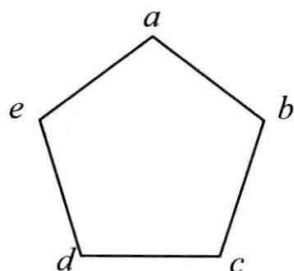
测量bc边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量cd边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量ad边. \_\_\_\_\_

四边相加 \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

周长 \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸



测量ab边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量bc边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量cd边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量de边. \_\_\_\_\_

测量ae边. \_\_\_\_\_

四边相加 \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

周长 \_\_\_\_\_ 英寸

## “美”事一桩

## 美国人的一日三餐

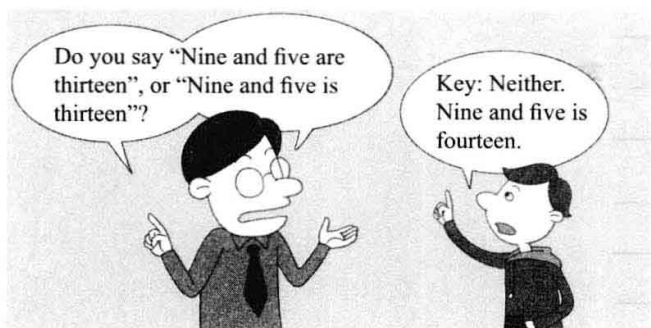
美国人生活节奏快，日常三餐主要以简餐和快餐为主。超市里出售洗净的蔬菜、配好作料并腌好的肉类半成品（放进烤箱或微波炉按下按钮过会儿就能享用），还有很多现成的匹萨、火腿、甜点等。

美国是世界各民族的汇集地，因此，流行的食物各式各样，代表了不同地区和民族的特点。典型的美式早餐口感稍淡，偏甜，喝的通常有麦片粥、牛奶、果汁或咖啡，吃的有吐司片、香肠、火腿、松饼、甜面包圈、派及各种做法的鸡蛋。

美国人的午餐相当随便，经常是吃一个汉堡或三明治，再来点沙拉。美国的许多公司和学校都配有微波炉，人们常常从家里自带午餐，中午用微波炉加热一下即可食用。父母为上学的孩子准备的午餐盒里一般有一个三明治、一个水果、一小份甜点，外加饮品。

晚餐是美国人一天中的正餐，通常包括汤、主菜、沙拉、主食如面包或面条等，还有饭后甜点如蛋糕和布丁。汤和沙拉往往很普通，如卷心菜沙拉；主食和甜点多为成品或半成品；最重要的是主菜，花样比较多，如牛排、猪排、烤肉、炸鸡、烤鸡、烤羊排、炸虾和威士忌马哈鱼等。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



注：笑话中间者询问的是数学算式的英文表达中谓语的数的问题。答者却似答非所问地指出了计算的错误。

## Answer

课内练习

（略）

课后练习

1. c 2. e 3. b 4. f 5. d 6. a

# Lines and Line Segments, Rays and Angles

7

## 直线与线段，射线与角



直线、线段和射线既有联系，也有区别。我们该如何给它们下定义呢？“角”与它们也有着千丝万缕的联系。本篇课文就带你梳理它们之间的关系。

You will need a ruler. Use your ruler to draw a line 4 inches long. You have probably always thought of this as a line, but now you are going to learn a new *definition*<sup>1</sup> for a line.

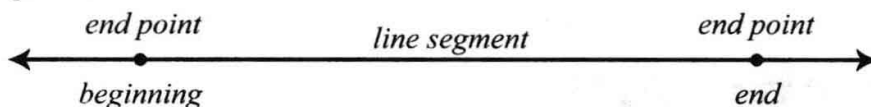
A line has no beginning and no end. A line goes on forever.

We use arrows to show that a line continues in both directions. A line is expressed this way. The arrows *define* it *as* a line.



Draw arrows on the line you drew to show your line has no beginning and no end.

A line *segment*<sup>2</sup> is a part of a line that has a beginning and an end. We mark the beginning and end with end points.



Put dots or periods to mark a 3 inch line segment you just drew. Label the dots as end points.

The end points show the beginning and end of the line segment.

Draw a line about 5 inches long. Show a 4 inch line segment on the line.

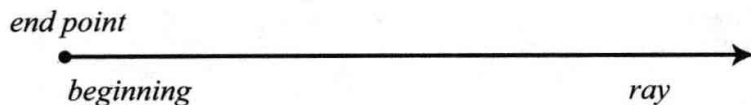
Label all parts of your drawing.

Some lines have just one end point.



A ray is a line that has just one end point.

A ray goes on forever in one direction.



We use arrows to show that a ray continues in one direction.

A ray is represented this way. The end point and arrow define it as a ray.

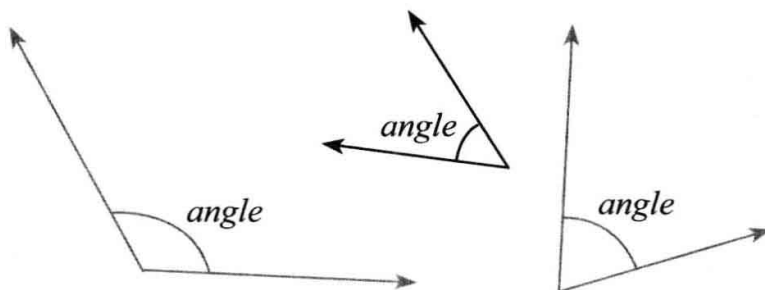
Draw a line about 2 inches long and put an end point at the beginning of what you have drawn. Put an arrow where you stopped drawing to show the line has no end.

Two different rays may have the same end point.

Make a dot showing an end point. Draw two rays from the end point. Remember to draw the arrows.

The space between the rays is called an *angle*<sup>3</sup>.

Your angle could look like any one of these drawings. Angles can be different sizes.



The shape of a polygon is made by line segments.

Wherever the line segments meet there is an end point and an angle.

注：本课选自四年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **definition** [defɪ'nɪʃən] *n.* 定义
2. **segment** ['seɡmənt] *n.* 部分，片断
3. **angle** ['æŋɡl] *n.* 角，角度



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**define...as** 把……定义为

e.g. I define him as a pragmatic realist, tough, disciplined, dedicated and willing to take responsibility.

我认为他是个务实的人，坚强、自律、乐于奉献又勇于承担责任。

In general, teaching materials are narrowly defined as textbooks.

狭义的教材通常指教科书。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

1. Draw a line at least 4 inches long. Label.
2. Draw a ray at least 3 inches long. Label.
3. Draw a line segment 2 inches long. Label.

### 参考译文

准备一把直尺。用直尺画一条4英寸长的直线。你可能一直认为这就是直线。但现在我们来学习直线的新定义。

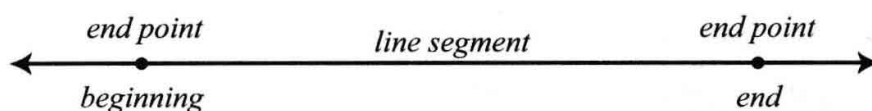
直线没有起点和终点，无限延伸。

我们用箭头表示直线朝两端无限延伸，如下图所示，线的两段加上箭头表示这是一条直线。



在你刚才画的那条线上加画箭头，表示它没有起点和终点。

线段是直线的其中一段，有起点和终点。这个起点和终点用端点来标记。



在刚才画的直线上用点标注出一段长3英寸的线段。

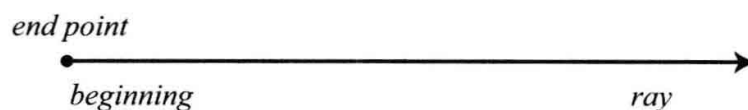
端点代表线段的起点和终点。

画一条5英寸长的线，在你画的线上截取4英寸长的一段。在你画的线上所有部分都做上标记。

有些线只有一个端点。

只有一个端点的线叫射线。

射线朝一个方向无限延伸。



我们用箭头来表示它无限延伸。

如下图所示，一端是端点，另一端是箭头，这就表示它是一条射线。

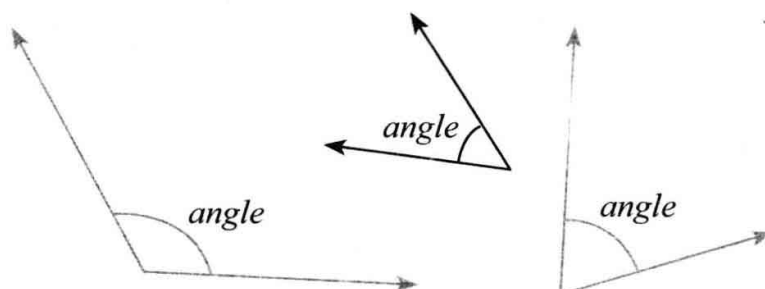
画一条2英寸长的线，在起始处标上端点，末端标上箭头以示无限延伸。

两条不同的射线可能共用一个端点。

画一个点作为端点，由此端点再画两条射线，注意末端要标上箭头。

两条射线之间的空间叫做角。

你画出来的角可能跟下图中的任何一个相似。角的大小各不相同。



多边形是由线段组成的。不管这些线段在哪儿相遇，他们都会形成一个“终点”和一个“角”。

## “美”事一桩

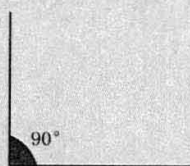
### 给服务人员小费

在美国，凡是服务性项目，皆应给服务人员付小费。旅馆门卫、客房服务需付不低于1美元的小费，饭店用餐则付给侍者相当于账单总额15%~20%的小费。不给小费或者少给小费被看做是极其失礼的行为。

在餐厅给小费，做法通常有两种：如果是现金付账，等服务员拿来夹着账单的夹子时，把应给的小费连同菜金放进夹子里，或者在服务员将找回的零钱放在夹子里还给你的时候，在夹子里留下小费，递还对方，说“Keep it, please”；如果是刷卡付账，看到账单后把卡给服务员，服务员拿去刷卡，然后带回银行的签购单请你签字。签购单上有含税的账单金额，如30.6美元，下面还有tip（小费）一栏和总额一栏是空的。一般总额都是账单金额加上15%小费后取个整数，如 $30.6 + 30.6 \times 15\% \approx 36$ ，那么小费一栏就填5.4美元。签好后服务员就可以拿去照单划钱。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

What can be right, but never wrong?



Key: An angle.

什么东西是对的，永远不会错？

答案：直角。

注释：在几何学中，“right”还有一个意思，即90°角。

Answer

(略)

# Plain Shapes and Solid Shapes

## 平面图形与立体图形



“平面图形”与“立体图形”之间的转化是小学四至六年级数学的教学内容之一，是培养学生空间观念的重要内容。

### Learn Box

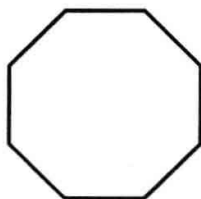
I can learn about flat and solid shapes.

I can learn about dimensions.

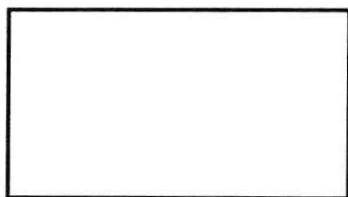
**You will need a ruler.**

1. Match the figure to its name.

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

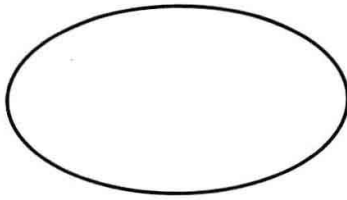


(b) \_\_\_\_\_

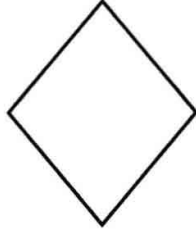




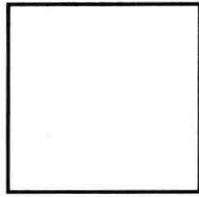
(c) \_\_\_\_\_



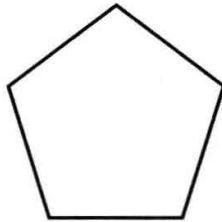
(d) \_\_\_\_\_



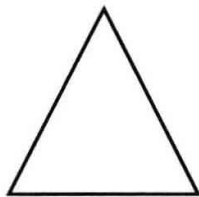
(e) \_\_\_\_\_



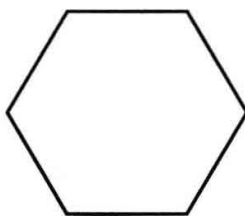
(f) \_\_\_\_\_



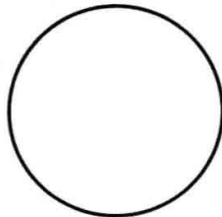
(g) \_\_\_\_\_



(h) \_\_\_\_\_



(i) \_\_\_\_\_



1. oval<sup>1</sup>
2. hexagon<sup>2</sup>
3. pentagon<sup>3</sup>
4. square
5. octagon<sup>4</sup>
6. triangle<sup>5</sup>
7. circle
8. diamond
9. rectangle<sup>6</sup>

In mathematics, we describe a flat shape as a plane shape.

Is each of the figures above a plane shape?

We may say that each one of these figures belongs to the general group of plane shapes.

**Polygons<sup>7</sup>** are closed, plane figures with 3 or more sides.

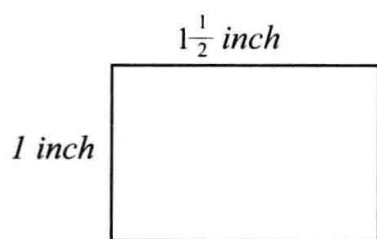
Look at the figures above.

- a. Is each of these figures a closed figure? \_\_\_\_\_
- b. Do all the sides meet and join each other? \_\_\_\_\_
- c. Does each figure have three or more sides? \_\_\_\_\_
- d. Which ones do not have three or more sides? \_\_\_\_\_

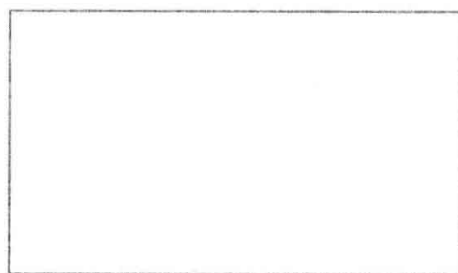
Plane shapes are all around us. The piece of paper you are writing on is an example of a rectangle. Doors and windows are rectangles. Watch the road signs when you are riding in a car. Make a list of all the examples of polygons and plane shapes that you find.

Rectangles and squares can be measured using length and width. The length is the longer side and the width is the shorter side. Length and width are called *dimensions*<sup>8</sup>.

The dimensions of rectangles and squares are length and width. Rectangles and squares are two dimensional figures.



A.



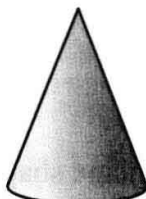
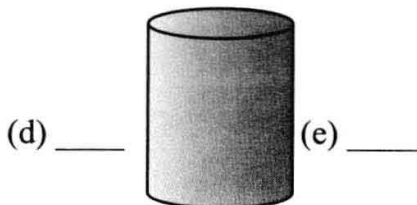
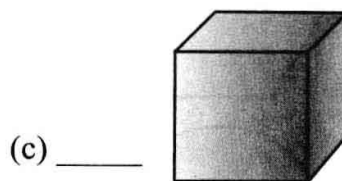
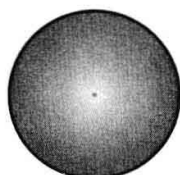
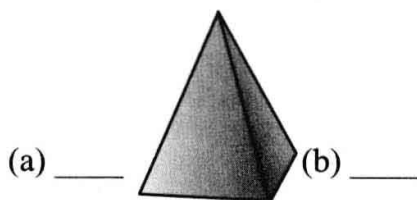
B.

Write the dimensions of figure A. length \_\_\_\_\_ width \_\_\_\_\_

Measure figure B.

Write the dimensions. length \_\_\_\_\_ width \_\_\_\_\_

2. Match the solid shape with its name.

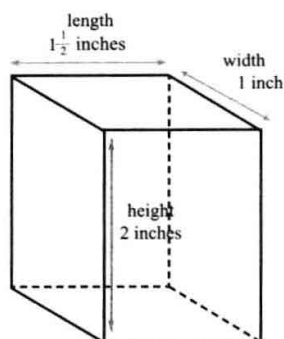


1. cylinder<sup>9</sup> 2. cube 3. sphere 4. pyramid 5. cone<sup>10</sup>

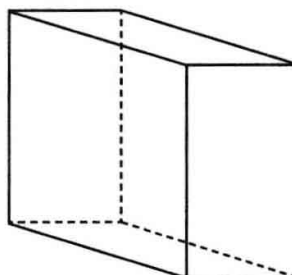
Plane shapes are flat shapes. They do not take up space. Solid shapes do take up space.

Most of the objects around us are solid shapes. Chairs, desks and tables are all examples of solid shapes.

The dimensions of a solid shape are length, width and height. Solid shapes are three dimensional figures.



A.



B.

Write the dimensions of figure A. length \_\_\_\_\_ width \_\_\_\_\_ height \_\_\_\_\_

Measure figure B. Write the dimensions.

length \_\_\_\_\_ width \_\_\_\_\_ height \_\_\_\_\_

The sides of a solid are called faces.

Look carefully.

3. How many faces do you count for figure A \_\_\_\_\_? B \_\_\_\_\_?

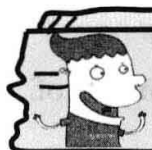
注：本课选自四年级《数学》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. oval ['əʊvəl] *n.* 椭圆形 *adj.* 椭圆形的
2. hexagon ['heksəgən] *n.* 六边形
3. pentagon ['pentəgən] *n.* 五边形, 五角形
4. octagon ['ɒktəgən] *n.* 八边形
5. triangle ['traɪæŋɡl] *n.* 三角形

6. rectangle ['rektæŋɡl] *n.* 矩形, 长方形
7. polygon ['pɒlɪgən] *n.* 多边形
8. dimension [dɪ'menʃən] *n.* 尺寸, 维
9. cylinder ['sɪlɪndə] *n.* 圆柱体
10. cone [kəʊn] *n.* 圆锥体



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**Write the name of each shape by its definition.**

1. Three-sided polygon. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Four-sided polygon with all sides equal. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Four-sided polygon with opposite sides equal. \_\_\_\_\_
4. A four-sided polygon that stands on end. \_\_\_\_\_
5. A closed plane shape with no straight sides. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Five-sided polygon. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Six-sided polygon. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Eight-sided polygon. \_\_\_\_\_
9. A flattened closed plane shape with no straight sides. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The bottom is round like a circle. The top is a point. \_\_\_\_\_
11. This solid has six flat sides. Each side is the shape of a square. Each square is the same size.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. The bottom may be any shape of a polygon. The top is a point. The sides must be triangles.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. This is a perfectly round shape like a ball. \_\_\_\_\_
14. The top and bottom of this solid shape are circles. \_\_\_\_\_

### 参考译文

#### 学习指南

我将学到平面图和立体图，还将学到面积。

你需要一把尺子。

1. 将下列图形与其名称搭配。

(见原文)

在数学领域，我们把扁平的图形称作平面图形。

上面的每个图形都是平面图吗？

我们可以说以上这些图形都属于平面图形的基本范畴。

由三条或者三条以上的边围成的封闭的平面图形叫作多边形。

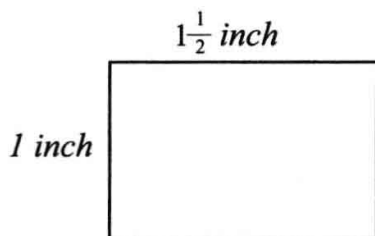
看着上面那些图形。

- 每个图形都是闭合图形吗？ \_\_\_\_\_
- 每个边都和其他边相交吗？ \_\_\_\_\_
- 每个图形都有三条或三条以上的边吗？ \_\_\_\_\_
- 哪些没有三条或三条以上的边？ \_\_\_\_\_

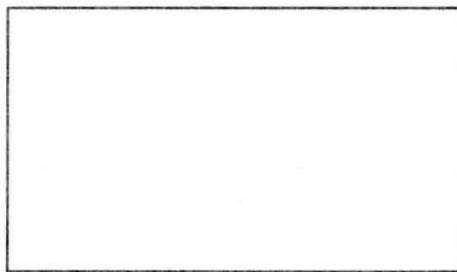
平面图形在我们周围随处可见。你正在写字的这张纸就是一个长方形。门和窗户也是长方形。坐车时看看路边的标志牌都是哪些多边形和平面图形，把它们记下来。

长方形和正方形的大小可以通过长和宽来衡量。长、宽分别指的是长边和短边的长度。长和宽就是它们的尺寸，也称作“维”。

长方形和矩形的“维”是长和宽。它们是二维图形。



A.



B.

写出图A的尺寸：长\_\_\_\_\_ 宽\_\_\_\_\_

测量图B，写出它的尺寸：长\_\_\_\_\_ 宽\_\_\_\_\_

2. 把下列立体图形与其名称搭配。

(见原文)

平面图形是扁平的，不占据空间。立体图形与此相反，它们要占据一定的空间。

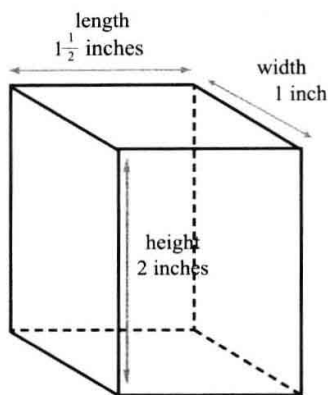
我们周围的大多数物体都是立体图形，例如椅子、书桌和餐桌等。

立体图形的“维”（即尺寸）是长、宽和高。它们是三维图形。

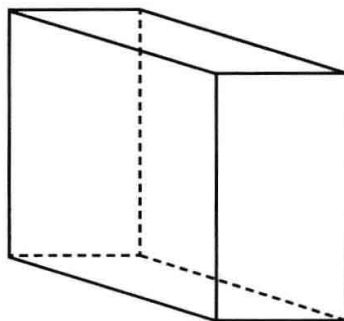


写出图A的尺寸: 长\_\_\_\_\_ 宽\_\_\_\_\_ 高\_\_\_\_\_

测量图B, 写出它的尺寸: 长\_\_\_\_\_ 宽\_\_\_\_\_ 高\_\_\_\_\_



A.



B.

立体图形的侧面称作“面”。

仔细看

3. 图A有\_\_\_\_\_个面, 图B有\_\_\_\_\_个面。

## “美”事一桩

### 得来速

近几年国内出现了不少麦当劳“得来速”餐厅, 不用下车就可点餐。“得来速”音译自英语“drive-through/drive-thru”, 也就是免下车服务, 最早出现于美国, 如今已在美国的各行各业迅速发展开来。有“得来速”的地方, 顾客驱车到一个窗口, 不用下车, 就能享受到服务, 然后继续开车。有些行业为了提高效率, 避免堵车, 分设两个窗口, 比如, 在“得来速”餐厅或药店, 人们可以开车到一个窗口点餐或交药方, 再驱车到下一个窗口取食物或药品。现在的美国人如果愿意, 可以一整天都呆在车里, 却仍能照常办理日常事务: 一日三餐在“得来速”餐厅吃, 取钱还钱在“得来速”ATM, 寄信到邮局的“得来速”窗口, 到洗衣店取衣服也可以“得来速”, 甚至汽车教堂也开始出现, 人们只需把车开进去, 不用下车就可以做礼拜。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

It never rains but it pours.

不鸣则已，一鸣惊人。

Life is but a span.

人生苦短。

Misfortunes never come alone.

祸不单行。

One cannot put back the clock.

时光不能倒流。

### Answer

#### 课内练习

1. (a)5 (b)9 (c)1 (d)8 (e)4 (f)3 (g)6 (h)2 (i)7

2. (a)4 (b)3 (c)2 (d)1 (e)5

#### 课后练习

1. triangle 2. square 3. rectangle 4. diamond 5. circle

6. pentagon 7. hexagon 8. octagon 9. oval 10. cone

11. cube 12. pyramid 13. sphere 14. cylinder

# **Part 5**

## **Others**

### **其他**

# Building Materials for Strong Bones

## 强健的骨骼需要什么



体骨是由206块骨头组成，形成支撑肌肉与器官的框架。骨骼组成的空间可保护脑或内脏等柔软的组织；因为骨骼的支撑，肌肉可以伸缩，身体才可以自由活动。因此强健的骨骼对于人体的健康十分重要。

Your bones grow as your body grows. All bones are living tissues<sup>1</sup>; thus they need good food to increase in size and strength. Bones are hard because of the large amount of minerals they contain. Your blood carries these minerals to your bones to make them strong. *Milk is especially important for building strong bones*, because it contains calcium<sup>2</sup> and phosphorus<sup>3</sup>, important minerals that your bones need. Milk that is fortified<sup>4</sup> with vitamin D helps the body to absorb calcium. Sunshine helps your skin to manufacture vitamin D in your body.

Good food helps build strong bones; good posture and exercise help build strong, *straight* bones. When your body is growing rapidly, you

may sometimes feel awkward<sup>5</sup> and clumsy<sup>6</sup> because your strength and coordination<sup>7</sup> have not caught up with<sub>1</sub> your growth. Exercise aids bone growth and helps you to develop both strength and coordination. Any activity that makes you stronger and more flexible<sup>8</sup> will help you to overcome that awkward feeling and make you more comfortable and sure of yourself<sub>2</sub>.

Just as your bones make it possible for you to hold your body with correct posture, so<sub>3</sub> correct posture is needed for the proper growth and development of your bones. Poor posture can force the bones to grow improperly, causing round shoulders, a flattened chest, or



the wrong kind of curves in the spinal<sup>9</sup> column.

注：本文选自四年级《健康》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. tissue ['tɪʃu:] <i>n.</i> (生物) 组织; 薄棉纸      | 6. clumsy ['klʌmzi] <i>adj.</i> 笨拙的, 笨重的           |
| 2. calcium ['kælsiəm] <i>n.</i> 钙              | 7. coordination [kəʊ,ɔ:di'neiʃən] <i>n.</i> 协调, 和谐 |
| 3. phosphorus ['fɒsfərəs] <i>n.</i> 磷          | 8. flexible ['fleksəbl] <i>adj.</i> 灵活的, 柔韧的       |
| 4. fortify ['fɔ:tɪfaɪ] <i>vt.</i> 强化, 增加 (营养素) | 9. spinal ['spainəl] <i>adj.</i> 脊柱的               |
| 5. awkward ['ɔ:kwəd] <i>adj.</i> 笨拙的, 不灵活的     |  |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. catch up with 赶上, 跟上

e.g. We must catch up with times.

我们必须赶上时代。

Could you just slow down a little? I can't catch up with you.

你慢一点好吗? 我跟不上了。

### 2. be sure of oneself 自信; 自以为是

e.g. She seems very sure of herself.

她似乎十分自信。

To succeed in something, you must be sure of yourself.

要想获得成功, 你必须有自信心。

### 3. just as..., so... 就像, 正如

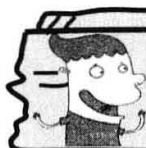
e.g. Just as you hate math, so I dislike chemistry.

我不喜欢化学, 就像你讨厌数学一样。

Just as bitter medicine cures sickness, so unpalatable advice benefits conduct.

良药苦口利于病, 忠言逆耳利于行。





## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Complete the sentences.

1. All bones are living \_\_\_\_\_ so they need food to grow.
2. Blood carries nutrients and \_\_\_\_\_ to bones to make them strong.
3. Milk is good for bones because it is rich in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Vitamin D helps the bone to \_\_\_\_\_ calcium.
5. We need both good food and good \_\_\_\_\_ to build strong and \_\_\_\_\_ bones.
6. Poor posture may cause round shoulders, \_\_\_\_\_ chest and the wrong kinds of curves in the \_\_\_\_\_.

### II. Translate this sentence into English.

居室如人，同样具有个性。

## 参考译文

骨骼随着身体的生长而生长。所有的骨骼都是活性组织，因此它们要长大变结实就需要食物。骨骼很坚硬，是因为其含有大量的矿物质。血液源源不断地将这些矿物质输送到骨骼，使它们长得结实坚固。牛奶十分有益于骨骼的发育，因为牛奶含有的钙和磷是骨骼需要的重要矿物质。牛奶中添加的维生素D可以促进身体对钙的吸收。阳光能够帮助皮肤在身体里合成维生素D。

有营养的食物使骨骼长得坚固，而良好的行走坐立姿势和体育锻炼则使其结实挺拔。身体处

于发育阶段时，你有时候会觉得浑身不舒服，手脚不灵活，这是因为你的身体力量和协调能力跟不上生长的速度。体育锻炼有助于骨骼的发育，还可以增强身体力量，提高协调能力。任何训练身体力量和灵活度的运动都能够帮助你克服发育阶段的身体不适，令你感觉更加舒适、自信。

正如正确的身体姿势离不开健康的骨骼，骨骼的生长和发育也离不开正确的姿势。不良姿势会压迫骨骼，使其不能正常生长，从而造成含胸、扁平胸或脊椎不正常弯曲。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国小学各年级健康课内容概览

年级 教学内容	幼儿园和低年级 (K—3)	四年级	五年级	六年级
身体健康	个人清洁、学校清洁、休息与睡觉、用餐实践、姿势、牙齿健康、一般感冒、往返学校的安全、操场安全、在家安全和身体发育	视力和听力、照明、通风、穿衣、清洁、活动、牙齿问题、营养、预防传染、避免中毒、预防火灾、交通安全	个人健康评价、促进个人健康、平衡的膳食、食物准备与管理、传染病、娱乐需要、发展技能、身体发育、休息、学校意外事故、防火与消防演习	自行车安全、安全巡查、健康检查、身体功能、成长与发展、外表修饰、姿态、休息与睡眠、传染病、家庭与农场安全、急救程序
智力健康	分享、合作、友善、交友、遵守秩序、依靠集体和达到目标	运动道德、自主、自信、友谊、成长、礼貌、接受失望	家庭关系、同辈群体、忠诚、社会地位、感情成熟	人们的兴趣个性、感情调适、生活目标、自我提高
社区健康	家庭生活、水和牛奶的供应源、日照与健康	家庭健康、帮助邻居、改善邻里关系	家庭卫生、健康广告、社区安全项目、学校卫生	社区疾病控制、社区水供应、牛奶控制措施、社区卫生

## A Humor 休闲时刻

What can you hold in your left hand, but not in your right hand?

Key: Your right elbow.



问：什么东西你的左手能拿，而你的右手不能拿？  
答：你的右肘。

### Answer

I. 1. tissues 2. minerals 3. calcium, phosphorus 4. absorb 5. posture, straight 6. flattened, spinal column  
II. Just as people have their own personalities, so do their homes.

# Protect Your Teeth

## 保护牙齿



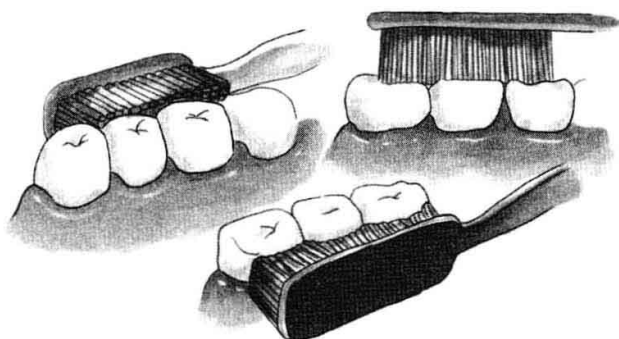
人的一生有两副牙齿，即乳牙和恒牙。食物进入机体的第一关就是在口腔内咬碎，碾细，进入消化道，并且牙齿的咀嚼运动还可产生反射性的刺激，促进胃液分泌，以利消化。可见牙齿直接影响食物的消化吸收，与人体健康息息相关。同样，牙齿对于人的发音和容貌也有着重要的影响。

### EFFECTIVE PLAQUE<sup>1</sup> CONTROL

The saliva<sup>2</sup> in your mouth helps promote good dental health by washing food from around your teeth and by neutralizing<sup>3</sup> decay-causing acids in your mouth. By forming good daily habits to keep your mouth clean and free of plaque, you can prevent plaque attacks.

### BRUSH FREQUENTLY

There are several good methods for brushing your teeth, but the method you use is not as important as how well you brush. The



next time you brush your teeth, time yourself with a watch that has a second hand. Were you finished brushing in less than one minute? If so, you probably removed no more than ten percent of the plaque from your teeth. That means ninety percent of the plaque remained to form acid for another plaque attack. Brushing your teeth thoroughly will probably take at least three minutes.

A flat toothbrush with medium-soft bristles<sup>4</sup> helps remove food particles and plaque from your teeth; a brush that is too stiff may damage your gums<sup>5</sup>. The size of your toothbrush should be small enough that you can reach every tooth. Always brush your teeth gently but vigorously and clean only one or two teeth at a time. Make sure you brush the inside, outside, and chewing surface of every tooth—upper and lower.

Be careful not to squish<sup>6</sup> your toothbrush,

because only the tips of the bristles clean your teeth. A worn-out brush cleans poorly, and its bent bristles can injure your gums. You should replace your toothbrush usually every three or four months.

Brush your teeth as soon as possible after you eat to remove plaque and food particles. Whenever you cannot brush right after a snack or a meal, rinse<sup>7</sup> your mouth well with water. Although the water will not remove plaque, it can wash away food particles which contain sugar.

Because plaque-producing bacteria<sup>8</sup> are most active during the night, you should brush your teeth again at bedtime. The salivary glands<sup>9</sup> release less saliva while you sleep than when you are awake. Thus, less saliva is available to help neutralize decay-causing acids in your mouth while you sleep.

Do you brush your tongue when you brush your teeth? You should—it helps to freshen your breath. Bacteria that grow in your mouth can cause bad-smelling breath, or

halitosis<sup>10</sup>. Breathing through the mouth is one cause of halitosis. Unpleasant-smelling breath can also be caused by some foods you eat or by an infection<sup>11</sup>. Good oral hygiene<sup>12</sup> usually will keep your breath fresh.

Use fluoride<sup>13</sup> toothpaste regularly to help prevent dental caries<sup>14</sup>. Fluoride, which is absorbed by the enamel<sup>15</sup> on your teeth, strengthens the enamel, making it more resistant to<sub>2</sub> acid attacks. You need between a half inch and an inch of fluoride toothpaste to effectively fight tooth decay.

Always rinse your toothbrush thoroughly with running water each time you use it. Because harmful bacteria can multiply<sup>16</sup> rapidly on a moist toothbrush, you should keep your toothbrush in a clean place where the air can surround it and dry it.

## FLOSS<sup>17</sup> DAILY

Most plaque forms near the gum line and between your teeth where your toothbrush





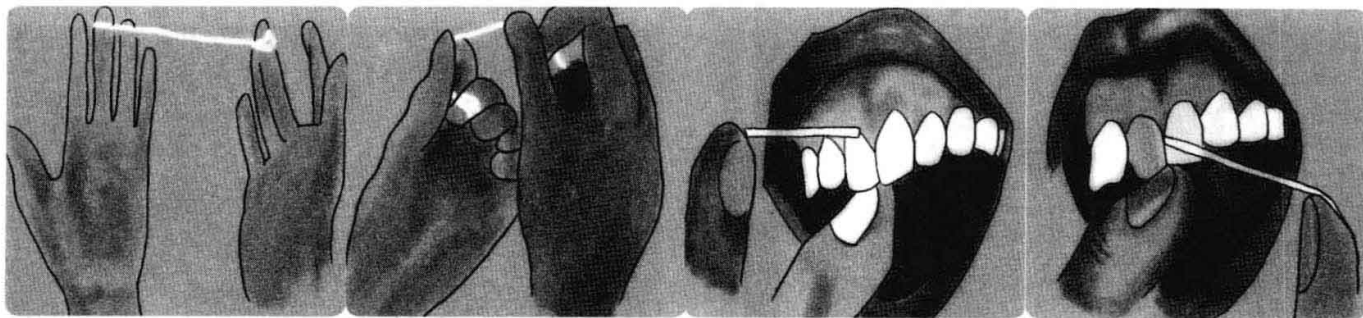
cannot reach; therefore, much plaque remains on your teeth even after you do a thorough job of brushing them. Flossing removes the plaque and food particles from these areas where tooth decay and gum disease often start; thus you should floss your teeth at least one time every day before you brush them. Remember that while you sleep, less saliva is produced to help neutralize decay-causing acids. Flossing your teeth at bedtime to remove plaque and food particles that produce acids helps protect your teeth and gums when your body's natural protection is lower.

Dentists recommend that<sup>3</sup> most people use un-waxed floss or dental tape; however, if your teeth are crooked or crowded, you may need to use waxed floss. If you do not regularly floss your teeth now, your gums may bleed and feel sore the first few days you floss them. As the plaque-producing bacteria are removed, your gums will heal<sup>18</sup> and stop bleeding if they are healthy. If you stop flossing for a time, your

gums may bleed when you begin again.

Floss that is used incorrectly can injure your gums. Always be careful when you insert<sup>19</sup> it between your teeth and under the gum line; do not let the floss snap into your gums. To insert floss gently between your teeth, hold the floss tight with your thumbs and first fingers and use a gentle sawing back-and-forth motion. At the gum line, curve the floss into the shape of a C around one tooth. While holding the floss tightly against the tooth, move the floss away from your gum—down on the top teeth and up on the bottom teeth. Before removing the loss, curve it around the adjacent<sup>20</sup> tooth. You should use clean floss between each set of teeth

Like any skill, flossing your teeth will take less time with practice. If you floss your teeth the same way each day and establish a regular time to floss them, flossing will soon become a good habit.

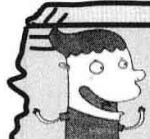


注：本文选自四年级《健康》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>plaque</b> [pla:k] <i>n.</i> 菌斑                         | 12. <b>hygiene</b> ['haɪdʒi:n] <i>n.</i> 卫生, 保健                 |
| 2. <b>saliva</b> [sə'laɪvə] <i>n.</i> 唾液                      | 13. <b>fluoride</b> ['flɔ:raɪd] <i>n.</i> 氟化物                   |
| 3. <b>neutralize</b> ['nju:trə,laɪz] <i>vt.</i> 使……失效, 抵消, 中和 | 14. <b>caries</b> ['keəri:z] <i>n.</i> 龋齿                       |
| 4. <b>bristle</b> ['brɪsl] <i>n.</i> (刷子等的) 毛; (猪等的) 鬃毛       | 15. <b>enamel</b> [ɪ'næməl] <i>n.</i> 珐琅质, 牙釉质                  |
| 5. <b>gum</b> [gʌm] <i>n.</i> 牙龈, 口香糖                         | 16. <b>multiply</b> ['mʌltɪplaɪ] <i>v.</i> 相乘, 增加; 繁殖           |
| 6. <b>squash</b> [skwɒʃ] <i>vt.</i> 挤压                        | 17. <b>floss</b> [flɒs] <i>n.</i> 丝绵, 丝线, 牙线 <i>v.</i> 使用牙线清洁牙齿 |
| 7. <b>rinse</b> [rɪns] <i>v.</i> 漱洗, 冲洗                       | 18. <b>heal</b> [hi:l] <i>v.</i> 痊愈                             |
| 8. <b>bacteria</b> [bæk'tɪərɪə] <i>n.</i> 细菌                  | 19. <b>insert</b> [ɪn'sɜ:t] <i>vt.</i> 插入, 嵌入                   |
| 9. <b>gland</b> [glænd] <i>n.</i> 腺体                          | 20. <b>adjacent</b> [ə'dʒeɪsənt] <i>adj.</i> 相邻的, 接近的           |
| 10. <b>halitosis</b> [hæli'təʊsɪs] <i>n.</i> 口臭               |   |
| 11. <b>infection</b> [ɪn'fekʃən] <i>n.</i> 传染, 感染             |   |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. free of/from sth 不含有害物的, 不受……伤害/影响

e.g. The lunch is free of charge.

午餐是免费的。

This chip is free from artificial colors and flavorings.

这种薯片不含人工色素和人工调味料。

### 2. be/become resistant to 对……有抵抗力, 耐药的

e.g. Many harmful insects have become resistant to DDT.

很多害虫都对DDT有了抗药性。

A healthy diet makes a body resistant to disease.

健康的饮食能够增强身体对疾病的抵抗力。

### 3. recommend that+ sb/sth + (should) ... 建议……

e.g. He recommended that the law should be changed.

他建议修改法律。

I recommend that he see a lawyer.

我建议他去找个律师。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. We brush our teeth in order to remove food particles and \_\_\_\_\_.

A. the saliva    B. the plaque    C. the enamel

2. The best toothbrush is the flat one with \_\_\_\_\_ bristles.

A. hard    B. soft    C. medium-soft

3. You should keep your toothbrush in a \_\_\_\_\_ place.

A. wet    B. hot    C. dry

4. The plaque-producing bacteria are most active during \_\_\_\_\_.

A. the night    B. the early morning    C. the afternoon

5. Fluoride is good for your \_\_\_\_\_.

A. teeth    B. tongue    C. saliva

6. If your teeth are crooked and crowded, you may use \_\_\_\_\_.

A. waxed floss    B. un-waxed floss    C. dental tape

### II. Write true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Saliva does no good to your teeth.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Plaque produces decay-causing acids.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ You should brush your teeth in less than one minute.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ The stiffer the bristle, the better the toothbrush.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ Floss can easily clean the places where the toothbrush can not reach.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ If your gum bleeds when you flossing, you should never do that again.

### III. Complete these sentences.

1. The saliva can \_\_\_\_\_ decay-causing acids in your mouth.
2. You should brush your teeth \_\_\_\_\_ but vigorously.
3. Make sure you brush the inside, outside, and \_\_\_\_\_ of every tooth—upper and lower.
4. Only the \_\_\_\_\_ of the bristle can clean your teeth.
5. If you are not able to brush your teeth right after having food, you should \_\_\_\_\_ your mouth with water.
6. Bacteria in your mouth, some foods you eat and \_\_\_\_\_ are all causes of halitosis.
7. Floss that is used incorrectly can \_\_\_\_\_ your gums.
8. You should be careful when you \_\_\_\_\_ it between your teeth and under the gum line.

## 参考译文

### 有效控制牙菌斑

唾液具有改善口腔健康状况的作用。唾液在口腔内流动，能够清洗掉牙齿周围的食物残渣。此外，它还能中和口腔内引起龋齿的酸性物质。养成良好的日常卫生习惯，保持口腔卫生，你的牙齿就能免遭牙菌斑的侵害。

### 勤刷牙

刷牙有一些好方法，但刷牙的方法不如刷牙的时间重要。下次刷牙的时候，用一个带秒针的

表测一下时间。你是不是不到一分钟就刷完了？如果是这样的话，你只刷掉了10%的牙菌斑，剩下的90%留在口腔里继续腐蚀牙齿。把全部牙齿彻底清洁干净至少需要三分钟。

刷头呈圆钝形、刷毛中等硬度的牙刷去除食物残渣和牙菌斑的效果最好。太硬的刷毛会损伤牙龈。刷头要足够小，这样才能刷到每颗牙齿。使点劲刷，但也不要用力过猛。一次只刷一至两颗牙。要确保你刷到了每颗牙齿的外侧、里侧以及咀嚼面——上下两排都要刷。

刷牙时不要用力按压牙刷，因为能够清洁牙齿的仅仅是刷毛的末端。旧牙刷的清洁效果极差，压弯了的刷毛也会弄伤牙龈。通常三四个月就需要更换新牙刷。

饭后要刷牙，这样才能尽快去除牙菌斑和食物残渣。如果进食后不能立即刷牙，那么用清水漱口。虽然清水不能去除牙菌斑，它可以清洗掉含糖分的食物残渣。

制造牙菌斑的细菌在夜间最为活跃，我们睡前必须再次刷牙。这是因为，睡着时唾液腺分泌的唾液比醒着时少，口腔里没有足够多的唾液来中和引发龋齿的酸性物质。

刷牙时你有没有也刷刷舌头？这样可以使口气清新。口腔里的细菌会引起口臭。口腔里的气味是口臭的一个成因。某些食物或者口腔炎症也会造成口臭。良好的口腔卫生能够保持口气的清新。

定期使用含氟牙膏可以预防龋齿。氟化物被牙釉质吸收后，能够强化牙釉质，增强牙齿的耐酸度。每一次你需要使用0.5~1英寸长的含氟牙膏。

刷完牙后都要用流动水冲洗牙刷。细菌容易在潮湿的牙刷上迅速繁殖，因此要把牙刷放在通风洁净的地方。

## 每天使用牙线

大多数牙菌斑存在于龈沟区和牙齿的邻接面，

这两个地方牙刷刷不到，即使你把牙齿都仔细刷了一遍，仍然有大量的菌斑残留下来。因此，这两个地方通常是龋齿和牙龈疾病的始发区。牙线能够刮除这两个地方的菌斑和食物残渣。每天应至少在刷牙前使用一次牙线。要记住，睡觉时可以中和酸性物质的唾液减少，人体的自我保护机能下降，睡前使用牙线可以去除产生酸性物质的菌斑和食物残渣，保护牙齿和牙龈。

牙医建议大多数人使用无蜡牙线或洁牙带。但如果你的牙齿不整齐，排列又过于紧密，你可能就得用有蜡的牙线。如果目前你没有经常使用牙线，刚开始使用的头几次牙龈可能出血、疼痛。随着制造牙菌斑的细菌逐渐被清除，牙龈将自动痊愈，不再出血（除非有病变）。停止使用牙线一段时间后，再次开始时牙龈又会出血。

不正确地使用牙线会弄伤牙龈。小心地引导牙线进入齿缝和龈沟，切忌用力过猛。用两手指和食指将牙线绷直，引导牙线进入牙缝，轻柔地来回做拉锯运动。在龈沟处，弯曲牙线使其略成C形。清洁上排牙齿时，由上往下刮；清洁下排牙齿则相反，由下往上刮。刮完牙齿的一个邻面后，再刮同一牙缝的另一边。取出牙线，换干净的一节牙线继续清洁其他牙面。

和其他技巧相同，多加练习，使用牙线就能得心应手。只要你每天坚持在固定时间以同一方式使用牙线清洁牙齿，很快这就会成为一个好习惯。



## “美”事一桩

### 美国人重视牙齿健康

美国人十分重视牙齿健康。在美国，牙科诊所比其他普通门诊多得多，有时候一条街上会有十来家牙科诊所。

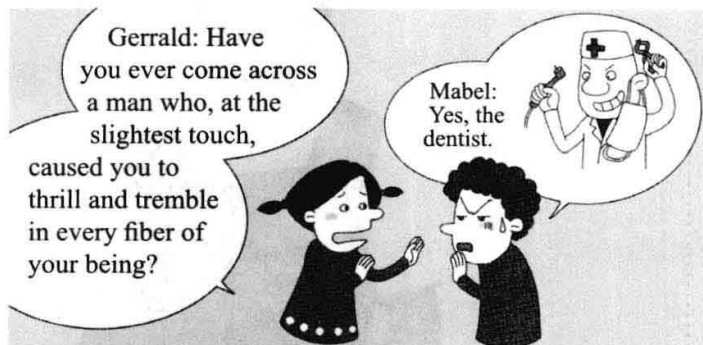
美国人对牙齿的厚爱早已形成了一种文化。他们历来把整洁的牙齿和清新的口腔卫生看成是文明的象征和仪表的重要部分。在交际中，尤其是在较高档次的场合，牙齿不整洁会被人看不起，口臭更被认为不讲礼貌。牙不整洁、口不清爽甚至会影响到求职就业。

美国人并非等到牙齿痛了才找医生，也不是因为牙齿有病才上诊所，而是定期检查、洗牙、矫牙、做口腔保健等，半年洗一次牙非常普遍和正常。小孩子一岁起开始看牙医，乳牙就要注意保护，等换了牙更要注意矫正、清洗、增白。

人们第一次到诊所看牙，牙医首先将每颗牙都拍下X光片，并存案留档。看牙的人通常很多，一般需要提前预约，并按照约定时间前往就诊。牙科的费用之高，全世界都是一样的。在美国，洗一次牙最便宜也得要几十美元，补一个洞100美元，拔一颗牙200美元。如果需要治疗牙神经问题，那就需要上千美元了。

美国的医疗保险一般不包括牙科，除非投保时特别选择牙齿这个项目。但如果半年内没有看牙医，牙齿有了问题，你也得不到保险金。美国很多州和地区都有相关规定，强制要求必须到指定的牙科中心或医院去定期看牙，如果半年内电脑的系统中或是病历中没有病人看过牙医的相关记录，牙齿一旦出现问题，即使你投了健康保险也不会给你相应的保金，美国政府正是用这样的方法让公民重视自己的口腔健康。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



杰拉德：你有没有遇到过这种人，他轻轻碰你一下，你就会吓得全身每根神经都颤抖？

梅布尔：见过，牙医。

### Answer

I. 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. A

II. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. F

III. 1. neutralize 2. gently 3. chewing surface 4. tips  
5. rinse 6. infection 7. injure 8. insert

# 3

## Dressing for Good Health

### 健康着装



服装被称为人的“第二肌肤”，着装应该基于整体的考虑和精心的搭配，而且还要注重整洁。

#### KEEP YOUR CLOTHES CLEAN

Wearing clean clothes is also part of good personal hygiene. The clothes next to your skin become soiled<sup>1</sup> from perspiration<sup>2</sup>, oil, and bacteria on the epidermis<sup>3</sup>; thus they should be changed daily to protect your body from diseases.

Your mother probably washes your clothes and keeps them mended, but it is your responsibility to help keep them clean and neat. When you get home from school, you should change your clothes before you go outside to work or play. Your outer clothing sometimes can be worn more than one time before it has to be washed or cleaned.

If you can wear your school clothes another day, be sure you neatly hang them in your closet<sup>4</sup> or fold them and put them in your

dresser<sup>5</sup>. If you just shove<sup>6</sup> them into a drawer or drop them on the furniture or floor, they will wrinkle<sup>7</sup>. Because you always want to look and feel your best, you must keep your clothes neat. If something needs to be mended, be sure you tell your mother about it. When your clothes are dirty or soiled, put them with the clothes to be washed.



Because your feet perspire, you need to wear clean socks every day. If your socks are not kept clean, your feet will have an unpleasant odor<sup>8</sup>, and you may get athlete's foot, causing your feet to itch<sup>9</sup> or become sore. Wearing clean socks will also help keep the inside of your shoes clean. Do you regularly clean and polish your shoes? Your shoes as well as your clothes will wear longer and look nicer if they are cared for properly.

Before you go to bed, you should change your clothes again. You should not sleep in any of the same clothes that you wore during the day, and your nightgown or pajamas<sup>10</sup> need to be clean and fresh.

## CHOOSE APPROPRIATE<sup>11</sup> CLOTHES

You should always wear clothes that are suitable for your age and suitable for what you are doing. Clothes that you wear to church are not appropriate to wear hiking, but they may be appropriate to wear to school. Are clothes that you wear to a music recital<sup>12</sup> or to a party appropriate for horseback riding? The shoes

you wear should also be suitable for what you are doing. Some shoes do not give your feet enough support to prevent injuries while you are physically active.

To look well-dressed, you do not need new or expensive clothes, but your clothes must be clean and neat. They should fit you



well and look becoming on you. Of course, wrinkled or soiled clothes are never becoming. If your clothes are the right size, but they do not look attractive on you, you may need to practise good posture habits. Poor posture can cause your clothes to fit poorly. You should avoid wearing tight, uncomfortable clothes, because they can interfere<sup>13</sup> with the circulation<sup>14</sup> of your blood.

注：本文选自四年级《健康》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. soil [sɔɪl] *n.* 泥土, 土壤, 土地 *vt.* 弄脏; 侮辱
2. perspiration [ˌpɜːspə'reɪʃən] *n.* 汗水, 出汗

- perspire [pə'spaɪə] *v.* 出汗, 流汗
3. epidermis [ˌepɪ'dɜːmɪs] *n.* 表皮
4. closet ['kloʊzɪt] *n.* 壁橱

5. **dresser** ['dresə] *n.* 橱柜, 衣橱

6. **shove** [ʃʌv] *v.* 推, 挤, 塞; 乱放, 随便丢

7. **wrinkle** ['rɪŋkl] *n.* 皱纹, 褶皱 *v.* 起皱纹, 起褶子

8. **odor** ['əʊdə] *n.* 气味

9. **itch** ['ɪtʃ] *n./v.* 痒

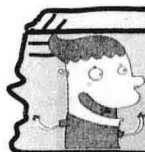
10. **pajamas** [pə'dʒɑ:məz] *n.* 睡衣裤

11. **appropriate** [ə'prəʊpriət] *adj.* 恰当的, 适当的

12. **recital** [rɪ'saɪtl] *n.* 独唱会, 独奏会; 小型音乐会

13. **interfere** [ˌɪntə'fɪə] *v.* 干涉, 介入, 妨碍

14. **circulation** [ˌsɜ:kjʊ'leɪʃən] *n.* 循环



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. **be suitable for** 对……适合

e.g. Is this style suitable for you?

这个款式适合你吗?

She is suitable for the job.

她适合这项工作。

### 2. **look becoming on sb** (服饰) 适合某人, 穿上去很好看

e.g. Blue always looks becoming on her.

她穿蓝色总是很好看。

The hat looks becoming on you.

你戴这顶帽子挺合适。

### 3. **interfere with** 干扰, 打扰, 弄乱

e.g. Don't interfere with his work.

不要打扰他工作。

Sedentary habits often interfere with your health.

久坐不动的习惯往往有害健康。

### **compare: interfere in**

e.g. Don't interfere in other people's affairs.

不要干涉别人的事情。

It's unwise to interfere in a quarrel between husband and wife.

介入夫妻间的吵架是不明智的。





## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Complete these sentences.

1. The clothes next to your skin become dirty because of \_\_\_\_\_, oil and \_\_\_\_\_ on the epidermis.
2. It's your \_\_\_\_\_ to help keep your clothes clean and neat.
3. If your outer clothes can be worn for another day, make sure you \_\_\_\_\_ them in the closet or \_\_\_\_\_ them neatly and put them in the dresser. If you don't, they will \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Socks get dirty because our feet \_\_\_\_\_, too.
5. The clothes and shoes you are wearing must be \_\_\_\_\_ for what you are doing.
6. Winkled or soiled clothes will never look \_\_\_\_\_ on you.

### II. Write true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ You don't have to change the clothed next to your skin everyday.
2. \_\_\_\_ Clean and neat clothes make you look and feel your best.
3. \_\_\_\_ Socks need to be changed everyday.
4. \_\_\_\_ When we go to bed, we put on nightgowns or pajamas.
5. \_\_\_\_ Only well new and expensive clothes will make you look well-dressed.
6. \_\_\_\_ Tight and uncomfortable clothes can harm your health.

## 参考译文

### 保持衣服的整洁

衣着整洁也是良好个人卫生的一部分。贴身衣物会由于出汗和皮肤表皮上的油脂及细菌而变脏，它们应该每天更换，这样你才不会生病。

一般来说，可能是你妈妈为你洗衣服并把它收拾好，但你有责任让衣服保持整洁。放学回到家后，要先换了衣服才能出去玩耍。有时候外衣可以多穿几次才拿去洗。

如果校服第二天还能穿，一定要整好挂在衣柜里，或者叠好放进去。如果只是随便塞进去或者丢在家具上或地上，衣服就会变皱。因为如果你希望自己看上去漂漂亮亮的，衣服就要保持整洁。如果有什么地方需要缝补，记得告诉你妈妈。衣服穿脏了，将它们和家里其他要洗的衣服放在一起。

脚也会出汗，所以每天都要换上干净的袜



子，否则你的脚就会有一股难闻的气味，还可能患上脚气，又痒又疼。穿干净的袜子还能帮助保持鞋子内部的清洁。你有没有定期擦一擦、洗一洗鞋子？鞋子和衣服一样，只要多加保养，使用寿命就能够延长。

睡觉前应该再换一次衣服。不能穿白天的衣服睡觉，要换成干净的睡衣。

## 选择合适的衣服

你穿的衣服应该适合你的年龄和所出席的场合。穿去教堂的衣服就不适合穿着去郊外远足，但或许可以穿去上学。你穿去参加音乐会或派对

的衣服适不适合穿去骑马？鞋子也要根据场合来选择。有些鞋子不适合穿去运动，因为它们无法提供很好的保护作用，你的脚可能会在运动中受伤。

衣着整齐不一定非得穿新的或者昂贵的衣服，但一定得干净整洁。你穿的衣服必须得体合身，当然，皱巴巴或脏兮兮的衣服是不得体的。如果号码没错，你穿着却不好看，那么你应该要培养正确的身体姿势。错误的身体姿势会导致衣服不合身。你还应该避免穿过于紧身、令你不舒服的衣服，因为它们会影响血液循环。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国小学生的着装要求

美国小学一般不强制要求学生穿校服，即使有庆典或其他活动也不需要统一着装。但即使如此，他们对小学生的衣着和打扮仍然制定了如下要求：

任何学生不准在校园内及学校活动中穿戴引起其他人身心畏惧或有可能引起他人作出暴力行为的衣服、饰品等；

不得穿戴有猥亵意味等挑动色情或与性有关的衣服、饰品等，也不得作出下流姿势，展示下流图片，使用下流语言，也不得携带有任何鼓动暴力、吸毒、抽烟、喝酒的东西；

不得穿着或佩戴有团伙意识的衣服、首饰、徽章、绶带等。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

Money does not grow on trees.

天上不会掉馅饼。

Man does not live by bread alone.

人不是只靠面包活着。

Practice makes perfect.

熟能生巧。

Nothing ventured, nothing gained.

不入虎穴，焉得虎子。

### Answer

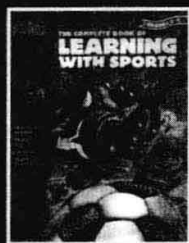
I. 1. perspiration, bacteria 2. responsibility 3. hang, fold, wrinkle 4. perspire 5. suitable/appropriate 6. becoming/attractive

II. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. T

## 4

# Michael Jordan, A Team Player

## 迈克尔·乔丹，以团队为重



迈克尔·乔丹，一个集优雅、力量、艺术于一身的卓越运动员，他重新定义了NBA超级明星的含义，他是公认的全世界最棒的篮球运动员之一。

Michael Jordan is considered one of the greatest basketball players of all time<sub>1</sub>. His leaping<sub>1</sub> abilities have earned him the nickname<sub>2</sub> “Air Jordan” and he is probably the most recognized athlete in the world. But even though Michael won many awards<sub>3</sub> and made a lot of money from his basketball contract and all of his endorsements<sub>4</sub>, he was still considered a team player who helped his teammates win any way he could.

Michael was born in Wilmington, North Carolina, on Feb. 17, 1963. Michael's parents were hard-working people who taught him to work hard as well. Michael didn't even play basketball in high school until his last year

because he was too short. Then, one summer he grew four inches! He played his senior<sub>5</sub> year and went on<sub>6</sub> to play for the North Carolina Tar Heels in college. He retired before the start of the Chicago Bulls' 1999 NBA season. Jordan's career scoring average of 31.5 points per game is an NBA record and his career points total of 29,277 is third on the NBA all-time scoring list.

Michael Jordan has always been well-respected not only for his basketball skills but as a person who spends much time visiting<sub>7</sub> schools and hospitals. He loves kids and wants to make it easier for them to reach their goals.

注：本课选自《球类运动（三—四年级适用）》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. leap [li:p] <i>v.</i> 跳, 跳跃                      | 4. endorsement [en'dɔ:smənt] <i>n.</i> 赞同, 支持; 宣传, 吹嘘 |
| 2. nickname ['nikneim] <i>n.</i> 昵称, 绰号             | 5. senior ['si:njə] <i>adj.</i> 高年级的, 年长的             |
| 3. award [ə'wɔ:d] <i>n.</i> 奖品, 奖金 <i>v.</i> 授予, 奖给 |   |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. of all time 自古以来, 有史以来, 从未有过

e.g. What's the greatest dunk of all time?

什么是有史以来最精采的扣篮?

I think Audrey Hepburn is the most beautiful woman of all time.

我认为奥黛丽·赫本是有史以来最美丽的女性。

### 2. go on to do sth (完成某事后)接着做另一件事

e.g. The next day we went on to read Lesson 2.

第二天我们接着学第二课。

After finishing his work, he went on to help us.

做完他的工作, 他接着帮我们干。

### compare: go on doing sth 不停地做某事

e.g. She went on and on asking questions.

她不断地提问题。

### 3. spend money/time on sth/doing sth 花费金钱/时间做某事

e.g. She spends too much money on clothes.

她花了太多钱买衣服。

I have spent two years writing this book, but still not finished.

这本书我已经写了两年, 还没写完。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### Fill in the blanks.

1. Michael Jordan was born in Wilmington, \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He began to play basket ball in his \_\_\_\_\_ year of high school.
3. He earned him the nickname "Air Jordan" because of his great \_\_\_\_\_ abilities.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ before the start of the Chicago Bulls' 1999 NBA season.
5. He was considered a \_\_\_\_\_ who helped his teammates win any way he could.

### 参考译文

迈克尔·乔丹是公认的有史以来最伟大的篮球运动员之一。他卓越的弹跳能力为他赢得了“飞人乔丹”的称号。他可能还是世界上最广为人知的运动员。虽然乔丹获过无数的荣誉，打篮球和拍广告也挣了不少钱，但是他仍然具有很强的团队精神，始终尽其所能地帮助自己的球队获胜。

乔丹于1963年2月17日出生在北卡罗来纳州的威尔明顿。他的父母都是勤恳工作的人，因此乔丹也学会了努力奋斗。由于身材矮小，乔丹在高中最后一年之前都没有接触过篮球。可是，

接下来他突然在一个夏天整整长了4英寸！高中最后一年他开始打篮球，之后上了北卡罗来纳大学，为名为“柏油脚跟”男子篮球队的校篮球队效力。1999年的NBA赛季开始之前乔丹宣布从公牛队退役。他的职业生涯场均得分为31.5分，这是NBA的场均得分记录；总得分29,277分，位居NBA总得分榜第三位。

迈克尔·乔丹受到人们尊敬不仅仅是因为他的球技，还因为他热心公益，经常造访学校和医院。他喜欢孩子，希望能帮助他们实现他们的目标。

### “美”事一桩

## 美国学校的体育课程

美国学校的体育课分为必修课和补充课。学生从事体育活动的形式多种多样，除了学校根据基本



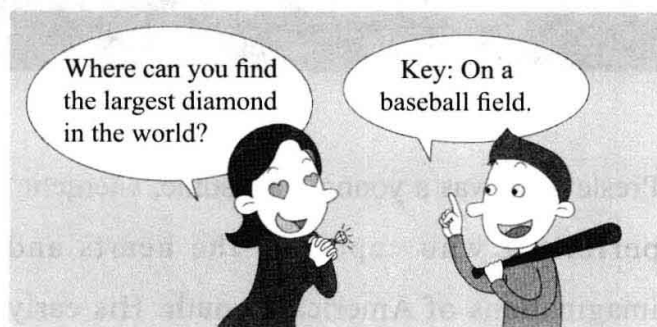
体育教学大纲设计的教学活动，还可以参加课外和校外的运动，各类俱乐部、运动中心和专项运动队中的训练，以及各种运动竞赛。

必修课是指以基本教学大纲为内容的教学。必修课的教学有以下几种形式：按周期（一般为几个星期）教授某个运动项目的基本课；学生按兴趣自由选择运动项目的志愿课，包括基本课和志愿课的综合课。

补充课是指必修课外所增加的教学及训练课，主要形式有：班外课（同一学校内组织）和校外课（不同学校的学生混合参加），体育俱乐部活动，青少年体育运动训练课。

美国学校的体育课程强调使学生在运动中发展自我，培养学生自觉参加体育锻炼的良好习惯。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



问：你在哪个地方能找到世界上最大的钻石？

答：在棒球场。

注释：“diamond”指钻石，也指棒球场，因为棒球场的形状与钻石有点儿像。

### Answer

1. North Carolina 2. senior 3. leaping 4. retired 5. team player

# Rock-and-Roll Music and Musicians

## 摇滚乐及其音乐人



早期摇滚音乐的来源非常广泛，主要包括布鲁斯、R&B和乡村音乐，其他还有福音音乐，传统的流行乐、爵士乐以及民间音乐。所有这些影响加在一起构成了一种简单的以布鲁斯为基础的歌曲结构，它是快速的、适合于跳舞的而且容易让人记住的。

The earliest known song that represents the rock-and-roll sound is “Rock Around the Clock” (1954) by Bill Haley and His Comets<sup>1</sup>. The origins of rock-and-roll lie in a combination of rhythm<sup>2</sup> and blues, jazz, and country-western music. The rhythm and blues style of music played by Black performers like Little Richard and Chuck Berry contributed<sup>3</sup> hard-driving rhythm, electric guitar, and plain lyrics<sup>4</sup>. Elements of American folk music and country-western music were incorporated<sup>5</sup> to appeal to<sup>6</sup> White audiences. The new hybrid<sup>6</sup> style of rock-and-roll combined the music of two cultures to appeal to both.

The most influential<sup>7</sup> and important of the early rock-and-roll figures was Elvis

Presley. He was a young, handsome, energetic<sup>8</sup> performer who captured<sup>9</sup> the hearts and imaginations of America’s youth. His early music was termed “rock-a-billy” because of its combination of blues and hillbilly music. Presley remained popular throughout the ’50s, ’60s, and ’70s and was called the “King of Rock and Roll.”

Other early rock-and-roll legends were Jerry Lee Lewis who sang “Great Balls of Fire” and Buddy Holly with “That’ll Be the Day.” Black performers, such as Chuck Berry, Little Richard, and Fats Domino, also gained popularity with White audiences.

By the ’60s, popular singers, such as Frankie Avalon, Paul Anka, Neil Sedaka, and

Bobby Vinton, were moving toward a gentler style called soft rock. Many songs featured<sup>10</sup> teenagers and puppy love as the main topics.

At the same time, Barry Gordy, Jr., founded Motown Records in Detroit. This was the first recording company owned and operated by African-Americans. The Motown style was a combination of gospel music, rhythm and blues, and soft rock vocals. Important Motown performers included The Supremes, The Temptations, Gladys Knight and the Pips<sup>11</sup>, Stevie Wonder, and the Jackson Five.

By the mid-1960s, bands in Great Britain were reviving<sup>12</sup> the hard-driving rock-and-roll of the '50s. Not only were they popular in Britain, but groups such as The Rolling Stones and The Beatles also became great successes in the United States. Beginning with, their tour of the United States in 1964, The Beatles were the top rock group in the world for six years. In one year, The Beatles held the top five spots on the Billboard Chart with "Can't Buy Me Love," "Twist and Shout," "She Loves You," "I Want to Hold Your Hand," and "Please, Please Me."

During the late '60s and early '70s, elements of folk music made their way into rock-and-roll, with many musicians writing songs that made social statements. Bob Dylan, Joan Baez, and Pete Seeger spoke out against the Vietnam War through their music.

Funk music and disco developed in the '70s as music to be danced to. Dance halls called discotheques<sup>13</sup> featured disc jockeys<sup>14</sup> playing recorded music, mirrors, strobe lights<sup>15</sup>, and other special lighting equipment. The movie *Saturday Night Fever* showcased<sup>16</sup> the disco movement and featured music by the band The Bee Gees.

Pop music of the 1980s featured larger-than-life performers like Michael Jackson and Madonna. The special effects and choreography<sup>17</sup> of the stage show became as important as the music.

Other developments in rock-and-roll have included punk, new wave, heavy metal, rap and alternative music. Each has been an attempt by a particular segment<sup>18</sup> of society to express its opinions, feelings and goals to the rest of the world.

注：本课选自《音乐与艺术（四至八年级适用）》，其难度相当于国内高中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. comet ['kɒmɪt] *n.* 彗星

2. rhythm ['rɪðəm] *n.* 节奏, 韵律

3. contribute [kən'trɪbjut] *v.* 贡献, 捐献

4. lyrics ['lɪrɪks] *n.* 歌词

5. **incorporate** [ɪn'kɔ:pəreɪt] *v.* 包含, 吸收,  
把……合并

6. **hybrid** ['haɪbrɪd] *n.* 混合物, 合成物

7. **influential** [ɪnflu'enʃəl] *adj.* 有影响力的,  
有支配力的

8. **energetic** [ˌenə'dʒetɪk] *adj.* 精力充沛的, 充  
满活力的

9. **capture** ['kæptʃə] *v.* 抓住, 俘获, 夺取

10. **feature** ['fi:tʃə] *n.* 特征 *v.* 以……为特征

11. **pip** [pɪp] *n.* 果核, 种子

12. **revive** [rɪ'vaɪv] *v.* 苏醒, 复活; 复兴; 再生;

再流行

13. **discotheque** [ˌdiskə'tek] *n.* 小舞厅, 迪士  
科舞厅

14. **disc jockey** [dɪsk] ['dʒɔki] *n.* (缩写为DJ)  
(电台、电视台、俱乐部) 音乐节目主持人

15. **strobe** [strəʊb] *light* 闪光灯

16. **showcase** ['ʃəʊkeɪs] *v.* 展示

17. **choreography** [ˌkɔrɪ'ɒgrəfi] *n.* 舞蹈艺  
术, 舞台舞蹈

18. **segment** ['segment] *n.* 部分



## Sentence 语句荟萃

1. **around the clock** 昼夜不停, 连续一整天

e.g. The snack bar is opened around the clock.

小吃部24小时开放。

The factory operated around the clock until the order was filled.

工厂不分昼夜地赶工, 直到把客户订的货物赶出来为止。

2. **lie in** 在于, 位于, 包含于……之内

e.g. His remains lie in the churchyard.

他被安葬在教堂的墓地。

Our strength lies in problem solving.

我们的优势在于解决问题的能力。

### 3. appeal to 有吸引力, 诉诸

e.g. Toys appeal to small children.

玩具对小孩子很有吸引力。

You should not appeal to force.

你不应该诉诸武力。

### 4. not only...but also... 不但……而且……

not only... but also 连接两个分句, 并且 not only 位于句首时, 第一个分句中的主语和谓语要部分倒装。

e.g. Not only does the sun give us light but also it gives us heat.

太阳给我们光和热。

Not only is this young man smart but also he is hardworking.

这个年轻人不但聪明, 而且工作努力。

### 5. begin with

e.g. Knowledge begins with practice.

知识从实践开始。

Celebration began with national anthem.

庆典开始时先奏国歌。

### 6. speak out against 公然反对, 大胆抗议

e.g. The newspapers are afraid to speak out against the government.

报界不敢大胆地讲出反对政府的话。

He was the only one to speak out against the closure of the hospital.

只有他一个人公开表示反对关闭医院。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

Unscramble the words below by using the clues at the right about rock-and-roll music and musicians.

1. otiesdqcsheu \_\_\_\_\_ dance halls featuring disc jockeys, mirrors and and strobe lights



2. isellpeesyvr \_\_\_\_\_ the “King of Rock-and-Roll” (two words)
3. rrmownsecdoot \_\_\_\_\_ recording company founded by Barry Gordy (two words)
4. ckrrbeychu \_\_\_\_\_ one of the Black performers who contributed to early rock-and-roll (two words)
5. scikjchnaolmae \_\_\_\_\_ one of the biggest pop music stars of the 1980s (two words)
6. heestlebta \_\_\_\_\_ top rock group in the world for six years in the 1960s (two words)
7. otfkсорс \_\_\_\_\_ style popularized by Frankie Avalon and Bobby Vinton (two words)
8. aienbatitrgr \_\_\_\_\_ country where The Rolling Stones and The Beatles originated (two words)
9. i-yrlbla-okc \_\_\_\_\_ a combination of blues and hillbilly music
10. lilyhaebl \_\_\_\_\_ singer of the first known rock-and-roll song (two words)
11. eebgteshee \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday Night Fever featured this band’s disco music. (three words)
12. enavwitrma \_\_\_\_\_ singers such as Joan Baez protested the \_\_\_\_\_ through their music.
13. bnhdytahelsrmu \_\_\_\_\_ this style contributed hard-driving rhythm and plain lyrics to rock-and-roll. (three words)
14. smklcuifo \_\_\_\_\_ this style influenced rock performers who wanted to make a social statement. (two words)
15. olbdydylhu \_\_\_\_\_ early rock-and-roll legend who sang “That’ll Be the Day” (two words)

## 参考译文

最早为人所知的摇滚歌曲是1954年由比尔·哈利和他的“彗星”乐队录制的《昼夜摇滚》。最初的摇滚乐是节奏布鲁斯、爵士乐和西部乡村音乐的结合体。它从非裔艺术家（如小理查德和

查克·贝瑞）演奏的节奏布鲁斯当中吸收了强节拍、电吉他和朴实的歌词等音乐元素。此外，为了吸引白人听众，还加入了美国民间音乐和西部乡村音乐的元素。摇滚乐这种新的音乐风格把两

种文化的音乐融合在一起，以此来吸引两个民族。

早期的摇滚音乐人中，最出名和最具影响力的当属埃尔维斯·普莱斯利。他年轻、英俊、活力四射，使美国的年轻人为之痴狂。他早期的音乐风格结合了布鲁斯和山区音乐，因此被称为“山区摇滚”。普莱斯利在20世纪50—70年代很有名，被冠以“摇滚乐之王”的美名。

其他早期的摇滚传奇人物还有杰瑞·李·刘易斯（演唱了《大火球》）和巴迪·霍利（演唱了《终有一天》）。除此之外，黑人歌手如查克·贝瑞、小理查德和胖子多米诺等也深受白人听众的喜爱。

到了20世纪60年代，法兰基·艾瓦隆、保罗·安卡、尼尔·西达卡和波比·维顿等歌手逐渐倾向于一种比较温和的风格——温和摇滚。很多歌曲以青少年及他们的初恋为主题。

就在这一时期，贝瑞·戈迪在底特律创办了摩城唱片公司。摩城是第一家由非裔美国人所有并经营的唱片公司。它的音乐风格是福音音乐、节奏布鲁斯和轻柔摇滚的结合体。摩城唱片旗下的著名组合和歌手有至上女声三重唱、诱惑男声合唱团、葛蕾蒂斯·奈特与种子合唱团、史蒂夫·旺达和杰克逊五兄弟。

60年代中期，英国的乐队开始演奏50年代在美国流行的强节拍摇滚乐。这些乐队不但在英国受到欢迎，其中像滚石乐队和甲壳虫乐队在美国也取得了巨大的成功。自1964年在美国开展巡

回演出之后，甲壳虫乐队连续六年位居世界摇滚乐队之首。有一年，该乐队的五首歌曲包揽了美国公告牌排行榜的前五名，它们分别是：“Can't Buy Me Love”（《爱是卖品》），“Twist and Shout”（《舞动和呐喊》），“She Loves You”（《她爱你》），“I Want to Hold Your Hand”（《我想握住你的手》）和“Please, Please Me”（《请取悦我》）。很多音乐人写歌抒发他们对政治的看法。例如，鲍勃·迪伦、琼·贝兹和皮特·西格通过他们的音乐表达了对越南战争的不满。

60年代末至70年代初期，民谣的元素也融合进入摇滚乐。

放克和迪斯科是70年代发展起来的舞曲音乐。迪斯科舞厅里面有专门负责播放唱片的DJ，有反射镜、频闪闪光灯和其他特殊灯光设备。电影《周末夜狂热》展现了当时的迪斯科热潮，比·吉斯组合演唱的歌曲是该片的一大亮点。

20世纪80年代的流行音乐界为富有传奇色彩的人物所占据，如迈克尔·杰克逊和麦当娜。在这一时期，演出时的舞台效果和舞蹈动作变得和音乐本身一样重要。

摇滚乐的其他流派还包括朋克、新浪潮、重金属、说唱和另类摇滚。每一种风格都是社会中的某一部分人为了表达他们的思想、情感和努力的目标而作的一种努力。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国的十大文化偶像（上）

美国杂志*Man*, *Biography*等媒体联合评选出美国十大文化偶像。他们的评选标准是：只要提到他或她的名字，人们就会联想到美国；他们都代表着美国；当选者必须是正宗美国人。

## 1. John Fitzgerald Kennedy（约翰·菲茨杰拉德·肯尼迪）

肯尼迪是美国第35任总统，任职期间废止了Segregation（种族隔离制度），建立了和平军队，并成功解决了Missiles in Cuba（古巴导弹危机）。不幸的是，肯尼迪于1963年11月在达拉斯遇刺身亡。作为一个充满精力、富于吸引力的总统，他无疑是美国精髓的代表。

## 2. Marilyn Monroe（玛丽莲·梦露）

梦露是美国历史上最成功的电影明星之一，一生具有传奇色彩。她在电影*Gentlemen Prefer Blondes*（《绅士爱美人》）和*Some Like It Hot*（《热情如火》）中的表演使人们相信，梦露的表演天赋与她的美貌一样名副其实。1962年8月5日，梦露在家中自杀。

## 3. Elvis Presley（埃尔维斯·普莱斯利）

1935年1月，“猫王”埃尔维斯出生在密西西比州的一个穷人家庭，并在这个家庭中长大。高中毕业后，他为母亲录了一首歌，不料引起一个制作商的注意。尽管他由于演电影而成名，但他更是以The King of Rock（摇滚乐之王）而为我们熟知。1977年8月16日， he 被发现死在孟斐斯的家中。

## 4. Michael Jordan（迈克尔·乔丹）

在北卡罗莱纳大学学习时，乔丹的篮球天赋开始显现。加盟Chicago Bulls（芝加哥公牛队）后，他率队六次获得NBA（National Basketball Association）比赛总冠军，五次赢得MVP（Most Valuable Player最有价值球员）的称号。两度宣布退役，又两度宣布复出，最终于2003年从Washington Wizards（华盛顿奇才队）退役。据估计，截至2002年，飞人乔丹的财产总额为4.02亿美元。

## 5. Frank Sinatra（弗兰克·西纳特拉）

西纳特拉是最受欢迎的美国歌手。在他还是一名体育记者的时候，他就开始选择歌唱作为自己的第二职业，并于1942年开始了独唱生涯。他的歌曲感情真挚，极受歌迷的欢迎。

**A Humor 休闲时刻****English Proverbs**

Absence makes the heart grow fonder.

离别情更切。

He who laughs last, laughs best.

谁笑到最后，谁笑得最甜。

You can't teach an old dog new tricks.

老狗难学新把戏。

Actions speak louder than words.

行动胜于言辞。

**Answer**

1. discotheque 2. Elvis Presley 3. Motown Records
4. Chuck Berry
5. Michael Jackson 6. The Beatles 7. soft rock 8. Great Britain
9. rock-a-billy 10. Bill Haley 11. The Bee Gees 12. Vietnam War
13. rhythm and blues 14. folk music 15. Buddy Holly

## 6

# St. Patrick's Day Desserts

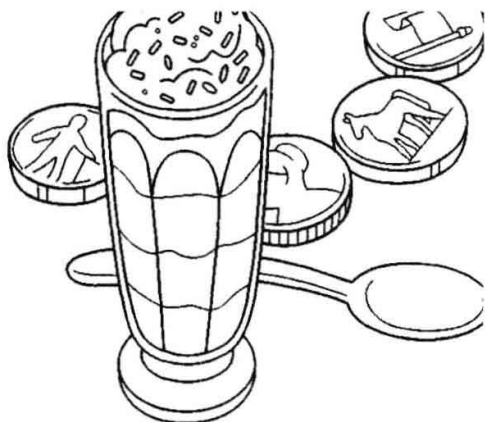
## 圣·帕特里克节甜点



在节假日里，自己制作甜点是一种美好的经历，也是犒赏自己的绝好方式。现在就让我们一起来学着制作“圣·帕特里克甜点”吧！

### RAINBOW PUDDING PARFAIT<sup>1</sup>

Ingredients<sup>2</sup>: 1 box instant<sup>3</sup> vanilla<sup>4</sup> pudding, milk, food coloring, whipped<sup>5</sup> topping<sup>6</sup>, rainbow sprinkles<sup>7</sup>



Mix the pudding according to package directions and let chill. Divide the pudding into 4 equal portions in separate bowls. Use food coloring to dye<sup>8</sup> each portion a different rainbow color. Layer the pudding in 2 clear glasses. Add whipped-topping clouds and

rainbow sprinkles. Serve with gold-wrapped coin candy. Serves 2.

### IRISH FLOAT

Ingredients: lime<sup>9</sup> sherbet<sup>10</sup>, clear soda or ginger ale<sup>11</sup>



Fill a tall glass with several scoops of lime sherbet. Slowly add the soda or ginger ale, being careful not to let the foam<sup>12</sup> overflow the glass. Serve with shamrock<sup>13</sup>-shaped sugar cookies with green icing<sup>14</sup>.

注：本课选自《小学低年级活动课——圣·帕特里克节》课本，其难度相当于国内高中水平。





## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. **parfait** [pa:'feɪ] *n.* (法) 冻糕, 冻奶糊, 冷甜点

2. **ingredient** [ɪn'ɡri:diənt] *n.* 成分, 配料

3. **instant** ['ɪnstənt] *adj.* 立即的, 即食的  
**instant noodles/coffee** 速食面/速溶咖啡

4. **vanilla** [və'nɪlə] *n.* 香草

5. **whip** [wɪp] *v.* 鞭打, 搅打 (奶油)

6. **topping** ['tɒpɪŋ] *n.* (菜肴、蛋糕) 上的浇汁、配料

7. **sprinkle** ['sprɪŋkl] *v./n.* 喷撒, 点缀

8. **dye** [daɪ] *v.* 给……上色 *n.* 染料

9. **lime** [laɪm] *n.* 酸橙

10. **sherbet** ['ʃɜ:bət] *n.* (英) 冷冻果汁水;  
(美) 果汁牛奶冻

11. **ginger ale** ['dʒɪndʒə] [eɪl] 姜汁无酒精饮料

12. **foam** [fəʊm] *n.* 泡沫

13. **shamrock** ['ʃæmrɒk] *n.* 三叶苜蓿

14. **icing** ['aɪsɪŋ] *n.* (糕点上面的) 糖霜, 酥皮



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**serve with** 同……一起食用, 跟……一起上桌

e.g. Yogurt served with honey is a popular Greek dessert.

加蜜的酸奶是一道深受人们喜爱的希腊甜点。

Serve with extra syrup, clotted cream or custard.

上桌时可加配糖浆、浓缩奶油或牛奶蛋糊。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

Use the rhyming words from the word list to fill in the blanks and complete these leprechaun limericks.

clover, gold, hat, me, over, pie, share, trap, treat

If you go to the city of Dover,  
And there find a rare four-leaf \_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_,  
If will lead you, I'm told,  
To a pot full of \_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_,  
But there's still a rainbow to get \_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_!  
There once was a leprechaun, Pat,  
Who kept all of his gold in his \_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_.  
Because he loved to \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_,  
He had friends everywhere!  
Now, what do you think about that?  
A hungry young leprechaun, Pete,  
Was in the mood for a sweet \_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_.  
He thought he would try  
A nice strawberry \_\_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_\_.  
That's his favorite dessert to eat!  
A quick little leprechaun, Hap,  
Escaped from a leprechaun \_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_.  
He shouted with glee,  
"No, you'll never catch \_\_\_\_ 9 \_\_\_\_!"  
And then disappeared in a snap!

## 参考译文

### 彩虹布丁冻糕

配料：一盒香草味速食布丁粉，牛奶，食用色素，植脂奶油，七彩糖针

按照包装盒上的说明将布丁粉搅拌均匀，

放入冰箱冰镇。将冰镇后的布丁四等分，舀入小碗。每份布丁都用食用色素染成不同的颜色。取两个透明的玻璃杯，每个杯子里叠放两块布丁。最后做点装饰，喷上奶油，撒上七彩糖针。配上

金币巧克力，供两人食用。

## 爱尔兰雪顶

配料：酸橙雪糕，苏打水或姜味汽水

舀几勺酸橙雪糕放入玻璃高杯中，慢慢加入苏打水或姜汁汽水，注意不要让泡沫溢出来。配上涂有绿色糖衣的三叶草形甜饼干食用。

## “美”事一桩

## 圣·帕特里克节

每年的3月17日为美国的圣·帕特里克节，是为纪念爱尔兰守护神圣·帕特里克。这个节日于公元5世纪末期起源于爱尔兰。

公元432年，圣·帕特里克受教皇派遣前往爱尔兰劝说爱尔兰人皈依基督教。他从威克洛上岸后，当地愤怒的异教徒企图用石头将他砸死。但圣·帕特里克临危不惧，当即摘下一棵三叶苜蓿，形象地阐明了圣父、圣子、圣灵三位一体的教义。他雄辩的演说使爱尔兰人深受感动，接受了圣·帕特里克主施的隆重洗礼。公元493年3月17日，圣·帕特里克逝世，爱尔兰人为了纪念他，将这一天定为圣·帕特里克节。

1937年，一些爱尔兰移民在美国马萨诸塞州波士顿聚会纪念圣帕特里克，并成立了爱尔兰慈善社团。1780年和1784年，费城和纽约先后成立了圣·帕特里克友谊之子等团体，从此美国每年都庆祝这个节日。

美国的圣·帕特里克节这一天，人们通常要举行游行、教堂礼拜和聚餐等活动。美国的爱尔兰人喜欢佩戴三叶苜蓿，用爱尔兰的国旗颜色——绿黄两色装饰房间，身穿绿色衣服，并向宾客赠送三叶苜蓿饰物等。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

What can you serve, but never eat?



Key: A tennis ball.

### Answer

1. clover 2. gold 3. over 4. hat 5. share 6. treat 7. pie 8. trap 9. me

什么东西你能提供但不能品尝？

答：网球。

注释：“serve”的意思是“为某人上菜”。“serve”也是网球比赛用语，意思是“给对方发球来开始比赛”。

# 7 Easter Activities

## 复活节活动

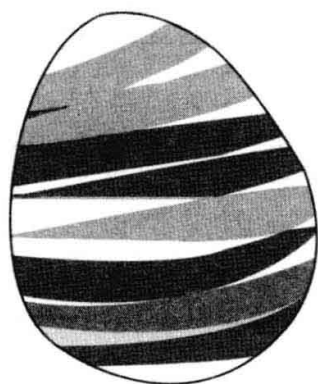


复活节（主复活日）是西方的一个重要节日，在每年春分月圆之后第一个星期日。基督徒认为，复活节象征着重生与希望，是为纪念耶稣基督于公元30到33年之间被钉死在十字架之后第三天复活的日子。

Get some dye and have fun making these Easter eggs!

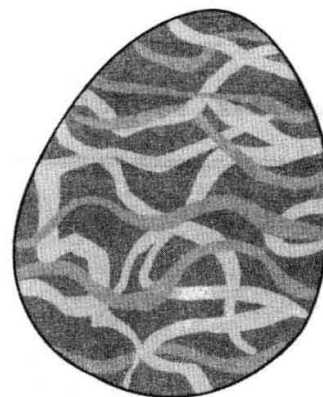
### RUBBER BAND EGGS

Wrap<sup>1</sup> a hard-boiled egg with rubber bands. Dip the egg in dye, allowing the dye to get under some of the rubber bands. When the color is right, remove the egg. Dry it gently with a paper towel<sup>2</sup>. Remove the rubber bands. If desired, repeat with another color.



### SQUIGGLE<sup>3</sup> EGGS

With an adult's help, drip<sup>4</sup> strands of rubber cement<sup>5</sup> onto a hard-boiled egg. Allow the rubber cement to dry completely. Dip the egg in dye. When the color is right, remove the egg and let it dry. Gently peel<sup>6</sup> off the rubber cement to see a pattern. For added color, repeat the steps with a different dye.



### FINGERPRINT EGGS

Put different colors of tempera<sup>7</sup> paint on

a paper plate. Carefully hold the ends of a hard-boiled egg with a finger and thumb. Using a different color each time, dip one fingertip in the paint, dab<sup>8</sup> the extra paint on a paper towel, and cover the egg with your colored fingerprints. Let dry. Now you have a design as unique as you are!

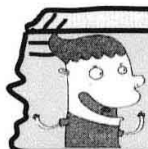


注：本课选自《小学低年级活动课——复活节》课本，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>wrap</b> [ræp] <i>v.</i> 包，裹                 | 5. <b>cement</b> [si'ment] <i>n.</i> 水泥，胶合剂  |
| 2. <b>towel</b> ['tauəl] <i>n.</i> 毛巾，手巾，纸巾        | <b>rubber cement</b> 橡胶黏合剂                   |
| 3. <b>squiggle</b> ['skwigl] <i>n.</i> 弯弯曲曲的线，波形曲线 | 6. <b>peel</b> [pi:l] <i>v.</i> 削皮，剥落，脱落     |
| 4. <b>drip</b> [drip] <i>v.</i> (使)滴下              | 7. <b>tempera</b> ['tempərə] <i>n.</i> 蛋彩画颜料 |
|  | 8. <b>dab</b> [dæb] <i>v.</i> 抹，擦拭           |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**peel off** 剥皮，去皮；剥落，脱落

e.g. She peel off the skin of a banana for the child.

她替孩子剥掉香蕉皮。

The label will peel off if you soak it in water.

标签用水浸湿即可脱落。





## Exercise 牛刀小试

### Fill in the blanks.

1. Last night I couldn't sleep at all. I just kept \_\_\_\_\_ about in bed.
2. Please \_\_\_\_\_ my hair brown.
3. The grass \_\_\_\_\_ with dew.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ a blanket round him.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ her lips with a handkerchief.
6. We are going to the beach for the weekend. Don't forget to bring your sunglasses and bath \_\_\_\_\_ then.
7. The paint \_\_\_\_\_ off the wall.
8. The hammock \_\_\_\_\_ back and forth.

### 参考译文

准备一些染料，我们来染复活节彩蛋。

#### 皮筋花纹彩蛋

在一个白煮蛋的外壳缠绕上橡皮筋后浸入染料中，让染料渗透到部分皮筋之下。染好之后取出鸡蛋，用纸巾轻轻擦干，取下橡皮筋。根据个人喜好，可换另一种颜色的染料重复这一过程。

#### 波形曲线彩蛋

请一个大人帮忙，在白煮蛋的外壳上滴上橡胶黏合剂，使其成曲线状。待黏合剂彻底干透后，将鸡蛋浸入染料中。染好后取出鸡蛋，晾

干，轻轻剥掉表面的橡胶黏合剂，花纹就呈现出来了。若想增加其他颜色，换另一种染料重复以上步骤即可。

#### 指纹彩蛋

在一个纸盘子中准备好各种颜色的蛋彩画颜料，分别以食指和拇指小心捏住白煮蛋的两端，每次用一个手指头的指尖蘸盘中的颜料，用纸巾抹去多余颜料之后将彩色的指纹印在蛋壳上，晾干。这个彩蛋将和你本人一样独一无二。

## “美”事一桩

### 复活节

复活节是最古老最有意义的基督教节日之一。它纪念基督的复活，也象征重生和希望。传说耶稣被钉死在十字架上，死后第三天复活升天。每年在教堂庆祝的复活节指的是春分月圆后的第一个星期日，如果月圆那天刚好是星期天，复活节则推迟一星期。因而复活节可能在3月22日至4月25日之间的任何一天。

典型的复活节礼物跟春天和再生有关系：鸡蛋、小鸡、小兔子、鲜花，特别是百合花是这一季节的象征。复活节前夕，孩子们为朋友和家人给鸡蛋着色打扮一番。这些蛋有的煮得很老，有的只是空空的蛋壳。复活节那天早上，孩子们会发现床前的复活节篮子里装满了巧克力彩蛋、复活节小兔子、有绒毛的小鸡及娃娃玩具等。据说，复活节兔子会将彩蛋藏在室内或是草地让孩子们去寻找。

在安德鲁·约翰逊总统任职期间，美国就开始了每年一次的滚复活节蛋比赛。现在，白宫南面的草坪成了复活节周一滚蛋比赛的场地，许多孩子都会参加，电视台也会对比赛进行转播。

### A Humor 休闲时刻



经理：进我的房间时你用手肘按门铃就行了。

员工：为啥用手肘呢？

经理：难道你是两手空空地来吗？

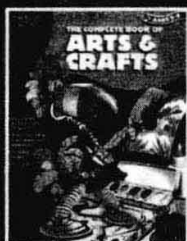
#### Answer

1. tossing 2. dye 3. dripped 4. wrapped 5. dabbed
6. towel(s) 7. peeled 8. swings/swung

# 8

# Clay Creations

## 泥塑制作



用泥土可以制作出各种各样的东西。对于普通人而言，制作泥塑可能是非常困难的一项工作。事实上，只要有正确的指导，我们也能做出各种形象逼真的东西来呢！

### OCTOPUS<sup>1</sup>

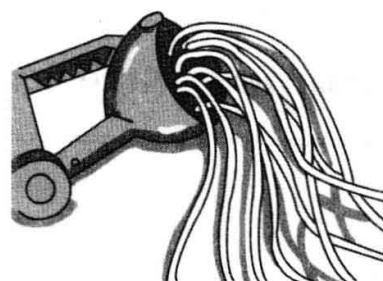
Divide your clay in half and make a ball with one half. The other half is for making the eight long legs. You can do this by breaking off<sub>1</sub> pieces and rolling them between your hands or on a flat surface. Set the ball (the body) in the middle of a paper plate and attach each leg by pinching<sup>2</sup> it to the body.



### NOODLES

Make noodles with clay and a garlic<sup>3</sup> press. Fill the well of the garlic press with clay,

and then close it to squeeze<sup>4</sup> out strands<sup>5</sup> of clay. Add more clay to lengthen the strands. This technique is also effective for making hair for other clay creatures.



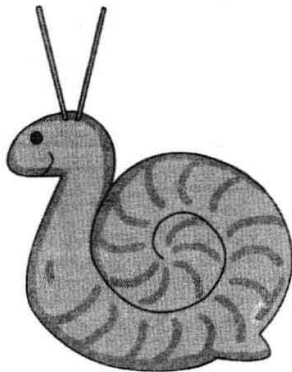
### SNOWMEN

Make three balls of clay in different sizes. Poke<sup>6</sup> a toothpick or a small piece of spaghetti<sup>7</sup> into the largest ball and attach it to the next sized ball. Repeat this step to attach the smallest ball for the head. Use a plastic straw<sup>8</sup> to form eyes and buttons by poking it into the clay. Pieces of uncooked spaghetti or toothpicks can make noses and arms.



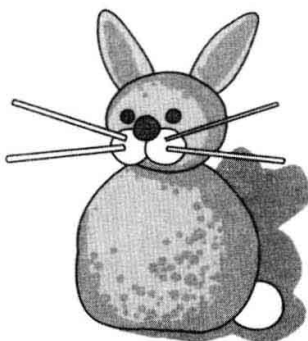
## SNAIL

First, roll a long piece of clay. Turn up one end to make the snail's head. Then, roll up the other end to make the snail's shell. Two small pieces of uncooked spaghetti or pipe cleaners can be stuck into the snail's head to make feelers.



## BUNNY

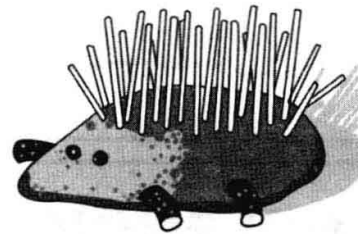
Roll balls of all sizes to make the bunny's body,



tail, cheeks and one tiny ball for the nose. Insert small pieces of spaghetti into the bunny's cheeks for whiskers<sup>9</sup>. Flatten two small pieces of clay to shape the bunny's long ears and pinch them to the head.

## PRICKLY<sup>10</sup> PORCUPINES<sup>11</sup>

Shape your clay like an egg. Stretch out one end of the "egg" to make the head. Break up, uncooked spaghetti and stick them into the porcupine's body. Next, add four pretzel<sup>12</sup> pieces for feet. Add eyes by poking a drinking straw into the clay or pressing beads<sup>13</sup> into the clay.



## ROBIN'S EGG NEST

Fill a garlic press with clay and press it closed to make strands. Make a nest with the strands, and make a dent<sup>14</sup> in the middle of it with your thumb. Then, roll two or three little oval shapes for eggs. You may want to paint the nests brown or green and the eggs blue when you get to that step.



注：本课选自《艺术与手工（5-9岁适用）》，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. octopus ['ɒktəpəs] <i>n.</i> 章鱼      | 9. whisker ['hwɪskə] <i>n.</i> 胡须            |
| 2. pinch [pɪntʃ] <i>n.</i> 捏，掐          | 10. prickly ['prɪkli] <i>adj.</i> 多刺的        |
| 3. garlic ['gɑ:lɪk] <i>n.</i> 大蒜        | 11. porcupine ['pɔ:kjʊpaɪn] <i>n.</i> 豪猪     |
| 4. squeeze [skwi:z] <i>v.</i> 挤，榨，捏     | 12. pretzel ['pretsəl] <i>n.</i> 椒盐卷饼，纽结形咸饼干 |
| 5. strand [strænd] <i>n.</i> 股，缕        | 13. bead [bi:d] <i>n.</i> (空心) 小珠子           |
| 6. poke [pəʊk] <i>v.</i> 戳，刺            | 14. dent [dent] <i>n.</i> 凹陷                 |
| 7. spaghetti [spə'geti] <i>n.</i> 意大利面条 |  |
| 8. straw [strɔ:] <i>n.</i> 稻草，麦秆；吸管     |  |



## Sentence 语句荟萃

### 1. break off 折断，中断，中止

e.g. He broke off a stem of rose and gave it to me.

他折下一朵玫瑰花递给我。

Tom broke off his engagement to Betty.

汤姆和贝蒂取消了婚约。

### 2. stick into 刺，戳，插入

e.g. The nurse stuck the needle into my arm.

护士把针头扎入我的胳膊。

She jerked out the knife that was stuck into the wood.

她把插入木头里的刀拔了出来。



### 3. break up 拆开, 打散, 结束 (关系)

e.g. The police broke up the fight, but the marriage broke up, too.

警察制止了这场打斗, 但婚姻也破裂了。

The old cars were broken up for some useful parts.

旧车被拆解开来, 看看还有没有零件可以用。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

### I. Complete these sentences. The first letter of the word has been given.

1. Please gently s\_\_\_\_\_ out the extra water.
2. I p\_\_\_\_\_ myself to see whether I was dreaming.
3. S\_\_\_\_\_ is one of my favorite foods.
4. The leaves of this plant are long and p\_\_\_\_\_.
5. All eggs are o\_\_\_\_\_.
6. She sucked the lemonade through a s\_\_\_\_\_.
7. Somebody has p\_\_\_\_\_ a hole in the paper screen.
8. The b\_\_\_\_\_ are made of crystal.
9. G\_\_\_\_\_ has a very strong flavor and some people don't like it.
10. That crash left several d\_\_\_\_\_ in a side of the car.

### II. Fill in the blanks with up, down, through, in, into, out, off or away.

1. You must break \_\_\_\_\_ from such habits.
2. The car broke \_\_\_\_\_ after an hour's driving.
3. A thief broke \_\_\_\_\_ and stole my money.
4. He broke \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of a sentence.
5. Influenza usually breaks \_\_\_\_\_ in winter.

6. The sun broke \_\_\_\_\_ at last in the afternoon.

7. She's just broken \_\_\_\_\_ with her boy-friend.

8. Hearing the news, she broke \_\_\_\_\_ tears.

## 参考译文

### 章鱼

把黏土一分为二，一半捏成圆球，另一半掰为小块，分别用双手或在一个平面上搓成长条，用来做章鱼的八条长腿。将圆球（作为章鱼的身体）摆在一个纸盘子的中间，再把八条腿一根一根地粘上去。

### 面条

用黏土和压蒜器来做面条。在压蒜器中装满黏土，闭合压蒜器，挤出黏土细条。往压蒜器中添加黏土，继续按压，使挤出来的细条更长一些。这个方法也可以用来制作泥塑小人的头发。

### 雪人

用黏土捏三个大小不同的圆球。往最大的球当中插入一根牙签或一小段生意大利面，把三个球从大到小地串在一起。最小的球就是雪人的头部。插入两根塑料吸管或安上两颗纽扣做雪人的眼睛。生意大利面或牙签可以充当鼻子和手臂。

### 蜗牛

首先，做一个黏土长条，将一端向上翘起作为蜗牛的头部，另一端卷起来做蜗牛的壳。两小段生意大利面或烟斗通条插在蜗牛头部充当触角。

### 兔子

搓出不同大小的圆球，分别做兔子的身体、腮帮、脸颊；再捏一个小球做鼻子。在腮帮上插几小段意大利面做胡须。把两小块黏土压扁做兔子的长耳朵，安在头上。

### 豪猪

将黏土捏成一个蛋形，将一头拉长做豪猪的头部。生意大利面折成小段，插在豪猪的身体上做刺。接下来，加四小块饼干做脚。最后，插入塑料吸管或者安上两颗小珠子做眼睛。

### 知更鸟巢及蛋

在压蒜器中装满黏土，挤出细细的泥条。用这些泥条做一个鸟巢，中间用拇指向下压一个坑，然后搓两三个小小的椭圆形做鸟蛋。做完之后你可以为鸟巢涂上棕色或绿色，鸟蛋涂上蓝色。

## “美”事一桩

## 美国的十大文化偶像（下）

## 6. John Wayne (约翰·韦恩)

韦恩1907年5月26日出生于美国，是以演西部片著称的好莱坞明星。他一生共拍片250部，成功地扮演了无数西部片中的角色，以其体魄强壮、性情沉默而给人们留下了长期的记忆。美国上至总统下至影迷都对他推崇备至，国会还授予他自由勋章。1979年6月11日韦恩去世，洛杉矶建筑物上的国旗降半旗致哀。

## 7. Martin Luther King (马丁·路德·金)

著名的美国民权运动领袖，1929年诞生于美国东南部的佐治亚州的亚特兰大市。1963年，马丁·路德·金晋见了肯尼迪总统，要求通过新的民权法，给黑人以平等的权利。同年发表“I have a dream”的著名演说。1964年获诺贝尔和平奖。1968年被暗杀。

## 8. Ernest Hemingway (厄内斯特·海明威)

海明威在第一次世界大战期间做过救护车司机，还做过西班牙内战和“二战”期间的战地记者。精炼、直接的文学风格是他的商标。他的作品获得过普利策奖和诺贝尔文学奖。他最终选择用自杀的方式结束生命。

## 9. James Dean (詹姆斯·迪恩)

迪恩1931年出生，1955年死于车祸，一生只拍过三部电影，*East of Eden*（《天伦梦境》），*Rebel Without a Cause*（《无因的反抗》）和*Giant*（《巨人传》），广受好评，是上世纪50年代最伟大的男明星。

## 10. Ronald Reagan (罗纳德·里根)

里根是美国第40任总统，连任两届，对国内的经济政治和国际形式都起了很大的影响。里根的总统任期影响了美国20世纪80年代的文化，80年代常被称为“里根时代”。他也是唯一一个遭到刺客子弹击中（1981年3月30日）而得以存活美国总统。

## A Humor 休闲时刻

### English Proverbs

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

两鸟在林，不如一鸟在手。

The spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak.

心有余而力不足。

One swallow does not make a summer.

一燕不成夏。

The pen is mightier than the sword.

文能胜武。

### Answer

I. 1. squeeze 2. pinched 3. spaghetti 4. prickly 5. oval 6. straw 7. poked 8. beads 9. garlic 10. dents

II. 1. away 2. down 3. in 4. off 5. out 6. through 7. up 8. into

# Paper Plate Parade

## 纸盘子手工制作



听说过纸盘制作吗？很多人对此也许很陌生。事实上，它类似于中国民间的剪纸艺术，制作出的物品在视觉上给人以透空的感觉和艺术享受。

You won't believe how many animals you can make using simple paper plates! Use these examples or use your own ideas.

### WHAT YOU'LL NEED

paper plates in different sizes and colors  
crayons<sup>1</sup>, felt-tip pens, watercolors,  
tempera or acrylic<sup>2</sup> paints, self-adhesive<sup>3</sup> picture,  
mounts<sup>4</sup> or yarn<sup>5</sup> for hanging

pencil, ruler, scissors, white glue

pipe cleaners, drinking straws or yarn  
(optional)

### BUTTERFLY

Glue two large plates and two small plates overlapping<sup>6</sup> each other. Add a pipe cleaner for the body and antennae<sup>7</sup>. Then, decorate it with paint and glitter<sup>8</sup>.



### OWL

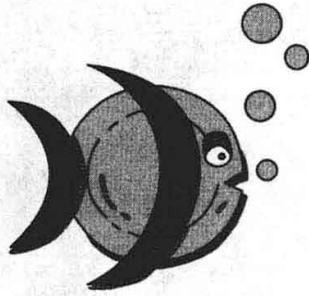
Use one paper plate with rippled<sup>9</sup>, not smooth, edges. Cut out and glue together, as shown. Color or add a face and craft feathers, if desired.





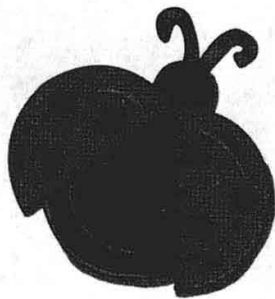
## FISH

Use one large plate and two smaller plates. Cut a sliver<sup>10</sup> of a moon from both the large plate and one small plate. Cut a notch<sup>11</sup> for the mouth (a small triangle) in the other small plate. Glue the pieces together, as shown.



## LADYBUG<sup>12</sup>

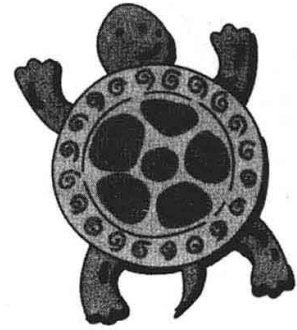
Use two plates, another small circle (maybe a muffin cup) and a pipe cleaner. Cut one plate in half. Bend the pipe cleaner in half and loop<sup>13</sup> the ends. Glue it all together, as shown. Make sure to add the ladybug's spots!



## TURTLE

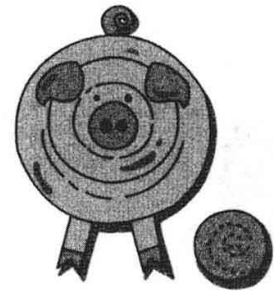
Use two plates. Cut the rim of one plate into five pieces. Draw, color or cut them to look like feet and a tail. Color and cut out a head from the middle of the same plate. Add texture<sup>14</sup> to the other plate to make it look like

the turtle's shell. Glue it all together, as shown.



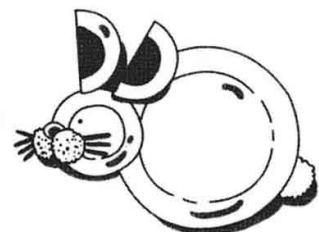
## PIGGY

Use one large plate, one small plate and construction paper scraps<sup>15</sup>. Use the scraps to make the pig's feet, nose and ears. Cut a spiral<sup>16</sup>, as shown, to make the curly tail. Color all the pieces pink or grey. Glue it all together, as shown.



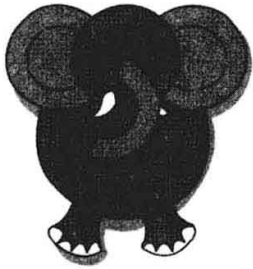
## BUNNY RABBIT

Use one large plate and two small plates. Cut one small plate in half. Color everything pink and white. Glue together as shown. Add pipe cleaner whiskers and a cotton ball tail.



## ELEPHANT

Use one large plate and three small plates. Cut the rim<sup>17</sup> off one large plate. Cut it in half to use as the trunk. Glue together, as shown. Add eyes, feet and tusks<sup>18</sup>, if desired.



## SUGGESTIONS

- Cut a tail, tusks, legs, ears, antennae, whiskers and other parts from paper plate rims; or use pipe cleaners, drinking straws or yarn stiffened with glue for texture.
- When dry, paint or color your animal, adding stripes<sup>19</sup>, spots and other features.
- Attach picture mounts or glue yarn looped to the back of the plates to hang your animal.
- Try some of the other animals shown below.



注：本课选自《艺术与手工（5-9岁适用）》，其难度相当于国内初中水平。



## Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

1. crayon ['kreɪən] *n.* 蜡笔

2. acrylic [ə'krɪlɪk] *adj.* 丙烯酸

3. self-adhesive [ˌselfəd'hɪ:sɪv] *adj.* 自动粘的，自行附着的

4. mount [maʊnt] *n.* 框, 支架, 衬纸板, 裱褙

5. yarn [jɑ:n] *n.* 纱, 细丝

6. overlap ['əʊvə'læp] *v./n.* 重叠

7. antenna [æn'tenə] *n.* 触角, 触须

(pl.) antennae

8. glitter ['glɪtə] *v.* 闪烁      *n.* 闪光, 发光的小东西

9. ripple ['rɪpl] *v.* 泛起涟漪, 在……上形成波纹

10. sliver ['slɪvə] *n.* 裂片, 薄片, 长条

11. notch [nɒtʃ] *n.* 凹槽, 缺口

12. ladybug ['leɪdɪbʌg] *n.* 瓢虫

13. loop [lu:p] *n.* 圈, 环 *v.* 扣, 圈住

14. texture ['tekstʃə] *n.* 纹理

15. scrap [skræp] *n.* 碎片

16. spiral ['spairəl] *n.* 螺旋形

17. rim [rɪm] *n.* (圆形物体的) 边, 缘

18. tusk [tʌsk] *n.* (象等动物的) 长牙, 獠牙

19. stripe [straɪp] *n.* 斑纹



## Sentence 语句荟萃

**cut out** 切掉, 裁剪出, 停止

e.g. The doctor cut out his tumor.

医生切除了他身上的肿瘤。

We cut out a path through the jungle.

我们在丛林中开辟出一条道路。



## Exercise 牛刀小试

**Complete the sentences with the words you learn in the text.**

1. Tiles are laid to \_\_\_\_\_ each other.

2. In supermarkets goods always have \_\_\_\_\_ labels on them to indicate the name and the price.

3. All that \_\_\_\_\_ is not gold.

4. The child colored all the shapes on the page with a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A zebra has black \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I was hurt by a \_\_\_\_\_ of broken glass.
7. My shot hit the \_\_\_\_\_ of the basket and the ball bounced out.
8. The river \_\_\_\_\_ around the city.

## 参考译文

你肯定想像不出简单的纸盘子能做出多少种动物来。下面是一些示例，也可以根据你自己的想法来做。

### 你需要的物品：

不同大小和颜色的纸盘子

蜡笔、毡尖笔、水彩、蛋彩画颜料或丙烯颜料

不干胶贴纸、用来悬挂作品的支架或丝线

铅笔、尺子、剪刀、白胶

烟斗通条、吸管或丝线（可选）

### 蝴蝶

将两个大盘子和两个小盘子交叠，用胶水粘好。加上一个烟斗通条做蝴蝶的身体和触须。最后，涂上颜色并用闪光物装饰。

### 猫头鹰

选取一个带波浪形边缘的盘子，依照图示进行裁剪、粘贴。可为其上色，或加上头部和装饰性羽毛。

### 鱼

取一个大盘子和两个小一点的盘子。从大盘子和其中一个小盘子上各剪下一个月牙形的长

条，在另一个小盘子上剪一个小三角形的缺口。依照图示，把三样东西粘贴在一起。

### 瓢虫

准备两个盘子，一个小一点的圆形（比如松饼杯）和一根烟斗通条。将一个盘子一分为二。烟斗通条折为两截，末端弄弯。把各部分依照下图粘贴在一起。别忘了画瓢虫身上的斑点！

### 龟

准备两个盘子，将其中一个盘子的边缘剪下来，分为五部分，对其进行绘制、上色、剪裁，做成龟的四肢和尾巴。从这个盘子剩下的部分中剪出一个龟头。给另一个盘子上色，画上花纹，使其更像一个龟甲。依照图示把各部分粘贴在一起。

### 小猪

准备一个大盘子、一个小盘子和几小片美术纸。美术纸用来做小猪的腿、鼻子和耳朵。按照下图的样式剪一个螺旋形做小猪的尾巴。把各个部分涂成粉色或灰色，粘贴成下图的样子。

### 小兔子

准备一个大盘子和两个小盘子。将其中一个

小盘子一分为二。各部分都涂成粉色和白色。依照图示把各部分粘贴在一起，再加上烟斗通条做的胡须和棉花球做的尾巴。

## 大象

准备一个大盘子和三个小盘子。将大盘子的边缘剪下，一分为二，用做大象的鼻子。依照图示把各部分粘贴在一起。也可以加上眼睛、腿和象牙。

## 建议

- 尾巴、象牙、耳朵、触角、胡须等可用纸盘子的边缘来裁剪；烟斗通条、吸管或用胶水弄硬的丝线可做体表的纹理。
- 待胶水干透后，给你的纸盘子动物上色，添上斑纹、斑点或其他身体特征。
- 在做好的纸盘子动物背面加上裱糊，或粘好丝线悬挂起来。
- 尝试制作下图的动物。

## “美”事一桩

## 百老汇

“百老汇”是英语“Broadway”的音译，原意为“大道”或“大街”。美国很多大城市都有这个街名，但享誉世界的是纽约的百老汇。

从地图上看，百老汇大道就是一条呈对角线状的、贯穿曼哈顿（纽约市的中心区）南北的主干道。其他街道都是横向或纵向：东西走向的称为街（street），南北走向的称为大道（avenue）。从百老汇大道的最南端往北步行至第120街，沿路可以看到很多文化、建筑与商业景点，如金融区、市政大厅、中国城、帝国大厦、梅西百货公司、时代广场、中央公园、林肯表演艺术中心、哥伦比亚大学等。纽约的戏剧乃至美国的戏剧就是在这条大街上发展和兴旺起来的，在这里演出过的世界名剧有《猫》、《剧院魅影》、《悲惨世界》、《西贡小姐》等。百老汇在极大程度上成了美国戏剧的代名词。

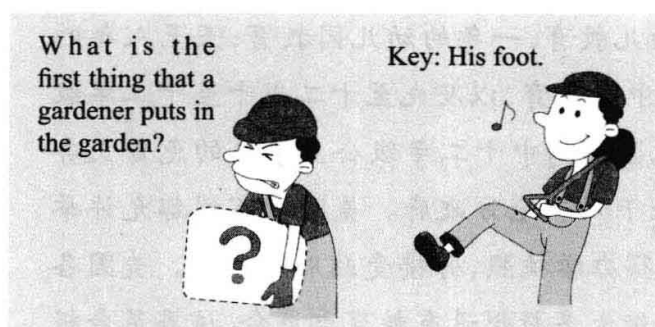
20世纪20年代是百老汇戏剧区域的最旺盛时期，剧场林立，有七八十家。位于百老汇大道与第42街交叉口的时代广场成了全市的娱乐中心，也是市民集会欢乐的场所。后来百老汇的戏剧区域渐渐缩小、北移，现在剩下近40家戏院。

纽约是美国戏剧文化的首都，任何一出戏只要在百老汇的某一剧场获得成功，就会名扬全美国和英语世界甚至整个西方世界。同样，多数在美国各地演出成功的戏也会搬到百老汇演出，然后再通过百老汇的名气向其他地方推进。换句话说，没在百老汇或纽约演过的戏剧就称不上是美国一流的戏剧。



现在，百老汇上演的剧目有几十种，那里上演的剧目，往往一演就是七八年，甚至十几年。而整个百老汇地区，每年的票房总收入约为12亿美元。每一张票价，按照美国人的收入标准来衡量，并不贵，普通观众花40美元就能够买到一张位置不错的票，最好的座位票卖100~150美元，如果到位于时代广场的售票处购买当日的余票，价格还会更便宜。

## A Humor 休闲时刻



问：园丁进入花园时首先放置什么？

答：他的脚。

### Answer

1. overlap 2. self-adhesive 3. glitter 4. crayon
5. stripes 6. sliver 7. rim 8. loops/looped

## 附录一、美国教育制度概况

美国的教育体系是高度分权的。根据 1791 年通过的美国宪法第十修正案,宪法不授予联邦而又不禁止给州的权力属于各州。联邦政府因而无权确定国家教育制度,教育政策以及课程设置等均由各州与地方学区决定。但是,由于美国各州在社会经济、政治与文化诸方面所具备的共性,以及美国国家教育评审、鉴定机构的指导作用等,全美各州的教育体制虽有所差别,但总的来看大同小异。

美国的教育大致可分为初等教育、中等教育、高等教育三个层次。

### (一) 初等教育与中等教育

美国的初等教育包括一至两年的学前幼儿教育,一年的幼儿园教育,五至八年的小学教育。中等教育包括七年级开始的初级中学教育,以及九至十二或十至十二年级的高级中学教育。美国大多数州实施从幼儿园到高中十二年级公立学校的免费义务教育。美国公立中小学的教育经费主要来源于州和地方政府。美国所有州都允许举办私立中小学教育,但必须经州政府许可,取得办学执照,并接受政府的监督。美国各州和地方政府对初、中等教育的管理模式为:绝大多数州设有教育委员会,该委员会根据有关法规制定公立中小学教育政策,由州教育厅长及其下属的专业教育工作者和辅助人员贯彻执行。

美国法律规定,任何学龄儿童均应进入学校就读,并接受义务(免费的)中小学教育,当然,进入私立学校就读的话,便要缴付相当昂贵的学费。有些公立中学也录取外国学生就读,并会发给留学生签证,但这些外国留学生却要缴纳学费,情况与其他进入私立中学的学生大致相同。至于小学与中学的学制,在配合上也有几个不同的形式,因各州、各城市或乡镇的情况而异(例如,有些是六年小学及六年中学制,亦有些是学分为二或三年制的初中及四年制的高中等形式),但无论如何,原则上在学生 18 岁时,应该念完中等教育。由于美国的义务教育普及,大约有 93% 的适龄儿童接受中等教育,70% 可完成学业,其中大部分再进入大学或专上学院继续升学,开始他们的专上教育。

Preschool 托儿所	
Kindergarten 幼儿园	
Elementary School 小学 (共5年)	
K1	→ 1st grade 一年级
K2	→ 2nd grade 二年级
K3	→ 3rd grade 三年级
K4	→ 4th grade 四年级
K5	→ 5th grade 五年级
Junior High/Middle School 初中 (共3年)	
K6	→ 6th grade 六年级
K7	→ 7th grade 七年级
K8	→ 8th grade 八年级
High School 高中 (共4年)	
K9	→ 9th grade 九年级
K10	→ 10th grade 十年级
K11	→ 11th grade 十一年级
K12	→ 12th grade 十二年级

加州各年級表

## (二) 高等教育

美国高等教育从1636年建立的哈佛学院开始,至今有374年的历史。美国高等教育的运行和管理体制比较复杂,其中联邦政府、州政府和高等院校的全国性组织作为三个关键性的机构,发挥着不同的作用。美国各州政府对州内公立高等学校的规划、运行和体制等均有规范性的文件。但总的来讲,州政府只是为高等院校的运行提供法律框架,而各类高校自发形成的各种全国性、区域性或行业性组织,对高等学校运行和体制规范起着非常重要的作用。

美国各州政府对高等教育经费的拨款没有统一的模式,但大部分州还是根据惯例来确定分配方案,即在州政府每年的高教预算确定之后,根据州内每个公立大学每年的招生情况、学校性质和需要、教学设施状况等确定具体分配方案。一般情况下,每个州立大学每年所分到的教育经费数目变化不大。对经费的使用,州政府通常也只是制定一些指导性的政策。

美国高等教育对“专才”的培训,主要是在研究院与高等专科学院的教育及训练上,而也是在这个层次上每年吸引了千万以上的留学生到美国接受高深的训练,其中不乏从中国大陆、香港、台湾三地而来的华人学生。

1. 研究院及高等专科学院开设的课程及学科,种类繁多,从核子工程到中国文学,从商业行政到法学与医学,林林总总,不一而足。念完研究院课程的学生,经校方核定,会颁发以下的学位:

### A. 硕士学位 (Master's Degree)

根据学科的性质来决定是文科硕士(MA)或理科硕士(MS),通常需两年时间;亦有一些学校设有公共行政学硕士(Master of Public Administration)、法学硕士(Master of Law)、神学硕士(Master of Divinity)等学位课程。学生通常需要通过GRE考试(Graduate Record Examination)才会被录取。

### B. 工商管理学硕士 (MBA, 即 Master of Business Administration)

由于近年的工商发展迅速,对工商管理人才的需求迫切。为配合市场需求,攻读MBA学位的人士日渐增多。MBA课程又可再分为会计、管理、市场学等专业,但通常入学的条件之一是要学生通过GMAT (Graduate Management Admission Test),成绩优良才会被录取。考试内容分为英语能力(verbal ability)及数学思考力(mathematical ability)。留学生当然还要通过托福(TOEFL)英语考试才会被考虑。

### C. 博士学位 (Doctoral Degree)

博士学位课程通常需要先修毕硕士课程,但亦有例外。最普遍的博士学位就是哲学博士(Ph.D., 即 Doctor in Philosophy),但绝大部分文、理科博士大都是授予Ph.D.学位,而不单限于哲学这个学

科。通常完成博士学位课程需要三年或以上时间,理科时间较短,文科时间大多较长。念教育学科的博士学位则称为 Ed.D. (Doctor in Education)。博士学位是美国高等教育制度下的最高学位。

#### D. 法学博士 (J.D.) 与医学博士 (M.D.)

这是美国社会的律师与医生必须具备的专业学位。由于这两个行业的执业者社会地位很高,不少大学毕业生申请就读,以致获得入学录取的机会相当难,但学生毕业后能学以致用,直接地为社会服务。这也是高等教育的主要目的之一,即培养为社会服务的人才。

### 2. 美国大学的类别。美国的高等教育在世界上一直处于领先地位,而大学教育的普及程度,亦鲜有其他国家可与之相比。

根据权威性的统计资料(《高等教育纪事》, *The Chronicle of Higher Education, Almanac Issue*, 1995 年 9 月 1 日出版)显示,全美国的各类大学已达 3632 所,而就读的大学本科生 (undergraduate) 人数高达 1200 多万人, 研究院学生人数也将近 170 万,加上专科(例如医学院及法律学院)的 30 万学生,足以看出美国高等教育的普及。这 3600 多所大学如何分类? 分别在什么地方? 重要性如何呢?

#### A. 初级(或社区)学院 (Junior or Community College)

全美国现有公立和私立的初级学院(亦有人称之为社区大学或短期大学)共 1422 所。在两年制的学院就读,学生毕业后可得副学士 (Associate Degree) 学位,再可转学到四年制的大学 (Bachelor Degree)。初级社区学院主要是由社区支持,其目标是推广普及教育,因此对学生入学的要求较低,学费比较低,以鼓励更多学生就读。

#### B. 文理学院 (College of Liberal Arts and Sciences 或简称 Liberal Arts College)

这是四年制的大学,但重点是大学本科教育 (undergraduate education) 而非研究生教育,虽然有小部分文理学院亦颁授硕士及博士学位。这类学院在美国的高等教育学府中是最先建立的一种,至今仍然盛行,有部分文理学院由于不断发展扩充,已升格为综合性大学 (university),在课程上不单只是文理科,还包括了人文学科 (humanities)、数理科 (pure sciences) 以及专门职业教育 (professional school) 的研究院等,如著名的哈佛大学、耶鲁大学及哥伦比亚大学,其前身皆为文理学院。

#### C. 综合性大学 (Comprehensive University, 简称 University)

综合性大学必须附设研究院,进行深入的学术研究。颁授高级学位,如硕士及博士学位,藉以培训各种专业人才,这是大学与学院最显著不同的地方。一所综合性大学往往划分为几个学院,各学院再划分为若干科系。随着教育经费来源的不同,综合性大学又分为公立大学及私立大学两种。

私立大学的名气整体上略胜公立大学,著名的常青藤盟校 (Ivy League Schools, 如哈佛、耶鲁

等大学,在美国大学排行榜上经常名列前茅),都是历史悠久的私立大学。

公立大学中州立系统的(由州政府拨款作为经费)比较完善,例如加州大学及加州州立大学(University of California 与 California State University,前者比较注重学术研究)、密歇根大学(University of Michigan)、纽约州立大学(State University of New York)以及一些市立大学,如纽约市立大学(University of New York)等。还有一种公立大学(Land-Grant University),原来由联邦政府给予土地作为收益补助,后改为拨款补助,其特色主要是注重农业及家事教育,以推行农村推广教育及训练中学的家事与农科教师。

#### D. 研究院 (Graduate Schools)

美国的教育制度,以研究院及高等专科学院为最高的阶梯及顶点。顾名思义,研究院的重点是在研究方面,研究生攻读的课程均为高级教育学位,如哲学博士(Ph.D.,涵盖很多科系而不单只是哲学)及硕士(M.A. 或 M.S.)。有一些著名的研究院从事高深的学识及尖端科学的训练,甚至网罗曾经获得诺贝尔奖的学者坐镇,名气斐然。

总部设在纽约的卡耐基基金会(Carnegie Foundation)曾出版一调查报告,名为《美国高等院校的分类》(*A Classification of Institutions of Higher Education*),更将有研究院设立在大学分类为研究大学(Research Universities)及颁发博士学位的大学(Doctor-Granting Universities),根据每年所颁授的博士学位数目来决定其类别。

#### E. 高等专科学院 (Advanced Professional Schools, 或简称 Professional Schools)

专科学院是以培训医科、法律、神学、艺术、师训等各类专门人才为目标的高等教育机构。在美国的历史传统上,这等学科并未被列入大学的课程。

专科学院,或为大学的一部分,或单独设立,其教育活动均限于一种单独的专业。依规定,凡拟投考某种专科学院的学生,通常要先接受二年、三年甚至四年的专业预备性的文理科教育。各类专科学校,如医学博士(M.D.)及法学博士(J.D.)必须接受三至五年的专科训练,始具备领受此类学位的资格。有些学院更限制非美国居民或公民入学,为的是不想为其他国家培训专门人才。

#### F. 技术学院 (Technical Colleges) (又被称为工艺学院或技职专科学院)

所谓技术学院,根据美国国防教育法案的解释,即为招收高中毕业生,提供为期两年的高等教育,旨在培养工程、数学、物理或生物科学等各方面的技术人员的专上学府。此等专业人员是熟悉工程、科学或其他与技术有关部门的基本知识并擅长学以致用的人员。

技术学院为初级学院的另一类型,其特色在于较注重技术和半专业性的工艺训练。技术学院多以公立为主,亦有私立、地方性、区域性及全州性等不同区分。

#### G. 军事学校 (Military Academies)

由联邦政府出资办理的高等学府有各种军事学校,如在纽约州西点(West Point, New York)的陆军学校(Military Academy)于1802创校,在马里兰州安那波里斯(Annapolis, Maryland)的海军



学校(Naval Academy)于1845年创校,在科罗拉多州科罗拉多泉(Colorado Springs, Colorado)的空军学校(Air Force Academy)于1955年创校。此等军事学校以培育军事人才为目的。

H. 成人大学(或称大学校外课程“University External Program”,或成人教育“Adult Education”、远程教育“Distance Education”、持续教育“Continuing Education”等不同类型)

随着社会的进步、科技的发展及职业的需要,从20世纪60年代开始,大学教育已不只限于年轻人及在校园内上课的传统模式。事实上,成人教育的发展已是日益需要,为了满足一些希望继续进修的人士,或为兴趣、或为职业上的需要,又或为一圆大学梦。

成人大学或为附设于一所大学之内,名为成人教育部或大学伸展部(Extension),例如匹次堡大学有“University External Studies Program”,普林斯顿大学亦有“Program in Continuing Education”,这已成为一种风尚和需要。

此外,还有一些单独注册为大学的远程教育机构和学府,通过函授、计算机联网或电话及录音与录像带教学,学生累积足够的学分,便可毕业取得学位。这是一种公开式及没有门墙的大学,由于上课时间及地点没有限制,因此十分适合在职人士,也越来越流行。

## 附录二、关于美国的课程设置

美国学校的科目除了一般的数学、历史、语文外,还有缝纫、打字、无线电与汽车修理等科目。学生可依自己的兴趣、个人未来的计划和才能,从许多科目中自行选修。美国教育的主要目的在于发展每个孩子的才能,不管它高或低到什么程度,同时给每个孩子灌输公民意识。每个学科皆有不同的特色,下面就个别科目进行介绍。

### A. 英语(Language)

英语相当于国内的语文。美国有一项极具特色的教学内容——说话课(Speech)。为了治疗口吃、结巴等语言问题,语言治疗师会对学生的演说进行矫正。或许从我们的耳朵中听不出学生说话有什么问题,可是专家用耳朵一听,就能察觉有什么不一样了。

### B. 数学(Mathematics)

心算是美国人最不在行的,虽然也有例外。卖东西时的找钱方式也很独特,虽然使用电脑化的收银机减少了很多这方面的问题,但还是比不上中国人从算盘锻炼出来的心算能力。

美国的教育很重视数学。比如小学生每天都要完成“百题加法计算”的作业练习等。除此之外,美国教育也倾向于让学生自己思考,从中发挥想象力。

### C. 社会 (Social Studies)

由于美国的历史较短,所以教学内容集中在近代史。社会课特别重视建国的历史,关于国父以及接下来的历任总统。所学习的范围不仅仅限于其公众层面,还包括其私人层面。透过对名人轶事的阅读,学生对每位总统都有较全面的了解。

### D. 自然科学 (Science)

学生要全面学习化学、物理、生物、地理等,其中特别关心太空科学。美国上个世纪的成功登陆月球与卫星升空,从这里即可了解一二。

教学并非只是进行概念的说明,也通过实验获得知识。

### E. 体育 (Physical Education)

美国的体育课程目标在于让所有孩子快乐地玩。因为校外的体育活动太丰富,学生对学校的体育课就不是很重视。春天打棒球、秋天踢足球、冬天打篮球,随着季节的变化而有不同的竞赛性体育活动,进行方式主要是以社区为单位,每周有一至三次的练习,在周末也会有比赛。喜欢运动的孩子都可以参加学校的棒球、足球、游泳队等。

### F. 音乐 (Music)

唱歌是最基本的教学内容,但因学校而异,也有乐器的吹奏,不过也取决于老师的音乐能力而有所不同。

### G. 外语 (Foreign Language)

外语课程也是因学校而异,至今并未发现公立学校将外语列为必修课,但有些私立学校却很早就将外语列入课程了。

在美国,所谓的外语几乎都是西班牙语,另外也有在中小学教授日语和中文的学校。

### H. 电脑 (Computers)

美国果然是IT王国,很早就积极从事电脑资讯教育。然而,并非在既有的科目中使用电脑,而是另立科目学习电脑的操作使用。学校有电脑教室设备,每间教室也配置一台电脑,使用时间,则由教师与学生共同决定。

### I. 教学旅行 (Field Trip)

教学旅行相当于我们所说的“远足”。可是,在现实的学校生活中,美国人基本不用 excursion 这个词,而是用 field trip。比如去水族馆、图书馆或者坐巴士去集市等。高年级时还有所谓的 science camp (自然科学营),学生要在外面住宿好几天,相当于毕业旅行。

以上为一般课程。另外,有的学校开设一些只有通过能力测验的学生才能参加的特别课程。

#### J. 特别课程 (Special Education)

特别课程虽然因学区或各州而有所差异,但是有的地方会统一实施联合测验。以加州为例,这项考试称为 STAR Test。这项考试为期三天,测验学生的基本学力等级,其实也是一种智力测验。达到某个既定标准的学生,就有资格参加所谓的 Gates Program 特别课程。有资格参加的学生,将会收到一份课程概要一览表,选择自己喜好的课程。

每所中学所举办的考试都不太一样,而且因课程不同而有不同的方式。但一般而言,不同于亚洲和欧洲学校,美国中学老师给成绩不会只依据一场考试或测验,老师通常会依据学生整个学期的报告、作业、课堂表现、随堂小测验、期中期末考试来给成绩。在美国,学生的义务教育是到 16 岁,学生通常必须通过(pass)所有的必修课程才能毕业。学生会在每学期结束后得知每堂课的成绩,老师给学生的成绩评量方法如下:

A = Excellent (优)

B = Above Average (平均以上)

C = Average (普通)

D = Below Average (平均以下)

F = Failure (不及格。必修科目如果不及格,学生必须重修。)

中学毕业后,申请就读美国大专院校。虽然每所大专院校的入学条件不同,但一般大专院校都会看学生中学所修的课程、中学 GPA 成绩、SAT 成绩、写作,或者安排与学生面谈。学生在中学的 GPA 成绩 (High-school Grade Point Average GPA) 代表学生的学年总成绩平均表现。美国一般采用的计分方法如下:

A = 4 点 90 ~ 100

B = 3 点 80 ~ 89

C = 2 点 70 ~ 79

D = 1 点 60 ~ 69

F = 0 点 0 ~ 59

全美统一的考试是大专院校入学的 SAT 考试,主要是测验学生的英文程度、数学推理能力以及在某一学科的专业知识,作为学生进入大学后成绩的参考资料。

Images have been losslessly embedded. Information about the original file can be found in PDF attachments. Some stats (more in the PDF attachments):

```
{
  "filename": "MTI4MjM0OTguemlw",
  "filename_decoded": "12823498.zip",
  "filesize": 72806157,
  "md5": "1d03a39dd5177277d28df2f2e436b837",
  "header_md5": "a45fd1f9b60c2ba3ebbb0b1ca68dd6f5",
  "sha1": "0ee1ceced894e32b381f87fc7f8035a58e602fd1",
  "sha256": "162dff803e95e919afe09e15376e2e39d721c3c0509aecb2c3ba788c553538a8",
  "crc32": 1371286182,
  "zip_password": "wcpfxk&^TDwcpfxk",
  "uncompressed_size": 77730984,
  "pdg_dir_name": "",
  "pdg_main_pages_found": 330,
  "pdg_main_pages_max": 330,
  "total_pages": 338,
  "total_pixels": 1799786794,
  "pdf_generation_missing_pages": false
}
```